

Operation and Maintenance Manual

336 GC Excavator

HBY 1-UP (336 GC) JFW 1-UP (336 GC)

Language: Original Instructions





Important Safety Information

Most accidents that involve product operation, maintenance and repair are caused by failure to observe basic safety rules or precautions. An accident can often be avoided by recognizing potentially hazardous situations before an accident occurs. A person must be alert to potential hazards, including human factors that can affect safety. This person should also have the necessary training, skills and tools to perform these functions properly.

Improper operation, lubrication, maintenance or repair of this product can be dangerous and could result in injury or death.

Do not operate or perform any lubrication, maintenance or repair on this product, until you verify that you are authorized to perform this work, and have read and understood the operation, lubrication, maintenance and repair information.

Safety precautions and warnings are provided in this manual and on the product. If these hazard warnings are not heeded, bodily injury or death could occur to you or to other persons.

The hazards are identified by the "Safety Alert Symbol" and followed by a "Signal Word" such as "DANGER", "WARNING" or "CAUTION". The Safety Alert "WARNING" label is shown below.



The meaning of this safety alert symbol is as follows:

Attention! Become Alert! Your Safety is Involved.

The message that appears under the warning explains the hazard and can be either written or pictorially presented.

A non-exhaustive list of operations that may cause product damage are identified by "NOTICE" labels on the product and in this publication.

Caterpillar cannot anticipate every possible circumstance that might involve a potential hazard. The warnings in this publication and on the product are, therefore, not all inclusive. You must not use this product in any manner different from that considered by this manual without first satisfying yourself that you have considered all safety rules and precautions applicable to the operation of the product in the location of use, including site-specific rules and precautions applicable to the worksite. If a tool, procedure, work method or operating technique that is not specifically recommended by Caterpillar is used, you must satisfy yourself that it is safe for you and for others. You should also ensure that you are authorized to perform this work, and that the product will not be damaged or become unsafe by the operation, lubrication, maintenance or repair procedures that you intend to use.

The information, specifications, and illustrations in this publication are on the basis of information that was available at the time that the publication was written. The specifications, torques, pressures, measurements, adjustments, illustrations, and other items can change at any time. These changes can affect the service that is given to the product. Obtain the complete and most current information before you start any job. Cat dealers have the most current information available.

NOTICE

When replacement parts are required for this product Caterpillar recommends using original Caterpillar® replacement parts.

Other parts may not meet certain original equipment specifications.

When replacement parts are installed, the machine owner/user should ensure that the machine remains in compliance with all applicable requirements.

In the United States, the maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any repair establishment or individual of the owner's choosing.

lable of Contents	Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped 45
Foreword 5	Sound Information and Vibration Information . 45
Safety Section	Operator Station48
Safety Messages7	Guards (Operator Protection) 48
Additional Messages19	Product Information Section
General Hazard Information26	General Information 50
Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention 29	Identification Information110
Burn Prevention29	Operation Section
Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention 30	Before Operation116
Fire Safety 34	Machine Operation119
Fire Extinguisher Location	Engine Starting182
Track Information34	Operation186
High Pressure Fuel Lines35	Operating Techniques191
Electrical Storm Injury Prevention	Parking229
Before Starting Engine35	Transportation Information
Visibility Information	Towing Information241
Restricted Visibility	Engine Starting (Alternate Methods) 244
Engine Starting39	Maintenance Section
Before Operation39	Maintenance Access247
Work Tools39	Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities 250
Operation40	Maintenance Support258
Engine Stopping43	Maintenance Interval Schedule266
Lifting Objects43	Warranty Section
Demolition43	Warranty Information335
Parking44	Reference Information Section
Slone Operation 44	Reference Materials

4 M0110641-02

Table of Contents

Index Section

Foreword

Foreword

California Proposition 65 Warning

Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm.



WARNING – This product can expose you to chemicals including ethylene glycol, which is known to the State of California to cause birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to:

www.P65Warnings.ca.gov

Do not ingest this chemical. Wash hands after handling to avoid incidental ingestion.



WARNING - This product can expose you to chemicals including lead and lead

compounds, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, or other reproductive harm. For more information go to:

www.P65Warnings.ca.gov

Wash hands after handling components that may contain lead.

Literature Information

This manual should be stored in the operator's compartment in the literature holder or seat back literature storage area.

This manual contains safety information, operation instructions, transportation information, lubrication information, and maintenance information.

Some photographs or illustrations in this publication show details or attachments that can be different from your machine. Guards and covers might have been removed for illustrative purposes.

Continuing improvement and advancement of product design might have caused changes to your machine which are not included in this publication. Read, study, and keep this manual with the machine.

Whenever a question arises regarding your machine, or this publication, please consult your Cat dealer for the latest available information.

Safety

The safety section lists basic safety precautions. In addition, this section identifies the text and locations of warning signs and labels used on the machine.

Read and understand the basic precautions listed in the safety section before operating or performing lubrication, maintenance, and repair on this machine.

Operation

The operation section is a reference for the new operator and a refresher for the experienced operator. This section includes a discussion of gauges, switches, machine controls, attachment controls, transportation, and towing information.

Photographs and illustrations guide the operator through correct procedures of checking, starting, operating, and stopping the machine.

Operating techniques outlined in this publication are basic. Skill and techniques develop as the operator gains knowledge of the machine and its capabilities.

Maintenance

The maintenance section is a guide to equipment care. The Maintenance Interval Schedule (MIS) lists the items to be maintained at a specific service interval. Items without specific intervals are listed under the "When Required" service interval. The Maintenance Interval Schedule lists the page number for the step-by-step instructions required to accomplish the scheduled maintenance. Use the Maintenance Interval Schedule as an index or "one safe source" for all maintenance procedures.

Maintenance Intervals

Use the service hour meter to determine servicing intervals. Calendar intervals shown (daily, weekly, monthly, etc.) can be used instead of service hour meter intervals if the calendar intervals provide more convenient servicing schedules and approximate the indicated service hour meter reading. Perform the recommended service at the interval that occurs first.

Under severe, dusty, or wet operating conditions, more frequent lubrication than is specified in the maintenance intervals chart might be necessary.

6

Perform service on items at multiples of the original requirement. For example, at every 500 service hours or 3 months, also service those items listed under every 250 service hours or monthly and every 10 service hours or daily.

Certified Engine Maintenance

Proper maintenance and repair are essential to keep the engine and machine systems operating correctly. As the heavy-duty off-road diesel engine owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in the Owner Manual, Operation and Maintenance Manual, and Service Manual.

It is prohibited for any person engaged in the business of repairing, servicing, selling, leasing, or trading engines or machines to remove, alter, or to render inoperative, any emission-related device or element of design installed on or in an engine or machine that is in compliance with all applicable regulations of the intended country to which it has been shipped. Certain elements of the machine and engine such as the exhaust system, fuel system, electrical system, intake air system, and cooling system may be emission-related and should not be altered unless approved by Caterpillar.

Machine Capacity

Additional attachments or modifications may exceed machine design capacity which can adversely affect performance characteristics. Included would be stability and system certifications such as brakes steering, and rollover protective structures (ROPS). Contact your Cat dealer for further information.

Product Identification Number

Effective First Quarter 2001 the Product Identification Number (PIN) has changed from 8 to 17 characters. To provide uniform equipment identification, construction equipment manufacturers are moving to comply with the latest version of the product identification numbering standard. Non-road machine PINs are defined by ISO 10261. The new PIN format will apply to all machines and generator sets. The PIN plates and frame marking will display the 17 character PIN. The new format will look like the following:

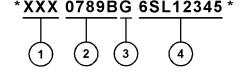


Illustration 1 g03891925

Where:

1. World Manufacturing Code (characters 1-3)

- Machine Descriptor (characters 4-8)
- Check Character (character 9)
- 4. Machine Indicator Section (MIS) or Product Sequence Number (characters 10-17). These were previously referred to as the Serial Number.

Machines and generator sets produced before First Quarter 2001 will maintain their 8 character PIN

Components such as engines, transmissions, axles, and work tools will continue to use an 8 character Serial Number (S/N).

Safety Section

i08676077

Safety Messages

SMCS Code: 7000; 7405

There are several specific safety messages on this machine. The exact location of the hazards and the description of the hazards are reviewed in this section. Become familiarized with all safety messages.

Make sure that all the safety messages are legible. Clean the safety messages or replace the safety messages if you cannot read the words. Replace the illustrations if the illustrations are not visible. When you clean the safety messages, use a cloth, water, and soap. Do not use solvent, gasoline, or other harsh chemicals to clean the safety messages. Solvents, gasoline, or harsh chemicals could loosen the adhesive that secures the safety message. Loose adhesive will allow the safety message to fall.

Replace any safety message that is damaged, or missing. If a safety message is attached to a part that is replaced, install a safety message on the replacement part. Any Cat [®] dealer can provide new safety messages.

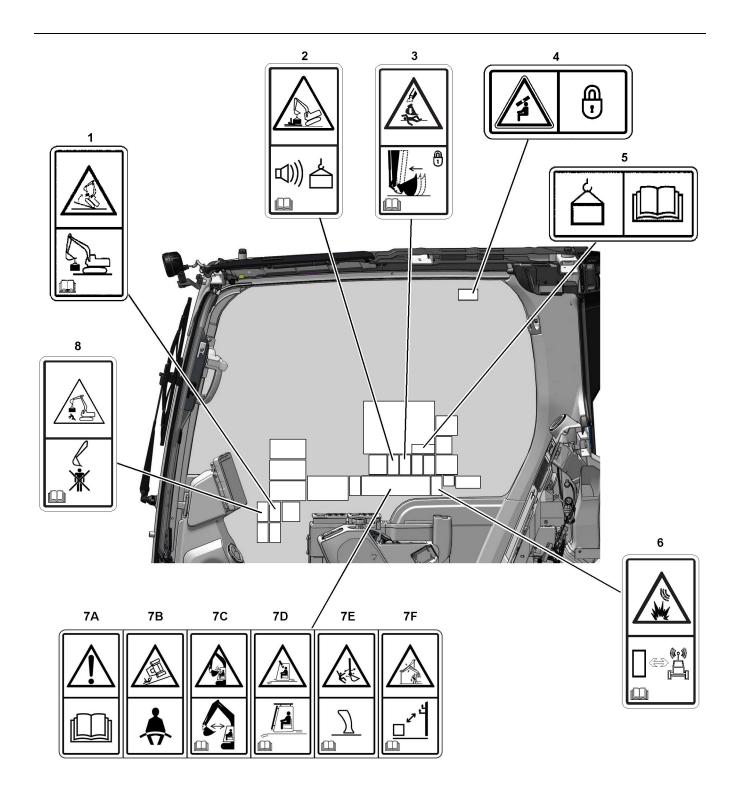
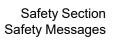
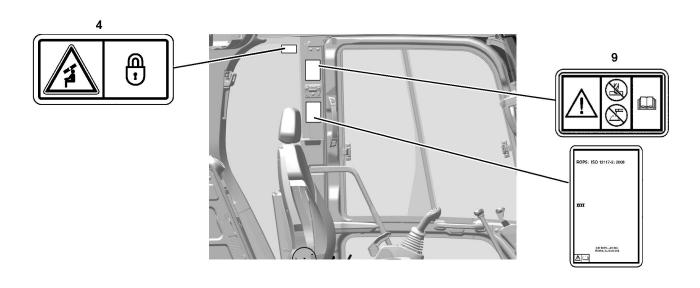


Illustration 2 g06532979

M0110641-02





g06719789 Illustration 3

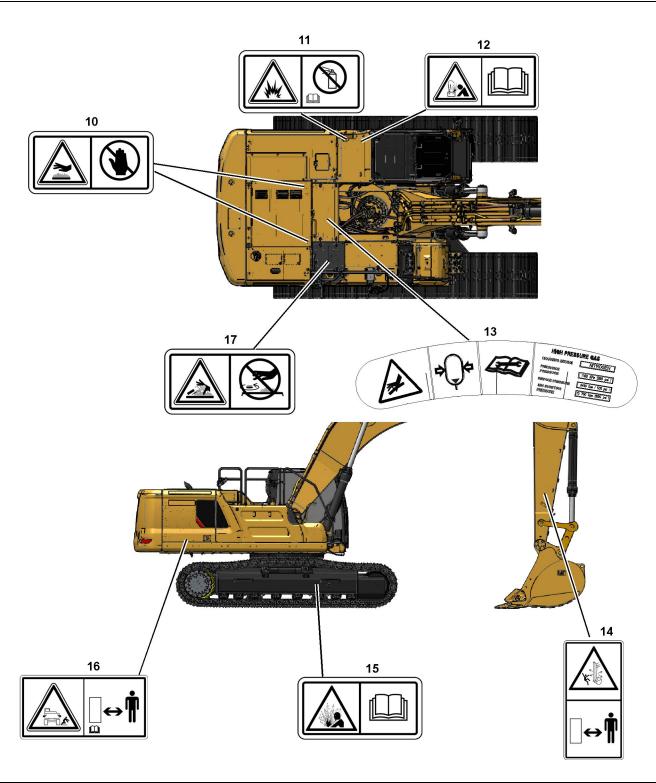


Illustration 4 g06353351

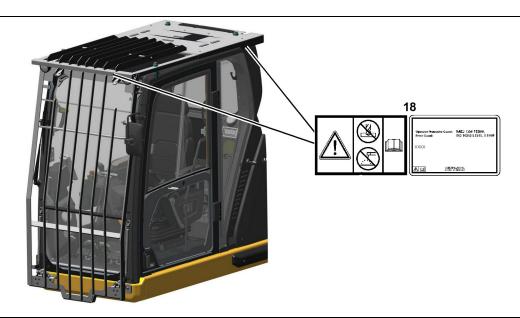


Illustration 5 g06353353

Lifting Level Warning (1)



Illustration 6 g06289488

Overload Warning Device (2)

If equipped, this safety message is located inside the cab on the right side window.



Illustration 7 g06224998

WARNING

Overloading the machine could impact the machine's stability which could result in a tipover hazard. A tipover hazard could result in serious injury or death. Always activate the overload warning device before you handle or lift objects.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls" for further information.

Crushing Injury (3)

If equipped, this safety message is located inside the cab on the right side window.



Illustration 8

g06188540

WARNING

Crush injury. Could cause serious injury or death. Always confirm that the quick coupler is engaged onto the pins. Read the Operator's Manual.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Quick Coupler Operation" for further information.

Crushing Hazard (4)

These safety messages are on the left and right side cab windows.

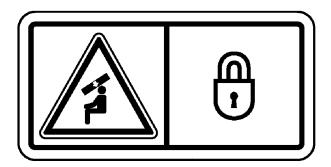


Illustration 9

g02061339

MARNING

Personal injury can result if the window is not latched in the overhead position; ensure the auto lock is engaged.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Window (Front)" for further information.

Lifting Notice (5)

If equipped, this safety message is located inside the cab on the right side window.

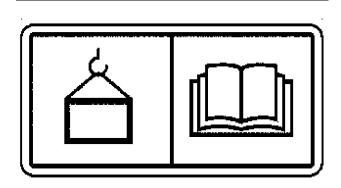


Illustration 10

g06289554

WARNING

When operating the machine's lift tool, read Operation and Maintenance Manual first for lifting capabilities.

Product Link (6)

If equipped, this safety message is located inside the cab on the right side window.







This machine is equipped with a Caterpillar Product Link communication device. When electric detonators are used, this communication device should be deactivated within 12 m (40 ft) of a blast site for satellite-based systems and within 3 m (10 ft) of a blast site for cellular based systems, or within the distance mandated under applicable legal requirements. Failure to do so could cause interference with blasting operations and result in serious injury or death.

In cases where the type of Product Link module cannot be identified, Caterpillar recommends that the device be disabled no less than 12 m (40 ft) from the blast perimeter.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Product Link" for further information.

Do Not Operate (7A)

This safety message is located inside the cab on the right side window.

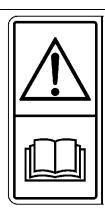


Illustration 12 g06188661

WARNING

Do not operate or work on this machine unless you have read and understand the instructions and warnings in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death. Contact any Caterpillar dealer for replacement manuals. Proper care is your responsibility.

Seat Belt (7B)

This safety message is located inside the cab on the right side window.



Illustration 13 g06188642

MARNING

A seat belt should be worn at all times during machine operation to prevent serious injury or death in the event of an accident or machine overturn. Failure to wear a seat belt during machine operation may result in serious injury or death.

Crushing Hazard (7C)

This safety message is located inside the cab on the right side window.



Illustration 14 g06188644

WARNING

Crushing Hazard! Certain machine front linkage combinations (boom, stick, quick coupler, work tool) may require keeping the work tool away from the cab during operation. Personal injury or death may result if the work tool contacts the cab during operation.

Crushing Hazard (7D)

This safety message is located inside the cab on the right side window.



Illustration 15 g06188652

WARNING

The impact from objects that strike the front of the cab or the top of the cab could result in a crushing hazard with the potential for personal injury or death.

The front guard and the top guard should be installed on the cab for applications where the hazard of falling objects exist. Read the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Guards" for further information.

Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns (7E)

If equipped, this safety message is located inside the cab on the right side window.



Illustration 16 g06188665

WARNING

Crush Hazard. Improper joystick setting could cause possible unexpected movement of the boom, stick, or worktool which could result in serious injury or death. Confirm that the joystick settings are properly configured before you operate the machine. Read the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns" for further information.

Electrical Power Lines (7F)

This safety message is located inside the cab.



Illustration 17 g06188667

DANGER

Electrocution Hazard! Keep the machine and attachments a safe distance from electrical power. Stay clear 3 m (10 ft) plus twice the line insulator length. Read and understand the instructions and warnings in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow the instructions and warnings will cause serious injury or death

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Specifications" for further information.

Do Not Lift Over Personnel (8)

This safety message is located inside the cab on the right side window.



Illustration 18

g06188697

Do not lift

Do Not Weld or Drill on Operator Protective Structure (OPS) (9)

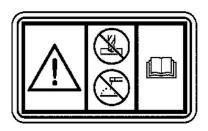




Illustration 19

g06719788

If equipped, this safety message is on the left side pillar in the cab.

MARNING

Structural damage, an overturn, modification, alteration, or improper repair, can impair this structure's protective capability thereby voiding this certification. Do not weld on or drill holes in the structure. Consult a Caterpillar dealer to determine this structure's limitations without voiding its certification.

Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) Certification

If equipped, this machine has been certified to the standards that are listed on the certification plate. The maximum mass of the machine, which includes the operator and the attachments without a payload, should not exceed the mass on the certification plate.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Guards (Operator Protection)" for more information.

Hot Surface (10)

This message is located on the outside of the engine hood and inside the engine hood.



Illustration 20

g01372256

WARNING

Engine hood and engine hood parts can be hot while engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Hot parts or hot components can cause burns or personal injury. Do not allow these parts to contact your skin, when engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Use protective clothing or protective equipment to protect your skin.

Aerosol Starting Aid (11)

This safety message is located near the precleaner. The following information is not applicable to machines that are equipped with an ether starting aid.

17

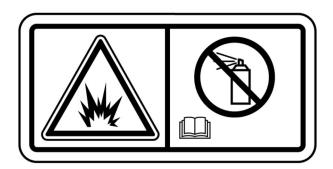


Illustration 21 g01372254

A WARNING

Explosion hazard! Do not use ether! This machine is equipped with an air inlet heater. Using ether can create explosions or fires that can cause personal injury or death. Read and follow the starting procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine Starting" for the proper starting procedure.

Jump-Start Cables (12)

This safety message is positioned on the circuit breaker panel.

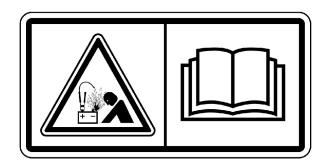


Illustration 22 g01370909

WARNING

Explosion Hazard! Improper jumper cable connections can cause an explosion resulting in serious injury or death. Batteries may be located in separate compartments. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual for the correct jump starting procedure.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine Starting with Jump-Start Cables" for further information.

High-Pressure Gas (13)

This safety message is positioned on the accumulator.

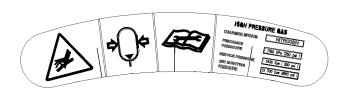


Illustration 23 g06188756

A WARNING

Pressurized System!

Hydraulic accumulators contain gas and oil under high pressure. DO NOT disconnect lines or disassemble any component of a pressurized accumulator. All gas pre-charge must be removed from the accumulator as instructed by the service manual before servicing or disposing of the accumulator or any accumulator component.

Failure to follow the instructions and warnings could result in personal injury or death.

Only use dry nitrogen gas to recharge accumulators. See your Cat dealer for special equipment and detailed information for accumulator service and charging.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped" for further information.

Crushing Hazard (14)

This safety message is on both sides of the stick.

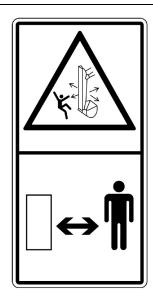


Illustration 24 g01385579

WARNING

A crushing hazard exists when the stick and boom are in motion and when the machine is being used in object handling applications. Failure to stay clear of the stick and boom when the machine is in operation can result in personal injury or death. Stay clear of the stick and boom when the machine is in operation.

Vapor Explosion (15)

If equipped, this safety message is on the storage compartment for the fuel transfer pump.

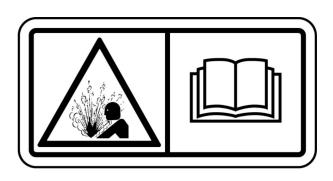


Illustration 25 g01407639

WARNING

Explosion hazard! Fuel vapors can accumulate in the refueling pump compartment and can be ignited by improper operation of the refueling pump. Failure to follow the operating instructions for the refueling pump could result in personal injury or death. Read and follow the operating instructions for the refueling pump in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel Transfer Pump (Refueling)" for further information.

Crushing Hazard (16)

This safety message is on the rear of each side of the machine.

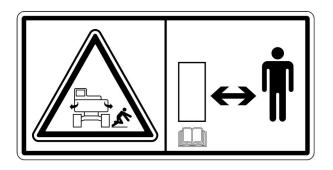




Illustration 26 g06219420

A WARNING

Machine swings. Stay back. Crushing hazard could cause serious injury or death.

Relieve Hydraulic Tank Pressure (17)

This safety message is on top of the hydraulic tank.



Illustration 27 g01371640

WARNING

Hot Fluid Under Pressure!

Do NOT remove pressure cap when hot. Hot oil could cause serious injury or death.

Falling Object Guard Structure (18)

If equipped, this safety message is on top of the front falling object guard structure. This safety message is also on the left side of the falling object guard structure on the top of the cab.

Structural damage, an overturn, modification, alteration, or improper repair can impair this structure's protection capability thereby voiding this certification. Do not weld on or drill holes in the structure. Consult a Caterpillar dealer to determine this structure's limitations without voiding its certification.

⋒ WARNING

i08511133

g06289969

Additional Messages

SMCS Code: 7000; 7405

Illustration 28

There are several specific messages on this machine. The exact location of the messages and the description of the information are reviewed in this section. Become familiar with all messages.

Make sure that all the messages are legible. Clean the messages or replace the messages if you cannot read the words. Replace the illustrations if the illustrations are not legible. When you clean the messages, use a cloth, water, and soap. Do not use solvent, gasoline, or other harsh chemicals to clean the messages. Solvents, gasoline, or harsh chemicals could loosen the adhesive that secures the messages. Loose adhesive will allow the messages to fall.

Replace any message that is damaged, or missing. If a message is attached to a part that is replaced, install a message on the replacement part. Any Cat dealer can provide new messages.

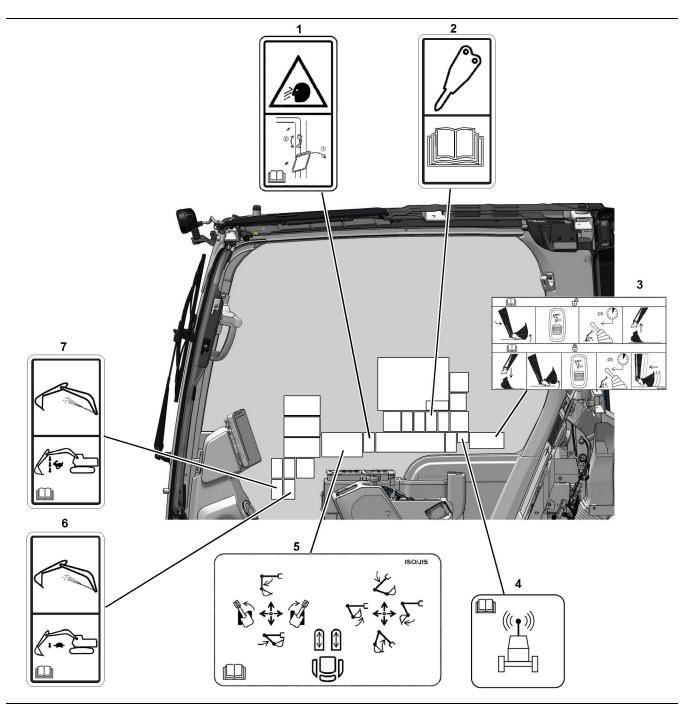


Illustration 29 g06353396

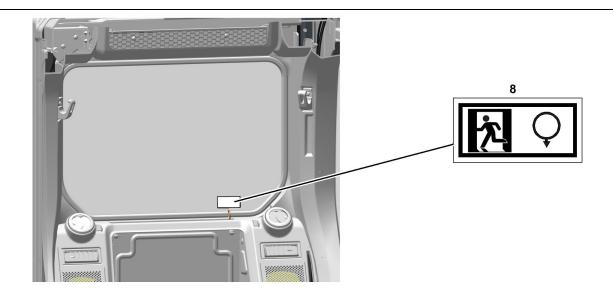


Illustration 30 g06353410

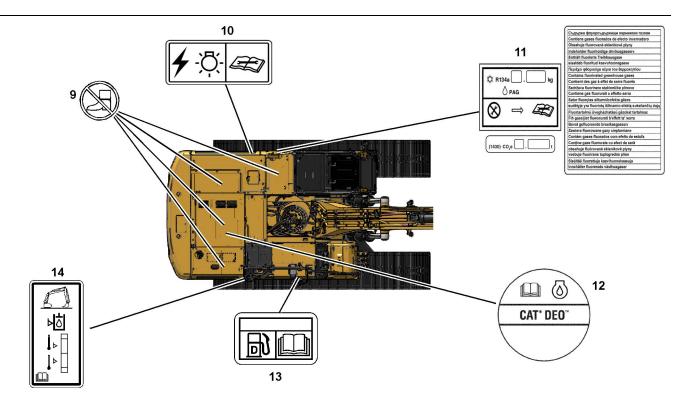


Illustration 31 g06543976

Front Window Usage (1)

For machines equipped with the Cat Grade monitor, the monitor must be moved downward before lifting or lowering the front window. The monitor is in the path of the window track when the monitor is in the normal position.



Illustration 32 g06214810

Hammer Operation (2)

This message is on the window on the right side of the cab.

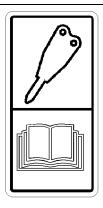


Illustration 33 g06189240

See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hammer Operation" within Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Work Tool Control (One-Way Flow)" for instructions on hammer operation.

Also, see Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic Hammer Control (Foot Switch)" within Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Work Tool Control (One-Way Flow)" for instructions on hammer operation.

Quick Coupler Operations (3)

This message is on the window on the right side of the cab.

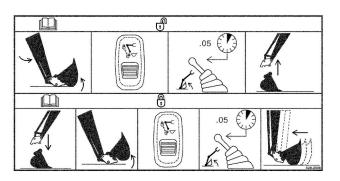


Illustration 34 g06353361

See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Quick Coupler Operation" for instructions on quick coupler operation.

Data Privacy (4)



Illustration 35 g01418953

The Product Link System is a satellite communication device that transmits information regarding the machine back to Caterpillar and Cat dealers and customers. All logged events and diagnostic codes that are available to the Cat Electronic Technician (ET) on the Cat data link can be sent to the satellite. Information can also be sent to the Product Link System. The information is used to improve Cat products and Cat services.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Product Link" for more information.

Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns (5)

If equipped, this message is on the right side window of the cab.

M0110641-02

23

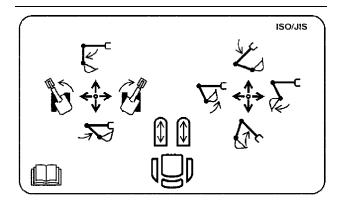


Illustration 36 g06214805

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns" for further information.

Hose Burst Protection (Equipped) (6)

This message is on the window on the right side of the cab if the machine is equipped with Hose Burst Protection Valves.

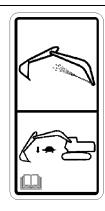


Illustration 37 g06189238

Hose Burst (Not Equipped) (7)

This message is on the window on the right side of the cab if the machine is not equipped with Hose Burst Protection Valves.

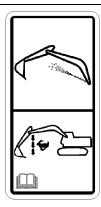


Illustration 38 g06189239

Alternate Exit (8)

If equipped, this message is on the rear window of the cab in the lower left-hand corner.

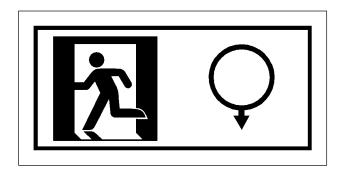


Illustration 39 g06189112

Pull the ring to pull out the seal. Push the window out of the cab and exit through the opening.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Alternate Exit" for further information.

No Step (9)

This message is on various places on the upper structure and covers. The message is also on the engine valve cover. Safety Section Additional Messages

24

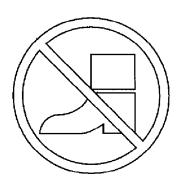


Illustration 40 g00911158

Do not step in this area.

DEF Purge Indicator Lamp (10)

This message is located behind the cab near the disconnect switch and pertains to the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) system.

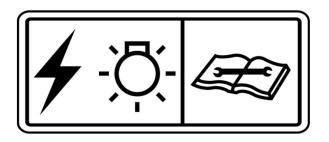


Illustration 41 g03796564

NOTICE

After the engine is shutdown apply the battery disconnect switch. Applying the battery disconnect too soon will prevent the DEF system from being purged and could cause DEF to freeze in the lines.

Note: This film is applicable only to machines equipped with Tier 4 engines.

Air Conditioner (11)

These messages are positioned on the left door behind the cab.

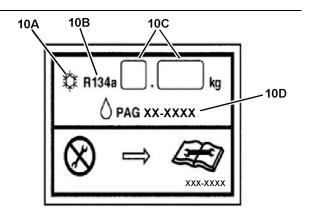


Illustration 42 g06214936

- (10A) Air conditioning symbol
- (10B) R134a (Refrigerant type common name)
- (10C) Refrigerant quantity
- (10D) PAG (polyalkylene glycol) lubricating oil part number

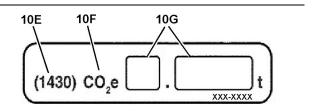


Illustration 43

g06214938

If equipped, this plate provides the below more greenhouse gas information.

- (10E) (1430) The Global Warming Potential of R134a
- (10F) CO2 equivalent
- (10G) The system contains 1.430 metric tonne of CO₂ equivalent



Illustration 44 g06214940

(10H) If equipped, this film provides the required language translations of the text "Contains fluorinated greenhouse gases" for the greenhouse gas regulation. These messages for the air conditioner system have the appropriate information for the following services: the air conditioner lubricant, the refrigerant charge, and the refrigerant capacity.

Engine Oil Requirements (12)

This message is on top of the engine.

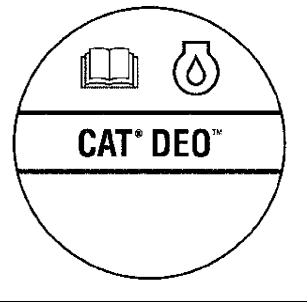


Illustration 45 g06217215

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities".

Diesel Fuel Requirements (13)

This message is located by the fuel tank.

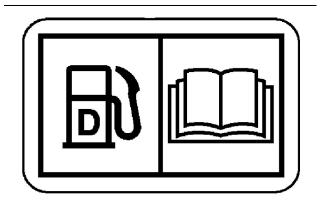


Illustration 46 g03676438

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities".

Hydraulic Oil Level Check (14)

This message is located in the right access compartment next to the sight gauge for the hydraulic oil .

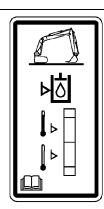


Illustration 47

g01069075

Check hydraulic oil level daily. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check" for details.

i08313103

General Hazard Information

SMCS Code: 7000



Illustration 48

g00104545

Typical example

Attach a "Do Not Operate" warning tag or a similar warning tag to the start switch or to the controls. Attach the warning tag before you service the equipment or before you repair the equipment. Warning tag SEHS7332 is available from your Cat dealer.

A WARNING

Operating the machine while distracted can result in the loss of machine control. Use extreme caution when using any device while operating the machine. Operating the machine while distracted can result in personal injury or death. Know the width of your equipment to maintain proper clearance when you operate the equipment near fences or near boundary obstacles.

Be aware of high-voltage power lines and power cables that are buried. If the machine comes in contact with these hazards, serious injury or death may occur from electrocution.

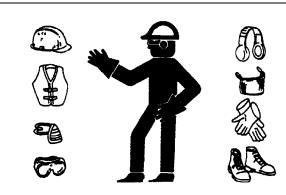


Illustration 49

g00702020

Wear a hard hat, protective glasses, and other protective equipment, as required.

Do not wear loose clothing or jewelry that can snag on controls or on other parts of the equipment.

Make sure that all protective guards and all covers are secured in place on the equipment.

Keep the equipment free from foreign material. Remove debris, oil, tools, and other items from the deck, from walkways, and from steps.

Secure all loose items such as lunch boxes, tools, and other items that are not a part of the equipment.

Know the appropriate work site hand signals and the personnel that are authorized to give the hand signals. Accept hand signals from one person only.

Do not smoke when you service an air conditioner. Also, do not smoke if refrigerant gas may be present. Inhaling the fumes that are released from a flame that contacts air conditioner refrigerant can cause bodily harm or death. Inhaling gas from air conditioner refrigerant through a lighted cigarette can cause bodily harm or death.

Never put maintenance fluids into glass containers. Drain all liquids into a suitable container.

Obey all local regulations for the disposal of liquids.

Use all cleaning solutions with care. Report all necessary repairs.

Do not allow unauthorized personnel on the equipment.

Unless you are instructed otherwise, perform maintenance with the equipment in the servicing position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual for the procedure for placing the equipment in the servicing position.

When you perform maintenance above ground level, use appropriate devices such as ladders or man lift machines. If equipped, use the machine anchorage points and use approved fall arrest harnesses and lanyards.

Pressurized Air and Water

Pressurized air and/or water can cause debris and/or hot water to be blown out. The debris and/or hot water could result in personal injury.

When pressurized air and/or pressurized water is used for cleaning, wear protective clothing, protective shoes, and eye protection. Eye protection includes goggles or a protective face shield.

The maximum air pressure for cleaning purposes must be reduced to 205 kPa (30 psi) when the nozzle is deadheaded and the nozzle is used with an effective chip deflector and personal protective equipment. The maximum water pressure for cleaning purposes must be below 275 kPa (40 psi).

Avoid direct spraying of water on electrical connectors, connections, and components. When using air for cleaning, allow the machine to cool to reduce the possibility of fine debris igniting when redeposited on hot surfaces.

Trapped Pressure

Pressure can be trapped in a hydraulic system. Releasing trapped pressure can cause sudden machine movement or attachment movement. Use caution if you disconnect hydraulic lines or fittings. High-pressure oil that is released can cause a hose to whip. High-pressure oil that is released can cause oil to spray. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death.

Fluid Penetration

Pressure can be trapped in the hydraulic circuit long after the machine has been stopped. The pressure can cause hydraulic fluid or items such as pipe plugs to escape rapidly if the pressure is not relieved correctly.

Do not remove any hydraulic components or parts until pressure has been relieved or personal injury may occur. Do not disassemble any hydraulic components or parts until pressure has been relieved or personal injury may occur. Refer to the Service Manual for any procedures that are required to relieve the hydraulic pressure.

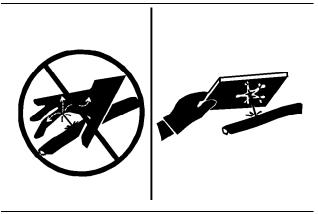


Illustration 50 g00687600

Always use a board or cardboard when you check for a leak. Leaking fluid that is under pressure can penetrate body tissue. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death. A pin hole leak can cause severe injury. If fluid is injected into your skin, you must get treatment immediately. Seek treatment from a doctor that is familiar with this type of injury.

Containing Fluid Spillage

Care must be taken in order to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the equipment. Prepare to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component that contains fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, "Cat dealer Service Tool Catalog" for the following items:

- Tools that are suitable for collecting fluids and equipment that is suitable for collecting fluids
- Tools that are suitable for containing fluids and equipment that is suitable for containing fluids

General Hazard Information

Obey all local regulations for the disposal of liquids.

Inhalation

28

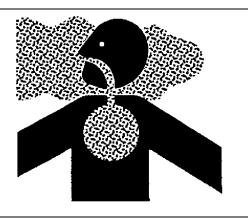


Illustration 51 g02159053

Exhaust

Use caution. Exhaust fumes can be hazardous to your health. If you operate the machine in an enclosed area, adequate ventilation is necessary.

Asbestos Information

Cat equipment and replacement parts that are shipped from Caterpillar are asbestos free. Caterpillar recommends the use of only genuine Cat replacement parts. Use the following guidelines when you handle any replacement parts that contain asbestos or when you handle asbestos debris.

Use caution. Avoid inhaling dust that might be generated when you handle components that contain asbestos fibers. Inhaling this dust can be hazardous to your health. The components that may contain asbestos fibers are brake pads, brake bands, lining material, clutch plates, and some gaskets. The asbestos that is used in these components is bound in a resin or sealed in some way. Normal handling is not hazardous unless airborne dust that contains asbestos is generated.

If dust that may contain asbestos is present, there are several guidelines that should be followed:

- Never use compressed air for cleaning.
- Avoid brushing materials that contain asbestos.
- Avoid grinding materials that contain asbestos.
- Use a wet method in order to clean up asbestos materials.
- A vacuum cleaner that is equipped with a high efficiency particulate air filter (HEPA) can also be used.

- Use exhaust ventilation on permanent machining jobs.
- Wear an approved respirator if there is no other way to control the dust.
- Comply with applicable rules and regulations for the work place. In the United States, use Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) requirements. These OSHA requirements can be found in "29 CFR 1910.1001". In Japan, use the requirements found in the "Ordinance on Prevention of Health Impairment due to Asbestos" in addition to the requirements of the Industrial Safety and Health Act.
- Obey environmental regulations for the disposal of asbestos.
- Stay away from areas that might have asbestos particles in the air.

Hexavalent Chromium Information

Cat equipment and replacement parts comply with applicable regulations and requirements where originally sold. Caterpillar recommends the use of only genuine Cat replacement parts.

Hexavalent chromium has occasionally been detected on exhaust and heat shield systems on Cat engines. Although lab testing is the only accurate way to know if hexavalent chromium is, in fact, present, the presence of a yellow deposit in areas of high heat (for example, exhaust system components or exhaust insulation) may be an indication of the presence of hexavalent chromium.

Use caution if you suspect the presence of hexavalent chromium. Avoid skin contact when handling items that you suspect may contain hexavalent chromium, and avoid inhalation of any dust in the suspect area. Inhalation of, or skin contact with, hexavalent chromium dust may be hazardous to your health.

If such yellow deposits are found on the engine, engine component parts, or associated equipment or packages, Caterpillar recommends following local health and safety regulations and guidelines, utilizing good hygiene, and adhering to safe work practices when handling the equipment or parts. Caterpillar also recommends the following:

- Wear appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE).
- Wash your hands and face with soap and water prior to eating, drinking, or smoking, and also during rest room breaks, to prevent ingestion of any yellow powder.
- Never use compressed air for cleaning areas suspected of containing hexavalent chromium.

- Avoid brushing, grinding, or cutting materials suspected of containing hexavalent chromium.
- Obey environmental regulations for the disposal of all materials that may contain or have come into contact with hexavalent chromium.
- Stay away from areas that might have hexavalent chromium particles in the air.

Dispose of Waste Properly

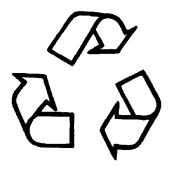


Illustration 52 g00706404

Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment. Potentially harmful fluids should be disposed of according to local regulations.

Always use leakproof containers when you drain fluids. Do not pour waste onto the ground, down a drain, or into any source of water.

i01359664

Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

Support the equipment properly before you perform any work or maintenance beneath that equipment. Do not depend on the hydraulic cylinders to hold up the equipment. Equipment can fall if a control is moved, or if a hydraulic line breaks.

Do not work beneath the cab of the machine unless the cab is properly supported.

Unless you are instructed otherwise, never attempt adjustments while the machine is moving or while the engine is running.

Never jump across the starter solenoid terminals in order to start the engine. Unexpected machine movement could result.

Whenever there are equipment control linkages the clearance in the linkage area will change with the movement of the equipment or the machine. Stay clear of areas that may have a sudden change in clearance with machine movement or equipment movement.

Stay clear of all rotating and moving parts.

If it is necessary to remove guards in order to perform maintenance, always install the guards after the maintenance is performed.

Keep objects away from moving fan blades. The fan blade will throw objects or cut objects.

Do not use a kinked wire cable or a frayed wire cable. Wear gloves when you handle wire cable.

When you strike a retainer pin with force, the retainer pin can fly out. The loose retainer pin can injure personnel. Make sure that the area is clear of people when you strike a retainer pin. To avoid injury to your eyes, wear protective glasses when you strike a retainer pin.

Chips or other debris can fly off an object when you strike the object. Make sure that no one can be injured by flying debris before striking any object.

i07746334

Burn Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

Do not touch any part of an operating engine. Allow the engine to cool before any maintenance is performed on the engine. Relieve all pressure in the air system, in the oil system, in the lubrication system, in the fuel system, or in the cooling system before any lines, fittings, or related items are disconnected.

Coolant

When the engine is at operating temperature, the engine coolant is hot. The coolant is also under pressure. The radiator and all lines to the heaters or to the engine contain hot coolant.

Any contact with hot coolant or with steam can cause severe burns. Allow cooling system components to cool before the cooling system is drained.

Check the coolant level only after the engine has been stopped.

Ensure that the filler cap is cool before removing the filler cap. The filler cap must be cool enough to touch with a bare hand. Remove the filler cap slowly to relieve pressure.

Cooling system conditioner contains alkali. Alkali can cause personal injury. Do not allow alkali to contact the skin, the eyes, or the mouth.

Oils

30

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil to contact the skin. Also, do not allow hot components to contact the skin.

Remove the hydraulic tank filler cap only after the engine has been stopped. The filler cap must be cool enough to touch with a bare hand. Follow the standard procedure in this manual to remove the hydraulic tank filler cap.

Batteries

The liquid in a battery is an electrolyte. Electrolyte is an acid that can cause personal injury. Do not allow electrolyte to contact the skin or the eyes.

Do not smoke while checking the battery electrolyte levels. Batteries give off flammable fumes which can explode.

Always wear protective glasses when you work with batteries. Wash hands after touching batteries. The use of gloves is recommended.

i06179517

Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000



Illustration 53 g00704000

Regeneration

The exhaust gas temperatures during regeneration will be elevated. Follow proper fire prevention instructions and use the disable regeneration function (if equipped) when appropriate.

General

All fuels, most lubricants, and some coolant mixtures are flammable.

To minimize the risk of fire or explosion, Caterpillar recommends the following actions.

Always perform a Walk-Around Inspection, which may help you identify a fire hazard. Do not operate a machine when a fire hazard exists. Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Understand the use of the primary exit and alternative exit on the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Alternative Exit".

Do not operate a machine with a fluid leak. Repair leaks and clean up fluids before resuming machine operation. Fluids that are leaking or spilled onto hot surfaces or onto electrical components can cause a fire. A fire may cause personal injury or death.

Remove flammable material such as leaves, twigs, papers, trash, and so on. These items may accumulate in the engine compartment or around other hot areas and hot parts on the machine.

Keep the access doors to major machine compartments closed and access doors in working condition in order to permit the use of fire suppression equipment, in case a fire should occur.

Clean all accumulations of flammable materials such as fuel, oil, and debris from the machine.

Do not operate the machine near any flame.

Keep shields in place. Exhaust shields (if equipped) protect hot exhaust components from oil spray or fuel spray in a break in a line, in a hose, or in a seal. Exhaust shields must be installed correctly.

Do not weld or flame cut on tanks or lines that contain flammable fluids or flammable material. Empty and purge the lines and tanks. Then clean the lines and tanks with a nonflammable solvent prior to welding or flame cutting. Ensure that the components are properly grounded in order to avoid unwanted arcs.

Dust that is generated from repairing nonmetallic hoods or fenders may be flammable and/or explosive. Repair such components in a ventilated area away from open flames or sparks. Use suitable Personal Protection Equipment (PPE).

Inspect all lines and hoses for wear or deterioration. Replace damaged lines and hoses. The lines and the hoses should have adequate support and secure clamps. Tighten all connections to the recommended torque. Damage to the protective cover or insulation may provide fuel for fires.

Store fuels and lubricants in properly marked containers away from unauthorized personnel. Store oily rags and flammable materials in protective containers. Do not smoke in areas that are used for storing flammable materials.



Illustration 54

g03839130

Use caution when you are fueling a machine. Do not smoke while you are fueling a machine. Do not fuel a machine near open flames or sparks. Do not use cell phones or other electronic devices while you are refueling. Always stop the engine before fueling. Fill the fuel tank outdoors. Properly clean areas of spillage.

Avoid static electricity risk when fueling. Ultra low sulfur diesel (ULSD) poses a greater static ignition hazard than earlier diesel formulations with a higher sulfur content. Avoid death or serious injury from fire or explosion. Consult with your fuel or fuel system supplier to ensure that the delivery system is in compliance with fueling standards for proper grounding and bonding practices.

32

Never store flammable fluids in the operator compartment of the machine.

Battery and Battery Cables



Illustration 55 g03839133

Caterpillar recommends the following in order to minimize the risk of fire or an explosion related to the battery.

Do not operate a machine if battery cables or related parts show signs of wear or damage. Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Follow safe procedures for engine starting with jumpstart cables. Improper jumper cable connections can cause an explosion that may result in injury. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables" for specific instructions.

Do not charge a frozen battery. This may cause an explosion.

Gases from a battery can explode. Keep any open flames or sparks away from the top of a battery. Do not smoke in battery charging areas. Do not use cell phones or other electronic devices in battery charging areas.

Never check the battery charge by placing a metal object across the terminal posts. Use a voltmeter in order to check the battery charge.

Daily inspect battery cables that are in areas that are visible. Inspect cables, clips, straps, and other restraints for damage. Replace any damaged parts. Check for signs of the following, which can occur over time due to use and environmental factors:

Fraying

- Abrasion
- Cracking
- Discoloration
- · Cuts on the insulation of the cable
- Fouling
- Corroded terminals, damaged terminals, and loose terminals

Replace damaged battery cable(s) and replace any related parts. Eliminate any fouling, which may have caused insulation failure or related component damage or wear. Ensure that all components are reinstalled correctly.

An exposed wire on the battery cable may cause a short to ground if the exposed area comes into contact with a grounded surface. A battery cable short produces heat from the battery current, which may be a fire hazard.

An exposed wire on the ground cable between the battery and the disconnect switch may cause the disconnect switch to be bypassed if the exposed area comes into contact with a grounded surface. This may result in an unsafe condition for servicing the machine. Repair components or replace components before servicing the machine.

WARNING

Fire on a machine can result in personal injury or death. Exposed battery cables that come into contact with a grounded connection can result in fires. Replace cables and related parts that show signs of wear or damage. Contact your Cat dealer.

Wiring

Check electrical wires daily. If any of the following conditions exist, replace parts before you operate the machine.

- Fraying
- Signs of abrasion or wear
- Cracking
- Discoloration
- · Cuts on insulation
- Other damage

Make sure that all clamps, guards, clips, and straps are reinstalled correctly. This will help to prevent vibration, rubbing against other parts, and excessive heat during machine operation.

Attaching electrical wiring to hoses and tubes that contain flammable fluids or combustible fluids should be avoided.

Consult your Cat dealer for repair or for replacement parts.

Keep wiring and electrical connections free of debris.

Lines, Tubes, and Hoses

Do not bend high-pressure lines. Do not strike highpressure lines. Do not install any lines that are bent or damaged. Use the appropriate backup wrenches in order to tighten all connections to the recommended torque.

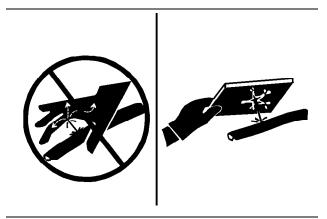


Illustration 56 g00687600

Check lines, tubes, and hoses carefully. Wear Personal Protection Equipment (PPE) in order to check for leaks. Always use a board or cardboard when you check for a leak. Leaking fluid that is under pressure can penetrate body tissue. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death. A pin hole leak can cause severe injury. If fluid is injected into your skin, you must get treatment immediately. Seek treatment from a doctor that is familiar with this type of injury.

Replace the affected parts if any of the following conditions are present:

- End fittings are damaged or leaking.
- · Outer coverings are chafed or cut.
- Wires are exposed.
- Outer coverings are swelling or ballooning.
- Flexible parts of the hoses are kinked.
- Outer covers have exposed embedded armoring.
- · End fittings are displaced.

Make sure that all clamps, guards, and heat shields are installed correctly. During machine operation, this will help to prevent vibration, rubbing against other parts, excessive heat, and failure of lines, tubes, and hoses.

Do not operate a machine when a fire hazard exists. Repair any lines that are corroded, loose, or damaged. Leaks may provide fuel for fires. Consult your Cat dealer for repair or for replacement parts. Use genuine Cat parts or the equivalent, for capabilities of both the pressure limit and temperature limit.

Ether

Ether (if equipped) is commonly used in cold-weather applications. Ether is flammable and poisonous.

Only use approved Ether canisters for the Ether dispensing system fitted to your machine, do not spray Ether manually into an engine, follow the correct cold engine starting procedures. Refer to the section in the Operation and Maintenance Manual with the label "Engine Starting".

A WARNING

Manually spraying Ether into an engine with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) may result in the accumulation of Ether in the DPF and an explosion. This in conjunction with other factors may result in an injury or death.

Use ether in ventilated areas. Do not smoke while you are replacing an ether cylinder.

Do not store ether cylinders in living areas or in the operator compartment of a machine. Do not store ether cylinders in direct sunlight or in temperatures above 49° C (120.2° F). Keep ether cylinders away from open flames or sparks.

Dispose of used ether cylinders properly. Do not puncture an ether cylinder. Keep ether cylinders away from unauthorized personnel.

Fire Extinguisher

As an additional safety measure, keep a fire extinguisher on the machine.

Be familiar with the operation of the fire extinguisher. Inspect the fire extinguisher and service the fire extinguisher regularly. Follow the recommendations on the instruction plate.

Safety Section Fire Safety

34

Consider installation of an aftermarket Fire Suppression System, if the application and working conditions warrant the installation.

i07041871

Fire Safety

SMCS Code: 7000

Note: Locate secondary exits and how to use the secondary exits before you operate the machine.

Note: Locate fire extinguishers and how to use a fire extinguisher before you operate the machine.

If you find that you are involved in a machine fire, your safety and that of others on site are the top priority. The following actions should only be performed if the actions do not present a danger or risk to you and any nearby people. Assess the risk of personal injury and move away to a safe distance as soon as you feel unsafe.

Move the machine away from nearby combustible material such as fuel/oil stations, structures, trash, mulch, and timber.

Lower any implements and turn off the engine as soon as possible. If you leave the engine running, the engine will continue to feed a fire. The fire will be fed from any damaged hoses that are attached to the engine or pumps.

If possible, turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. Disconnecting the battery will remove the ignition source in the event of an electrical short. Disconnecting the battery will eliminate a second ignition source if electrical wiring is damaged by the fire, resulting in a short circuit.

Notify emergency personnel of the fire and your location.

If your machine is equipped with a fire suppression system, follow the manufacturers procedure for activating the system.

Note: Fire suppression systems need to be regularly inspected by qualified personnel. You must be trained to operate the fire suppression system.

If you are unable to do anything else, shut off the machine before exiting. By shutting off the machine, fuels will not continue to be pumped into the fire.

If the fire grows out of control, be aware of the following risks:

- Tires on wheeled machines pose a risk of explosion as tires burn. Hot shrapnel and debris can be thrown great distances in an explosion.
- Tanks, accumulators, hoses, and fittings can rupture in a fire, spraying fuels and shrapnel over a large area.

 Remember that nearly all the fluids on the machine are flammable, including coolant and oils.
 Additionally, plastics, rubbers, fabrics, and resins in fiberglass panels are also flammable.

i07045544

Fire Extinguisher Location

SMCS Code: 7000; 7419

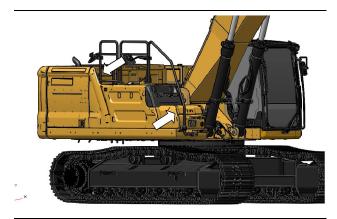


Illustration 57

q06207808

Make sure that a fire extinguisher is available. Be familiar with the operation of the fire extinguisher. Inspect the fire extinguisher and service the fire extinguisher regularly. Obey the recommendations on the instruction plate.

The recommended location for mounting the fire extinguisher is in the storage box. The fire extinguisher may also be mounted on the upper handrail on the right side of the machine.

i01329108

Track Information

SMCS Code: 4170; 7000

Track adjusting systems use either grease or oil under high pressure to keep the track under tension.

Grease or oil under high pressure coming out of the relief valve can penetrate the body causing injury or death. Do not watch the relief valve to see if grease or oil is escaping. Watch the track or track adjustment cylinder to see if the track is being loosened.

The pins and bushings in a dry track pin joint can become very hot. It is possible to burn the fingers if there is more than brief contact with these components.

i02546320

High Pressure Fuel Lines

SMCS Code: 1000; 1274; 7000

⚠ WARNING

Contact with high pressure fuel may cause fluid penetration and burn hazards. High pressure fuel spray may cause a fire hazard. Failure to follow these inspection, maintenance and service instructions may cause personal injury or death.

The high pressure fuel lines are the fuel lines that are between the high pressure fuel pump and the high pressure fuel manifold and the fuel lines that are between the fuel manifold and cylinder head. These fuel lines are different from fuel lines on other fuel systems.

This is because of the following differences:

- The high pressure fuel lines are constantly charged with high pressure.
- The internal pressures of the high pressure fuel lines are higher than other types of fuel system.
- The high pressure fuel lines are formed to shape and then strengthened by a special process.

Do not step on the high pressure fuel lines. Do not deflect the high pressure fuel lines. Do not bend or strike the high pressure fuel lines. Deformation or damage of the high pressure fuel lines may cause a point of weakness and potential failure.

Do not check the high pressure fuel lines with the engine or the starting motor in operation. After the engine has stopped allow 10 minutes to pass in order to allow the pressure to be purged before any service or repair is performed on the engine fuel lines.

Do not loosen the high pressure fuel lines in order to remove air from the fuel system. This procedure is not required.

Visually inspect the high pressure fuel lines before the engine is started. This inspection should be each day.

If you inspect the engine in operation, always use the proper inspection procedure in order to avoid a fluid penetration hazard. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General hazard Information".

- Inspect the high pressure fuel lines for damage, deformation, a nick, a cut, a crease, or a dent.
- Do not operate the engine with a fuel leak. If there
 is a leak do not tighten the connection in order to
 stop the leak. The connection must only be
 tightened to the recommended torque. Refer to
 Disassembly and Assembly for your engine.

- If the high pressure fuel lines are torqued correctly and the high pressure fuel lines are leaking the high pressure fuel lines must be replaced.
- Ensure that all clips on the high pressure fuel lines are in place. Do not operate the engine with clips that are damaged, missing or loose.
- Do not attach any other item to the high pressure fuel lines.
- Loosened high pressure fuel lines must be replaced. Also removed high pressure fuel lines must be replaced. Refer to Disassembly and Assembly for your engine.

i01122596

Electrical Storm Injury Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

When lightning is striking in the vicinity of the machine, the operator should never attempt the following procedures:

- Mount the machine.
- · Dismount the machine.

If you are in the operator's station during an electrical storm, stay in the operator's station. If you are on the ground during an electrical storm, stay away from the vicinity of the machine.

i00771840

Before Starting Engine

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Start the engine only from the operator compartment. Never short across the starter terminals or across the batteries. Shorting could damage the electrical system by bypassing the engine neutral start system.

Inspect the condition of the seat belt and of the mounting hardware. Replace any parts that are worn or damaged. Regardless of appearance, replace the seat belt after three years of use. Do not use a seat belt extension on a retractable seat belt.

Adjust the seat so that full pedal travel can be achieved with the operator's back against the back of the seat.

Make sure that the machine is equipped with a lighting system that is adequate for the job conditions. Make sure that all machine lights are working properly.

36 M0110641-02

Safety Section Visibility Information

Before you start the engine and before you move the machine, make sure that no one is underneath the machine, around the machine, or on the machine. Make sure that the area is free of personnel.

i08473852

Visibility Information

SMCS Code: 7000

Before you start the machine, perform a walk-around inspection to ensure that there are no hazards around the machine.

While the machine is in operation, constantly survey the area around the machine to identify potential hazards as hazards become visible around the machine.

Your machine may be equipped with visual aids. Some examples of visual aids are Closed Circuit Television (CCTV) and mirrors. Before operating the machine, ensure that the visual aids are in proper working condition and that the visual aids are clean. Shut down the machine until damaged or nonfunctional visual aid(s) are repaired (if applicable) or until appropriate job sité organization is used to minimize hazards that are caused by any resulting restricted visibility. Adjust the visual aids using the procedures that are located in this Operation and Maintenance Manual. If equipped, the Work Area Vision System shall be adjusted according to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8157, "Work Area Vision System". If equipped, the Cat Detect Object Detection shall be adjusted according to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Cat Detect Object Detection" for your machine.

It may not be possible to provide direct visibility on large machines to all areas around the machine. Appropriate job site organization is required to minimize hazards that are caused by restricted visibility. Job site organization is a collection of rules and procedures that coordinates machines and people that work together in the same area. Examples of job site organization include the following:

- Safety instructions
- Controlled patterns of machine movement and vehicle movement
- · Workers that direct safe movement of traffic
- Restricted areas
- Operator training
- Warning symbols or warning signs on machines or on vehicles
- A system of communication

 Communication between workers and operators prior to approaching the machine

Modifications of the machine configuration by the user that result in a restriction of visibility shall be evaluated.

i08033778

Restricted Visibility

SMCS Code: 7000

The size and the configuration of this machine may result in areas that cannot be seen when the operator is seated. For restricted visibility areas, an appropriate job site organization must be utilized to minimize hazards of this restricted visibility. For more information regarding job site organization refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Visibility Information".

Illustrations 58 - 61 provide an approximate visual indication of the areas at ground level inside a radius of 12 m (39 ft) from the operator of significant restricted visibility for various machine configurations. Refer to the correct illustration for your machine configuration. All restricted visibility areas less than 300 mm wide may not be shown. These illustrations do not indicate areas of restricted visibility for distances outside of the shown radius. The areas of restricted visibility shown in the illustrations are with the track and work tool of the machine in the Travel position. Illustration 62 shows the position of the work tool in the travel position. The Caterpillar authorized work tool that resulted in the largest visibility restriction was used.

Illustration 58 indicates restricted visibility areas at ground level inside the shown radius from the operator without the use of visual aids that may be optional for this product in some markets.

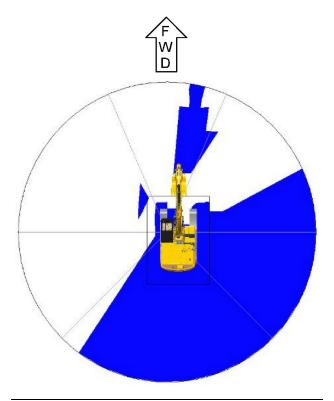


Illustration 58 g06356058

Top view of the machine, ground level visibility without use of optional visual aids
(A) 12 m (39 ft)

Note: The shaded areas indicate the approximate location of areas with significant restricted visibility.

Illustration 59 indicates restricted visibility areas at ground level inside the shown radius from the operator with the use of rear camera, right side mirror, left side mirror, and left side second mirror (if equipped).

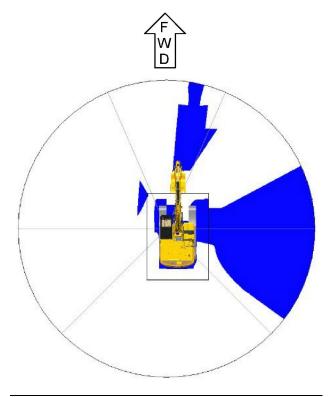


Illustration 59 g06356070

Top view of the machine, ground level visibility with rear camera, right side mirror, left side mirror, and left side second mirror (if equipped)

(A) 12 m (39 ft)

Note: The shaded areas indicate the approximate location of areas with significant restricted visibility.

Illustration 60 indicates restricted visibility areas at ground level inside the shown radius from the operator with the use of rear camera, right side camera, left side mirrors, and left side second mirror (if equipped).

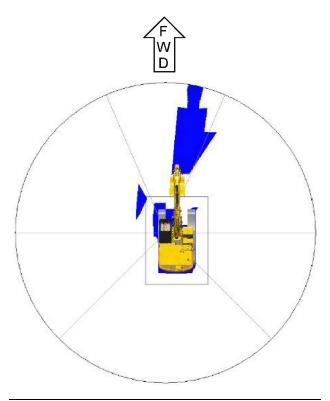


Illustration 60 g06356105

Top view of the machine, ground level visibility with rear camera, right side camera, left side mirror, and left side second mirror (if equipped).

(A) 12 m (39 ft)

Note: The shaded areas indicate the approximate location of areas with significant restricted visibility.

Illustration 61 indicates restricted visibility areas at ground level inside the shown radius from the monitor in the operator station with the use of 360 visibility.

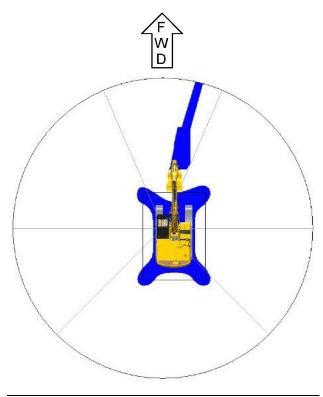


Illustration 61 g06356117

Top view of the machine with 360 visibility through the monitor

Note: The shaded areas indicate the approximate location of areas with significant restricted visibility.

Restricted visibility is measured when the front linkage of the machine is in the travel position. Illustration 62 shows the machine in the travel position.

39

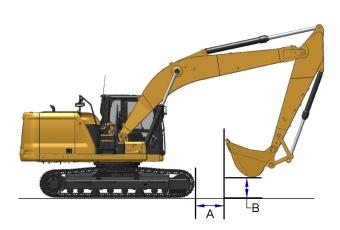


Illustration 62 g06181081

(A) 1 m (3.0 ft) from the front of the machine to the bucket (B) 0.5 m (1.6 ft) from ground level

i03562260

Engine Starting

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

If a warning tag is attached to the engine start switch or to the controls, do not start the engine. Also, do not move any controls.

Make sure that you are seated before you start the engine.

Move all hydraulic controls to the HOLD position before you start the engine. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. For further details on this procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls".

Diesel engine exhaust contains products of combustion which can be harmful to your health. Always run the engine in a well ventilated area. If you are in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside.

Briefly sound the horn before you start the engine.

i01340061

Before Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Clear all personnel from the machine and from the area.

Clear all obstacles from the machine's path. Beware of hazards (wires, ditches, etc).

Be sure that all windows are clean. Secure the doors and the windows in the open position or in the shut position.

Adjust the rearview mirrors (if equipped) for the best visibility close to the machine. Make sure that the horn, the travel alarm (if equipped), and all other warning devices are working properly.

Fasten the seat belt securely.

Warm up the engine and the hydraulic oil before operating the machine.

Before moving the machine, check the position of the undercarriage. The normal travel position is with the idler wheels to the front under the cab and the drive sprockets to the rear. When the undercarriage is in the reversed position, the directional controls must be operated in opposite directions.

i04159629

Work Tools

SMCS Code: 6700

Only use work tools that are recommended by Caterpillar for use on Cat machines.

Use of work tools, including buckets, which are outside of Caterpillar's recommendations or specifications for weight, dimensions, flows, pressures, and so on, may result in less-than-optimal vehicle performance, including but not limited to reductions in production, stability, reliability, and component durability. Caterpillar recommends appropriate work tools for our machines to maximize the value our customers receive from our products. Caterpillar understands that special circumstances may lead a customer to use tools outside of our specifications. In these cases, customers must be aware that such choices can reduce vehicle performance and will affect their ability to claim warranty in the event of what a customer may perceive as a premature failure.

Work tools and work tool control systems, that are compatible with your Cat machine, are required for safe machine operation and/or reliable machine operation. If you are in doubt about the compatibility of a particular work tool with your machine, consult your Cat dealer.

Make sure that all necessary guarding is in place on the host machine and on the work tool.

Keep all windows and doors closed on the host machine. A polycarbonate shield must be used when the host machine is not equipped with windows and when a work tool could throw debris.

Do not exceed the maximum operating weight that is listed on the ROPS certification.

If your machine is equipped with an extendable stick, install the transport pin when you are using the following work tools: hydraulic hammers, augers and compactors

Always wear protective glasses. Always wear the protective equipment that is recommended in the operation manual for the work tool. Wear any other protective equipment that is required for the operating environment.

To prevent personnel from being struck by flying objects, ensure that all personnel are out of the work area.

While you are performing any maintenance, any testing, or any adjustments to the work tool stay clear of the following areas: cutting edges, pinching surfaces and crushing surfaces.

Never use the work tool for a work platform.

i08481684

Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Sound the horn and allow adequate time for bystanders to clear the area before moving the machine into a restricted visibility area. Follow local practices for your machine application. For more information refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Restricted Visibility.

Machine Operating Temperature Range

The machine must function satisfactorily in the anticipated ambient temperature limits that are encountered during operation. The standard machine configuration is intended for use within an ambient temperature range of −18 °C (0 °F) to 43 °C (109 °F). Special configurations for different ambient temperatures may be available. Consult your Cat dealer for additional information on special configurations of your machine.

Limiting Conditions and Criteria

Limiting conditions are immediate issues with this machine that must be addressed prior to continuing operation.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual, Safety Section describes limiting condition criteria for replacing items such as safety messages, seat belt and mounting hardware, lines, tubes, hoses, battery cables and related parts, electrical wires, and repairing any fluid leak.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual, Maintenance Interval Schedule describes limiting condition criteria that require repair or replacement for items (if equipped) such as alarms, horns, braking system, steering system, and rollover protective structures.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual, Monitoring System (if equipped) provides information on limiting condition criteria, including a Warning Category 3 that requires immediate shutdown of the engine.

Critical Failures

The following table provides summary information on several limiting conditions found in this Operation and Maintenance Manual. The table provides criteria and required action for the limiting conditions listed. Each System or Component in this table, together with the respective limiting condition, describes a potential critical failure that must be addressed. Not addressing limiting conditions with required actions may, in conjunction with other factors or circumstances, result in a risk of personal injury or death. If an accident occurs, notify emergency personnel and provide location and description of accident.

Table 1

System or Component Name	Limiting Condition	Criteria for Action	Required Action
Line, tubes, and hoses	End fittings are damaged or leaking. Outer coverings are chafed or cut. Wires are exposed. Outer coverings are swelling or ballooning. Flexible parts of the hoses are kinked. Outer covers have exposed embedded armoring. End fittings are displaced.	Visible corrosion, loose, or damaged lines, tubes, or ho- ses. Visible fluid leaks.	Immediately repair any lines, tubes, or hoses that are corroded, loose, or damaged. Immediately repair any leaks as these may provide fuel for fires.
Electrical Wiring	Signs of fraying, abrasion, cracking, discoloration, cuts on the insulation	Visible damage to electrical wiring	Immediately replace damaged wiring
Battery cable(s)	Signs of fraying, abrasion, crack- ing, discoloration, cuts on the in- sulation of the cable, fouling, corroded terminals, damaged ter- minals, and loose terminals	Visible damage to battery cable(s)	Immediately replace damaged battery cables
Operator Protective Structure	Structures that are bent, cracked, or loose. Loose, missing, or damaged bolts.	Visible damage to structure. Loose, missing, or damaged bolts.	Do not operate machine with damaged structure or loose, missing, or damaged bolts. Contact your Cat dealer for inspection and repair or replacement options.
Seat Belt	Worn or damaged seat belt or mounting hardware	Visible wear or damage	Immediately replace parts that are worn or damaged.
Seat Belt	Age of seat belt	Three years after date of installation	Replace seat belt three years after date of installation
Safety Messages	Appearance of safety message	Damage to safety messages making them illegible	Replace the illustrations if illegible.
Audible Warning Device(s) (if equipped)	Sound level of audible warning	Reduced or no audible warning present	Immediately repair or replace audible warning devices not working properly.
Camera(s) (if equipped)	Dirt or debris on camera lens	Dirt or debris obstructing camera view	
Cab Windows (if equipped) Mirrors (if equipped)	Dirt, debris, or damaged windows Dirt, debris, or damaged mirror	Dirt or debris obstructing operator visibility. Any damaged windows. Dirt or debris obstructing operator visibility. Any damaged mirrors.	Clean windows before operating machine. Repair or replace damaged windows before operating machine. Clean mirrors before operating machine. Repair or replace damaged mirrors before operating machine.
Braking System	Inadequate braking performance	System does not pass Braking System - Test(s) included in Maintenance Section or in the Testing and Adjusting Manual	
Cooling System	The coolant temperature is too high.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Stop the engine immediately. Check the coolant level and check the radiator for debris. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Cooling System Coolant Level - Check. Check the fan drive belts for the water pump. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Belts - Inspect/Adjust/ Replace. Make any necessary repairs.
Engine Oil System	A problem has been detected with the engine oil pressure.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	If the warning stays on during low idle, stop the engine and check the engine oil level. Perform any necessary repairs as soon as possible.
Engine system	An engine fault has been detected by the engine ECM.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Stop the engine immediately. Contact your Cat dealer for service.
Fuel System	A problem has been detected with the fuel system.		Stop the engine. Determine the cause of the fault and perform any necessary repairs.
Hydraulic Oil System	The hydraulic oil temperature is too high.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Stop the engine immediately. Check the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil cooler for debris. Perform any necessary repairs as soon as possible.

42

(Table 1, contd)

System or Component Name	Limiting Condition	Criteria for Action	Required Action
Steering System	•	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Move machine to a safe location and stop the engine immediately. Contact your Cat dealer to inspect and, if necessary, repair the steering system.
Overall Machine	Machine service is required.	Monitoring System displays Warning Category 3	Stop the engine immediately. Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Machine Operation

Only operate the machine while you are in a seat. The seat belt must be fastened while you operate the machine. Only operate the controls while the engine is running.

Check for proper operation of all controls and of all protective devices while you operate the machine slowly in an open area.

When the machine is moving watch the clearance of the boom. Uneven ground can cause the boom to move in all directions.

Make sure that no personnel will be endangered before you move the machine. Do not allow riders on the machine unless the machine has an additional seat with a seat belt.

Report any machine damage that was noted during machine operation. Make any necessary repairs.

Never use the work tool for a work platform.

Hold attachments approximately 40 cm (15 inches) above ground level while you drive the machine. Do not drive the machine close to an overhang, to the edge of a cliff, or to the edge of an excavation.

If the machine begins to sideslip on a grade, immediately dump the load and turn the machine downhill.

Be careful to avoid any ground condition which could cause the machine to tip. Tipping can occur when you work on hills, on banks, or on slopes. Tipping can also occur when you cross ditches, ridges, or other unexpected obstructions.

When possible, operate the machine up slopes and down slopes with the final drive sprockets facing down the slope. Avoid operating the machine across the slope. Place the heaviest end of the machine uphill when you are working on an incline.

Keep the machine under control. Do not overload the machine beyond capacity.

Avoid changing the direction of travel on a slope. Changing the direction of travel on a slope could result in tipping or side slipping of the machine.

Bring the load close to the machine before traveling any distances.

Bring the load close to the machine before swinging the load.

Lifting capacity decreases as the load is moved further from the machine.

Make sure that the towing eyes and the towing devices are adequate for your needs.

Only connect trailing equipment to a drawbar or to a hitch.

Never straddle a wire cable. Never allow other personnel to straddle a wire cable.

When you maneuver in order to connect the equipment, make sure that no personnel are between the machine and trailing equipment. Block up the hitch of the trailing equipment in order to align the equipment with the drawbar.

Check the local regulations, state codes, and/or directives of the job site for a specific minimum distance from obstacles.

Before you operate the machine, check with local utilities for the locations of underground pipes and for the locations of buried cables.

Know the maximum dimensions of your machine.

Watch the load at all times.

Do not operate the machine without the counterweight. The machine can tip when the boom is over the side.

The clamshell, the grapple, or the magnet can swing in all directions. Move the joysticks in a continuous motion. Failure to move the joysticks in a continuous motion can cause the clamshell, the grapple, or the magnet to swing into the cab or into a person in the work area. This will result in personal injury.

Certain machine front linkage combinations (boom, stick, quick coupler, work tool) can allow the work tool to contact the machine undercarriage, swing frame, boom, boom hydraulic cylinder and or the cab. Be aware of the position of the work tool while you operate the machine.

M0110641-02 43

Shut down the machine until damaged or nonfunctioning visibility aid(s) is repaired (if applicable) or until appropriate job site organization is used to minimize hazards that are caused by any resulting restricted visibility.

Machine Operation when the Machine is not Completely Assembled

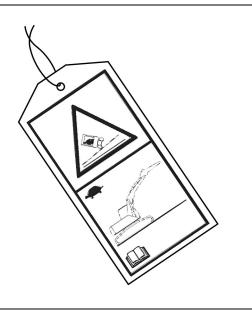


Illustration 63 g02202544

Attach the tag to the controls of the machine. When the tag is attached to the controls, operate the machine as described below.

If the machine needs to be operated without the boom, stick, and/or counterweight being installed, the machine should be operated slowly on flat, stable ground or pavement by qualified operators. Avoid any machine operations which could affect machine stability, including the swing function. The ROPS structural certification depends on the support of the boom, stick, and counterweight in the event of a machine tip over or a machine rollover incident.

i06299648

Engine Stopping

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Do not stop the engine immediately after the machine has been operated under load. Stopping the engine immediately can cause overheating and accelerated wear of engine components. After the machine is parked and the parking brake is engaged, allow the engine to run at low idle for 5 minutes before shutdown. Running the engine allows hot areas of the engine to cool gradually.

i08482599

Lifting Objects

SMCS Code: 7000

There may be local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of machines which lift heavy objects. Obey all local and government regulations.

Regional regulations may require the use of an overload warning device and boom and stick lowering control valves when used to lift objects.

If this machine is used to lift objects within Japan, Japanese regulations require the machine to be equipped with a shovel crane configuration.

Contact your Cat dealer for additional information.

i08482613

Demolition

SMCS Code: 6700

There maybe local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of machines which are designed and used as demolition machinery.

Note: Obey all local and government regulations.

Demolition machinery is designed for demolishing by pushing or pulling, or fragmenting. Demolition is done by crushing or shearing, buildings and/or other civil engineering structures and component parts and/or separating the resultant debris.

If this machine is used for demolition, regional regulations may require the machine to be equipped with:

- Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS, not required for demolition excavators)
- Boom Lowering Control Valve (BLCV) / Stick Lowering Control Valve (SLCV)
- Top Guard / Front Guard
- · Bottom / Motor / Swivel Guard
- EN 356 class P5A front window glass
- If a roof window is used to provide visibility to the working area, then roof window shall be equipped with motorized windscreen wipers and washers.

Safety Section Parking

44

Demolition applications may generate flying debris. Ensure that there are no personnel in the area around the machine where flying debris may travel.

Demolition applications may generate airborne dust that can be hazardous to your health. If you operate the machine in a dust generating applications, use appropriate safeguarding or adequate ventilation to minimize risk.

i07538717

Parking

SMCS Code: 7000

The hydraulic system controls remain pressurized if the accumulator is charged. This condition is true even when the engine is not running. The hydraulic control system pressure should decrease in a short time (approximately 1 minute). While the hydraulic controls maintain a charge, the hydraulic work tools and machine controls remain functional.

There can be residual pressure within the hydraulic system even when the accumulator is empty. Refer to this Operation and Maintenance Manual, "System Pressure Relief" before any service is performed to the hydraulic system.

Machine movement that is sudden and unexpected will occur if any of the controls are moved. Machine movement that is sudden and unexpected, can cause personal injury or death.

Always move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position before you shut off the engine or immediately after the engine stops running.

Park the machine on a hard, level surface. If you must park the machine on a grade, chock the tracks of the machine.



Illustration 64 g06289631

Place the machine in the servicing position.

Note: Make sure that all work tools are in the recommended servicing position before servicing the machine.

Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

Stop the engine.

Turn the engine start ring to the OFF position or press button to stop engine.

Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position.

Remove the disconnect switch key if you do not operate the machine for an extended period. This will prevent drainage of the battery. A battery short circuit, any current draw from certain components, and vandalism can cause drainage of the battery.

Install barriers or lighting as required to prevent interference in road traffic.

Select places free of danger by flooding and other water damage.

i07746366

Slope Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Machines that are operating safely in various applications depend on these criteria: the machine model, configuration, machine maintenance, operating speed of the machine, conditions of the terrain, fluid levels, and tire inflation pressures. The most important criteria are the skill and judgment of the operator.

A well trained operator that follows the instructions in the Operation and Maintenance Manual has the greatest impact on stability. Operator training provides a person with the following abilities: observation of working and environmental conditions, feel for the machine, identification of potential hazards and operating the machine safely by making appropriate decisions.

When you work on side hills and when you work on slopes, consider the following important points:

Speed of travel – At higher speeds, forces of inertia tend to make the machine less stable.

Roughness of terrain or surface – The machine may be less stable with uneven terrain.

Direction of travel – Avoid operating the machine across the slope. When possible, operate the machine up the slopes and operate the machine down the slopes. Place the heaviest end of the machine uphill when you are working on an incline.

Mounted equipment – Balance of the machine may be impeded by the following components: equipment that is mounted on the machine, machine configuration, weights, and counterweights.

Nature of surface – Ground that has been newly filled with earth may collapse from the weight of the machine.

Surface material – Rocks and moisture of the surface material may drastically affect the machine's traction and machine's stability. Rocky surfaces may promote side slipping of the machine.

Slippage due to excessive loads – This may cause downhill tracks or downhill tires to dig into the ground, which will increase the angle of the machine.

Width of tracks or tires – Narrower tracks or narrower tires further increase the digging into the ground which causes the machine to be less stable.

Implements attached to the drawbar – This may decrease the weight on the uphill tracks. This may also decrease the weight on the uphill tires. The decreased weight will cause the machine to be less stable.

Height of the working load of the machine – When the working loads are in higher positions, the stability of the machine is reduced.

Operated equipment – Be aware of performance features of the equipment in operation and the effects on machine stability.

Operating techniques – Keep all attachments or pulled loads low to the ground for optimum stability.

Machine systems have limitations on slopes – Slopes can affect the proper function and operation of the various machine systems. These machine systems are needed for machine control.

Note: Operators with lots of experience and proper equipment for specific applications are also required. Safe operation on steep slopes may also require special machine maintenance. Refer to Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities in this manual for the proper fluid level requirements and intended machine use. Fluids must be at the correct levels to ensure that systems will operate properly on a slope.

i08229294

Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped

SMCS Code: 7000-II

Before lowering any equipment with the engine stopped, clear the area around the equipment of all personnel. The procedure to use will vary with the type of equipment to be lowered. Keep in mind most systems use a high pressure fluid or air to raise or lower equipment. The procedure will cause high pressure air, hydraulic, or some other media to be released in order to lower the equipment. Wear appropriate personal protective equipment and follow the established procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped" in the Operation Section of the manual.

i08687666

Sound Information and Vibration Information

SMCS Code: 7000

Sound Level Information

Hearing protection may be needed when the machine is operated with an open operator station, in a noisy environment, with a cab that is not properly maintained, or when the doors and windows are open for extended periods of time.

Table 2

Sound Leve	Test Method	
Operator Sound Pressure Level	72 dB(A)	"ISO 6396:2008" ⁽¹⁾
Exterior Sound Power Level	105 dB(A)	"ISO 6395:2008" ⁽²⁾

- (1) The measurement was conducted at 70% of the maximum engine cooling fan speed. The sound level may vary at different engine cooling fan speeds. The measurement was conducted with the cab doors and the cab windows closed. The cab was properly installed and maintained.
- (2) The measurement was conducted at 70% of the maximum engine cooling fan speed. The sound level may vary at different engine cooling fan speeds.

The sound levels listed above include both measurement uncertainty and uncertainty due to production variation.

Sound Level Information for Machines Required by the Applicable Regional Regulations

- European Union Countries
- United Kingdom

- Eurasian Economic Union Countries
- Ukraine

46

· Countries that Adopt the "EU Directives"

The information below applies to only the machine configurations that contain regional product marking on or near the Product Identification Plate noted in the "Regional Product Marking" section of this manual.

Table 3

Declared Dynamic Operator Sound Pressure Level									
Region	Sound Level	Test Method							
European Union	72 dB(A)	"ISO 6396:2008" ⁽¹⁾							
United Kingdom	72 dB(A)	"ISO 6396:2008" ⁽¹⁾							
Eurasian Econom- ic Union	72 dB(A)	"ISO 6396:2008" ⁽¹⁾							

(1) The measurement was conducted at 70% of the maximum engine cooling fan speed. The sound level may vary at different engine cooling fan speeds. The measurement was conducted with the cab doors and the cab windows closed. The cab was properly installed and maintained.

Table 4

Declared Exterior Sound Power Level										
Region	Sound Level	Test Method								
European Union	105 dB(A)	"ISO 6395:1988" ⁽¹⁾								
United Kingdom	105 dB(A)	"ISO 6395:1988" (1)								
Eurasian Econom- ic Union	105 dB(A)	"ISO 6395:2008" ⁽¹⁾								
Ukraine	105 dB(A)	"ISO 6395:1988" ⁽¹⁾								

(1) The measurement was conducted at 70% of the maximum engine cooling fan speed. The sound level may vary at different engine cooling fan speeds.

The declared sound levels listed above include both measurement uncertainty and uncertainty due to production variation.

The machine sound power level meets the criteria that are specified in the applicable regional regulation. For example:

- "European Directive 2000/14 EC" amended by "2005/88/EC"
- "United Kingdom 2001 No. 1701" amended by "2005 No. 3525"
- "Ukraine Technical Regulation of the Noise Emission in the Environment by Equipment for Use Outdoors"

The criteria are specified on the certificate of the conformance and the accompanying labels.

Vibration Information Applicable to Regional Regulations

- "European Union Directive: 2002/44/EC -Physical Agents (Vibration)"
- "United Kingdom: 2005 No. 1093 The Control of Vibration at Work Regulation 2005"

Vibration Data for Track Type Excavator

Information Concerning Hand/Arm Vibration Level

When the machine is operated according to the intended use, the hand/arm vibration of this machine is below 2.5 meter per second squared.

Information Concerning Whole Body Vibration Level

This section provides vibration data and a method for estimating the vibration level for track type excavators.

Note: Vibration levels are influenced by many different parameters. Many items are listed below.

- Operator training, behavior, mode, and stress
- Job site organization, preparation, environment, weather, and material
- Machine type, quality of the seat, quality of the suspension system, attachments, and condition of the equipment

It is not possible to get precise vibration levels for this machine. The expected vibration levels can be estimated with the information in Table 5 to calculate the daily vibration exposure. A simple evaluation of the machine application can be used.

Estimate the vibration levels for the three vibration directions. For typical operating conditions, use the average vibration levels as the estimated level. With an experienced operator and smooth terrain, subtract the Scenario Factors from the average vibration level to obtain the estimated vibration level. For aggressive operations and severe terrain, add the Scenario Factors to the average vibration level to obtain the estimated vibration level.

Note: All vibration levels are in meter per second squared.

т	_	h	-	
	а		ıe	

"ISO Reference Table A - Equivalent vibration levels of whole body vibration emission for earthmoving equipment."										
Machine Type	Typical Operating	Vi	bration Leve	ls	Scenario Factors					
waciiile Type	Activity	X axis	Y axis	Z axis	X axis	Y axis	Z axis			
	excavating	0.44	0.27	0.30	0.24	0.16	0.17			
Track Type	hydraulic breaker application	0.53	0.31	0.55	0.30	0.18	0.28			
Excavators	mining application	0.65	0.42	0.61	0.21	0.15	0.32			
	transfer	0.48	0.32	0.79	0.19	0.20	0.23			

Note: Refer to "ISO/TR 25398 Mechanical Vibration - Guideline for the assessment of exposure to whole body vibration of ride on operated earthmoving machines" for more information about vibration. This publication uses data that is measured by international institutes, organizations, and manufacturers. This document provides information about the whole body exposure of operators of earthmoving equipment. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8257 for more information about machine vibration levels.

The Caterpillar suspension seat meets the criteria of "ISO 7096". This represents vertical vibration level under severe operating conditions.

Guidelines for Reducing Vibration Levels on Earthmoving Equipment

Properly adjust machines. Properly maintain machines. Operate machines smoothly. Maintain the conditions of the terrain. The following guidelines can help reduce the whole body vibration level:

- Use the right type and size of machine, equipment, and attachments.
- **2.** Maintain machines according to the manufacturer recommendations.
 - a. Tire pressures
 - b. Brake and steering systems
 - c. Controls, hydraulic system, and linkages
- 3. Keep the terrain in good condition.
 - a. Remove any large rocks or obstacles.
 - b. Fill any ditches and holes.
 - c. Provide machines and schedule time to maintain the conditions of the terrain.
- **4.** Use a seat that meets "ISO 7096". Keep the seat maintained and adjusted.
 - a. Adjust the seat and suspension for the weight and the size of the operator.

- b. Inspect and maintain the seat suspension and adjustment mechanisms.
- **5.** Perform the following operations smoothly.
 - a. Steer
 - b. Brake
 - c. Accelerate.
 - d. Shift the gears.
- 6. Move the attachments smoothly.
- Adjust the machine speed and the route to minimize the vibration level.
 - a. Drive around obstacles and rough terrain.
 - b. Slow down when driving over rough terrain.
- Minimize vibrations for a long work cycle or a long travel distance.
 - a. Use machines that are equipped with suspension systems.
 - b. Use the ride control system on track type excavators.
 - c. If no ride control system is available, reduce speed to prevent bounce.
 - d. Haul the machines between workplaces.
- **9.** Less operator comfort may be caused by other risk factors. The following guidelines can be effective to provide better operator comfort:
 - a. Adjust the seat and adjust the controls to achieve good posture.
 - b. Adjust the mirrors to minimize twisted posture.
 - c. Provide breaks to reduce long periods of sitting.
 - d. Avoid jumping from the cab.
 - e. Minimize repeated handling of loads and lifting of loads.

48 M0110641-02

 f. Minimize any shocks and impacts during sports and leisure activities.

Sources

The vibration information and the calculation procedure are based on "ISO/TR 25398 Mechanical Vibration - Guideline for the assessment of exposure to whole body vibration of ride on operated earthmoving machines". Harmonized data is measured by international institutes, organizations, and manufacturers.

This literature provides information about assessing the whole body vibration exposure of operators of earthmoving equipment. The method is based on measured vibration emission under real working conditions for all machines.

Check the original directive. This document summarizes part of the content of the applicable law. This document is not meant to substitute the original sources. Other parts of these documents are based on information from the United Kingdom Health and Safety Executive.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8257, "The European Union Physical Agents (Vibration) Directive 2002/44/EC" for more information about vibration.

Consult your local Cat [®] dealer for more information about machine features that minimize vibration levels. Consult your local Cat dealer about safe machine operation.

Use the following web site to find your local dealer:

Caterpillar, Inc. www.cat.com

i07746362

Operator Station

SMCS Code: 7300; 7301; 7325

Any modifications to the inside of the operator station should not project into the operator space or into the space for the companion seat (if equipped). The addition of a radio, fire extinguisher, and other equipment must be installed so that the defined operator space and the space for the companion seat (if equipped) is maintained. Any item that is brought into the cab should not project into the defined operator space or the space for the companion seat (if equipped). A lunch box or other loose items must be secured. Objects must not pose an impact hazard in rough terrain or in the event of a rollover.

i07746359

Guards

(Operator Protection)

SMCS Code: 7000; 7150

There are different types of guards that are used to protect the operator. The machine and the machine application determine the type of guard that should be used.

A daily inspection of the guards is required in order to check for structures that are bent, cracked, or loose. Never operate a machine with a damaged structure.

The operator becomes exposed to a hazardous situation if the machine is used improperly or if poor operating techniques are used. This situation can occur even though a machine is equipped with an appropriate protective guard. Follow the established operating procedures that are recommended for your machine.

Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS), Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) or Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS)

The ROPS/FOPS Structure (if equipped) on your machine is specifically designed, tested and certified for that machine. Any alteration or any modification to the ROPS/FOPS Structure could weaken the structure. This places the operator into an unprotected environment. Modifications or attachments that cause the machine to exceed the weight that is stamped on the certification plate also place the operator into an unprotected environment. Excessive weight may inhibit the brake performance, the steering performance and the ROPS. The protection that is offered by the ROPS/FOPS Structure will be impaired if the ROPS/FOPS Structure has structural damage. Damage to the structure can be caused by an overturn, a falling object, a collision, etc.

Do not mount items (fire extinguishers, first aid kits, work lights, etc) by welding brackets to the ROPS/FOPS Structure or by drilling holes in the ROPS/FOPS Structure. Welding brackets or drilling holes in the ROPS/FOPS Structures can weaken the structures. Consult your Cat dealer for mounting guidelines.

The Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS) is another type of guard that is used on mini hydraulic excavators. This structure protects the operator in the event of a tipover. The same guidelines for the inspection, the maintenance and the modification of the ROPS/FOPS Structure are required for the Tip Over Protection Structure.

Other Guards (If Equipped)

Protection from flying objects and/or falling objects is required for special applications. Logging applications and demolition applications are two examples that require special protection.

A front guard needs to be installed when a work tool that creates flying objects is used. Mesh front guards that are approved by Caterpillar or polycarbonate front guards that are approved by Caterpillar are available for machines with a cab or an open canopy. On machines that are equipped with cabs, the windows should also be closed. Safety glasses are recommended when flying hazards exist for machines with cabs and machines with open canopies.

If the work material extends above the cab, top guards and front guards should be used. Typical examples of this type of application are listed below:

- · Demolition applications
- · Rock quarries
- · Forestry products

Additional guards may be required for specific applications or work tools. The Operation and Maintenance Manual for your machine or your work tool will provide specific requirements for the guards. Refer to Operation Maintenance manual, "Demolition" for additional information. Consult your Cat dealer for additional information.

50

Product Information Section

General Information

i07905974

Specifications

SMCS Code: 7000

Intended Use

The intended use of this machine is for excavating with a bucket or working with approved work tools. The machine should be operated with the undercarriage in a stationary position since the upper structure is normally capable of 360 degree swing with mounted equipment. This machine can be used in object handling applications that are within the lift capacity of the machine. When this machine is used in object handling applications, ensure that the machine is properly configured and operated properly. Obey any local governmental regulations and regional governmental regulations. Only lift objects from approved lifting points and with approved lifting devices.

Expected Life

The expected life, defined as total machine hours, of this machine is dependent upon many factors including the machine owner's desire to rebuild the machine back to factory specifications. The expected life interval of this machine is 10,000 service hours. The expected life interval corresponds to the service hours to engine overhaul or replacement. Service hours to engine overhaul or replacement may vary based on overall machine duty cycle. At the expected life interval, remove the machine from operation and consult your Cat dealer for inspect, repair, rebuild, install remanufactured, install new components, or disposal options and to establish a new expected life interval. If a decision is made to remove this machine from service, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Decommissioning and Disposal".

The following items are required to obtain an economical expected life of this machine:

- Perform regular preventive maintenance procedures as described in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- Perform machine inspections as described in the Operation and Maintenance Manual and correct any problems discovered.
- Perform system testing as described in the Operation and Maintenance Manual and correct any problems discovered.

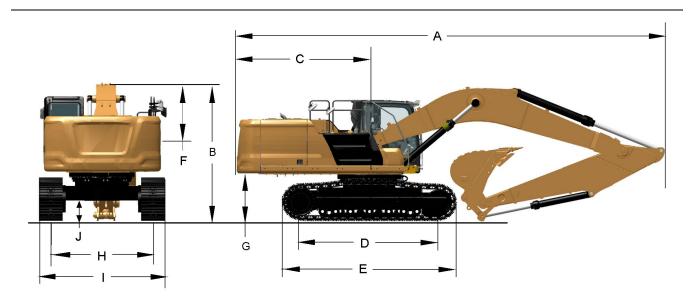
- Ensure that machine application conditions comply with Caterpillar's recommendations.
- Ensure that the operating weight does not exceed limits set by manufacturer.
- Ensure that all frame cracks are identified, inspected, and repaired to prevent further development.

Application/Configuration Restrictions

The maximum travel operating slope for machine lubrication is 35 degrees.

The operator station is ROPS certified up to a mass of 42800 kg $\,$ (94360 lb) per ISO 12117-2:2008.

Specification Data



| Illustration 65 g06283423

Table 6

	336 GC E	xcavators						
Boom	6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) Reach Boom							
Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch)	3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch)	3.9 m (12 ft 10 inch)					
Bucket	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd)³	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd)³	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd)³					
Approximate Weight(1)	35100 kg (77500 lb)	35100 kg (77500 lb)	35100 kg (77500 lb)					
Overall Length (A)	11220 mm (36 ft 8 inch)	11170 mm (36 ft 8 inch)	11200 mm (36 ft 7 inch)					
Overall Height (B)	3680 mm (12 ft 1 inch)	3520 mm (11 ft 7 inch)	3720 mm (12 ft 2 inch)					
Swing Radius (C)	3530 mm (11 ft 6inch)	3530 mm (11 ft 6inch)	3530 mm (11 ft 6inch)					
Length to Center of Rollers (D)	Long: 4040 mm (13 ft 3 inch) Standard: 3610 mm (11 ft 8 inch)	Long: 4040 mm (13 ft 3 inch) Standard: 3610 mm (11 ft 8 inch)	Long: 4040 mm (13 ft 3 inch) Standard: 3610 mm (11 ft 8 inch)					
Length of Track (E)	Long: 5020 mm (16 ft 6 inch) Standard: 4590 mm (15 ft 1 inch)	Long: 5020 mm (16 ft 6 inch) Standard: 4590 mm (15 ft 1 inch)	Long: 5020 mm (16 ft 6 inch) Standard: 4590 mm (15 ft 1 inch)					
Handrail Height (F)	3160 mm (10 ft 4 inch)	3160 mm (10 ft 4 inch)	3160 mm (10 ft 4 inch)					
Counterweight Clearance (G)	1250 mm (4 ft 1 inch)	1250 mm (4 ft 1 inch)	1250 mm (4 ft 1 inch)					
Track Gauge (H)	2590 mm (8 ft 5 inch)	2590 mm (8 ft 5 inch)	2590 mm (8 ft 5 inch)					
Overall Width (I) with 600 mm (24 inch) Shoe	3190 mm (10 ft 5 inch)	3190 mm (10 ft 5 inch)	3190 mm (10 ft 5 inch)					

(Table 6, contd)

336 GC Excavators										
Boom	6	6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) Reach Boor	n							
Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch)	3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch)	3.9 m (12 ft 10 inch)							
Bucket	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd)³	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd)³	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd)³							
Overall Width (I) with 700 mm (28 inch) Shoe	3290 mm (10 ft 8 inch)	3290 mm (10 ft 8 inch)	3290 mm (10 ft 8 inch)							
Overall Width (I) with 800 mm (31 inch) Shoe	3390 mm (11 ft 1 inch)	3390 mm (11 ft 1 inch)	3390 mm (11 ft 1 inch)							
Ground Clearance (J)	510 mm (1 ft 7 inch)	510 mm (1 ft 7 inch)	510 mm (1 ft 7 inch)							

^{(1) 10} percent full fuel tank.

Working Ranges

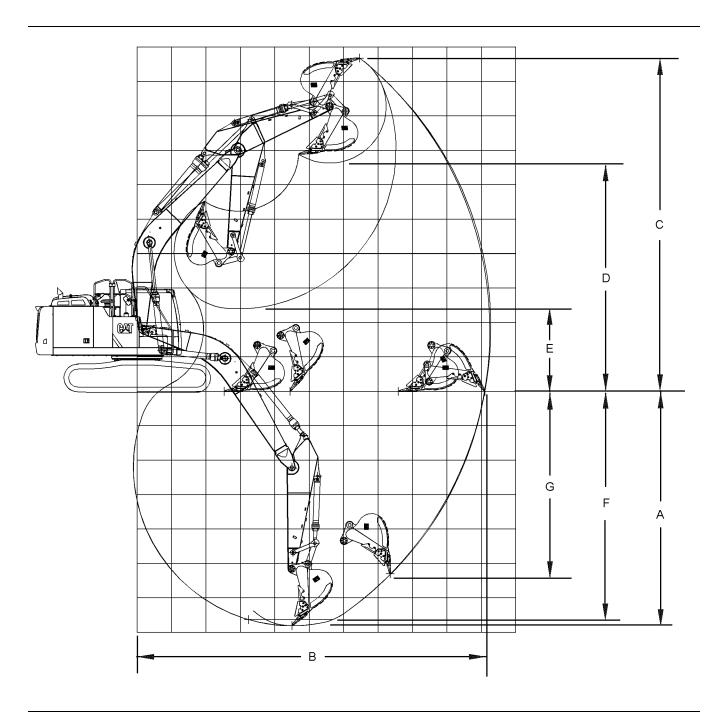


Illustration 66 g02151731

Table 7

	336 GC Excavators									
	6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) Reach Boom									
	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) stick	3.9 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick							
Bucket	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd)³	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd)³	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd)³							
Maximum Digging Depth (A)	7120 mm (23 ft 4 inch)	7520 mm (24 ft 8 inch)	8230 mm (27 ft 0 inch)							
Maximum Reach at Ground Level (B)	10740 mm (35 ft 3 inch)	11050 mm (36 ft 3 inch)	11760 mm (38 ft 6 inch)							
Maximum Cutting Height (C)	10360 mm (34 ft)	10300 mm (33 ft 8 inch)	10730 mm (35 ft 2 inch)							
Maximum Loading Height (D)	7080 mm (23 ft 3 inch)	7080 mm (23 ft 3 inch)	7460 mm (24 ft 5 inch)							
Minimum Loading Height (E)	2980 mm (9 ft 9 inch)	2580 mm (8 ft 6 inch)	1870 mm (6 ft 1 inch)							
Maximum Cut Depth (F)(1)	6950 mm (22 ft 10 inch)	7360 mm (24 ft 2 inch)	8100 mm (26 ft 6 inch)							
Maximum Digging Depth (Vertical wall) (G)	5620 mm (18 ft 5 inch)	5660 mm (18 ft 7 inch)	6520 mm (21 ft 4 inch)							

^{(1) 2440} mm (8 ft) level bottom

i08298076

Boom/Stick/Bucket Combinations

SMCS Code: 6000: 6700

This machine can be equipped with a large variety of boom-stick-bucket combinations in order to meet the needs of various applications.

Buckets are grouped into families according to the capacity of the bucket. Generally, use a bucket with a smaller capacity when you are using a longer stick and/or a longer boom. Conversely, use a bucket with a larger capacity when you are using a shorter stick and/or a shorter boom. This rule ensures better machine stability and protection against structural machine damage.

A stick is designed to match only one specific family of buckets.

Note: The selection of a compatible boom-stick-bucket combination is a guide. Work tools, uneven ground conditions, soft ground conditions, or poor ground conditions have effects on machine performance. The operator is responsible for being aware of these effects.

Consult your Cat [®] dealer for information on selecting the correct boom-stick-bucket combination.

The following tables show various compatible boomstick-bucket combinations. Select an optimum combination according to the working conditions and according to the type of work that is being done.

Note: The loads are in compliance with hydraulic excavator standard "EN474", they do not exceed 87% of hydraulic lifting capacity or 75% of tipping capacity with front linkage fully extended at ground line with bucket curled. Capacity is based on "ISO 7451".

Pin-On (Without Quick Coupler)

Table 8

Table 8				33	6 GC Exc	avator wi	thout Qui	ick Couple	er				
		Unde	rcarriage				Star	ndard			Lo	ng	
		Coun	terweight						6800 kg	(14991 lb)		
Bucket	Link		Capacity	18/-1-l-4 - 5		Rea	ich Boom	ı GC	Mass Boom GC	Rea	ach Boom	GC	Mass Boom GC
Type	Link- age	Width of Bucket	of Bucket	Weight of Bucket	Fill (%)	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick
	DB	1350 mm (53 inch)	1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³)	1181 kg (2604 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)		(1)	(1)	(2)	
General Duty (GD)	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.44 yd³)	1286 kg (2834 lb)	100	(1)	(2)	(3)		(1)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1361 kg (3000 lb)	100	(2)	(3)	(4)		(2)	(3)	(4)	
	DB	1800 mm (71 inch)	2.36 m³ (3.09 yd³)	1465 kg (3231 lb)	100	(3)	(4)	(4)		(3)	(3)	(4)	
General Duty (GD)	DB	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1348 kg (2971 lb)	100	(2)	(3)	(4)		(2)	(2)	(4)	
General Duty (GD)	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.87 m³ (2.44 yd³)	1321 kg (2911 lb)	100	(1)	(2)	(3)		(1)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	750 mm (30 inch)	0.94 m³ (1.23 yd³)	960 kg (2115 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	900 mm (36 inch)	1.19 m³ (1.56 yd³)	1050 kg (2315 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)	(1)	
General Duty Ca-	DB	1050 mm (42 inch)	1.46 m³ (1.91 yd³)	1160 kg (2556 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)	(1)	
pacity (GDC)	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.73 m ³ (2.26 yd ³)	1246 kg (2746 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(3)		(1)	(1)	(2)	
	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	2.00 m ³ (2.62 yd ³)	1358 kg (2995 lb)	100	(2)	(2)	(4)		(2)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	2.27 m³ (2.97 yd³)	1470 kg (3240 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)		(3)	(3)	(4)	

(Table 8, contd)

	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.55 m³ (3.33 yd³)	1556 kg (3430 lb)	100	(4)	(4)	(5)	(3)	(4)	(5)	
	DB	800 mm (32 inch)	1.18 m³ (1.54 yd³)	1040 kg (2292 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	950 mm (38 inch)	1.49 m³ (1.95 yd³)	1135 kg (2503 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
General Duty Ca- pacity - Wide	DB	1100 mm (44 inch)	1.46 m³ (1.91 yd³)	1158 kg (2552 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
Tip (GDC- WT)	DB	1250 mm (50 inch)	1.73 m ³ (2.26 yd ³)	1243 kg (2739 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(3)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
	DB	1400 mm (56 inch)	2.00 m ³ (2.62 yd ³)	1355 kg (2988 lb)	100	(2)	(2)	(4)	(2)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1550 mm (62 inch)	2.27 m³ (2.97 yd³)	1468 kg (3236 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)	(3)	(3)	(4)	

- (1) 2100 kg/m³ (3500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (2) 1800 kg/m³ (3000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (3) 1500 kg/m³ (2500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (4) 1200 kg/m³ (2000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (5) 900 kg/m³ (1500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material

Table 9

Table 9				33	6 GC Exc	avator wit	thout Qui	ick Coupl	er				
		Unde	rcarriage				Star	ndard			Lo	ng	
		Coun	terweight						6800 kg	(14991 lb)		
Bucket	Link-	NAVI dale a f	Capacity	\A/a:=b4 a£		Rea	ch Boom	ı GC	Mass Boom GC	Rea	ach Boom	GC	Mass Boom GC
Type	age	Width of Bucket	of Bucket	Weight of Bucket	Fill (%)	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick
	DB	750 mm (30 inch)	0.73 m ³ (0.95 yd ³)	1033 kg (2278 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)	(1)	
Heavy	DB	900 mm (36 inch)	0.95 m ³ (1.24 yd ³)	1181 kg (2603 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)	(1)	
Heavy Duty	DB	1050 mm (42 inch)	1.17 m ³ (1.54 yd ³)	1271 kg (2802 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m ³ (1.84 yd ³)	1403 kg (3093 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)		(1)	(1)	(1)	

(Table 9, contd)

(Table 9, c	ontd)											
	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³)	1450 kg (3196 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(3)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³)	1499 kg (3304 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(3)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³)	1545 kg (3408 lb)	100	(2)	(2)	(4)	(2)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³)	1630 kg (3593 lb)	100	(2)	(3)	(4)	(2)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1677 kg (3697 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)	(3)	(3)	(4)	
	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1762 kg (3884 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)	(3)	(3)	(4)	
	DB	1800 mm (72 inch)	2.36 m³ (3.08 yd³)	1859 kg (4098 lb)	100	(4)	(4)	(5)	(3)	(4)	(5)	
	DB	1800 mm (72 inch)	2.36 m³ (3.08 yd³)	1774 kg (3911 lb)	100	(4)	(4)	(5)	(3)	(4)	(5)	
	DB	1400 mm (55 inch)	1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³)	1510 kg (3329 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(3)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
Heavy Duty	DB	1466 mm (58 inch)	1.76 m³ (2.30 yd³)	1557 kg (3324 lb)	100	(1)	(2)	(3)	(1)	(2)	(2)	
(HD)	DB	1500 mm (61 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³)	1608 kg (3545 lb)	100	(2)	(3)	(4)	(2)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1650 mm (67 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1706 kg (3761 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)	(3)	(3)	(4)	
Heavy Duty	DB	1500 mm (61 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³)	1620 kg (3571 lb)	100	(2)	(3)	(4)	(2)	(2)	(3)	
(HD)	DB	1650 mm (67 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1718 kg (3787 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)	(3)	(3)	(4)	
	DB	750 mm (30 inch)	0.73 m³ (0.95 yd³)	1007 kg (2220 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
Heavy Duty (HD)	DB	1050 mm (42 inch)	1.17 m ³ (1.54 yd ³)	1245 kg (2744 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1377 kg (3035 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(1)	(1)	

(Table 9, contd)

										T.		1
	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³)	1473 kg (3247 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(3)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³)	1605 kg (3538 lb)	100	(2)	(3)	(4)	(2)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1737 kg (3829 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)	(3)	(3)	(4)	
	DB	1850 mm (72 inch)	2.36 m³ (3.09 yd³)	1834 kg (4043 lb)	100	(4)	(4)	(5)	(3)	(4)	(5)	
	DB	900 mm (36 inch)	0.95 m ³ (1.24 yd ³)	1175 kg (2590 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
Heavy	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1408 kg (3104 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
Duty (HD)	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.63 m³ (2.13 yd³)	1505 kg (3318 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(3)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.86 m³ (2.43 yd³)	1642 kg (3620 lb)	100	(2)	(3)	(4)	(2)	(2)	(4)	

^{(1) 2100} kg/m³ (3500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (2) 1800 kg/m³ (3000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (3) 1500 kg/m³ (2500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (4) 1200 kg/m³ (2000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (5) 900 kg/m³ (1500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material

Table 10

Table 10													
				33	6 GC Exc	avator wit	thout Qui	ick Couple	er				
		Unde	rcarriage				Star	ndard			Lo	ng	
		Coun	terweight						6800 kg	(14991 lb))		
Bucket	Link-	NAVI alaba a S	Capacity	\A/a:=b4 a£		Rea	ch Boom	ı GC	Mass Boom GC	Rea	ach Boom	GC	Mass Boom GC
Type	age	Width of Bucket	of Bucket	Weight of Bucket	Fill (%)	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick
	DB	750 mm (30 inch)	0.73 m³ (0.95 yd³)	1088 kg (2399 lb)	90	(1)	(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)	(1)	
Severe Duty (SD)	DB	900 mm (36 inch)	0.95 m³ (1.24 yd³)	1241 kg (2735 lb)	90	(1)	(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	1050 mm (42 inch)	1.17 m ³ (1.54 yd ³)	1338 kg (2949 lb)	90	(1)	(1)	(1)		(1)	(1)	(1)	

(Table 10, contd)

60

(Table 10,	contd)											
	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1478 kg (3258 lb)	90	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³)	1581 kg (3485 lb)	90	(1)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
	DB	1500 mm (59 inch)	1.91 m³ (2.50 yd³)	1666 kg (3672 lb)	90	(1)	(2)	(3)	(1)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.15 m³ (2.81 yd³)	1802 kg (3972 lb)	90	(2)	(3)	(4)	(2)	(3)	(4)	
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	DB	1550 mm (61 inch)	1.90 m³ (2.48 yd³)	1864 kg (4109 lb)	90	(2)	(2)	(4)	(1)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1400 mm (56 inch)	1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³)	1720 kg (3791 lb)	90	(1)	(1)	(3)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
Severe Duty (SD)	DB	1700 mm (67 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	2004 kg (4417 lb)	90	(3)	(3)	(4)	(2)	(3)	(4)	
	DB	1850 mm (73 inch)	2.31 m ³ (3.02 yd ³)	2097 kg (4622 lb)	90	(3)	(4)	(5)	(3)	(4)	(5)	
Severe Duty Ex- treme (SDE)	DB	1700 mm (67 inch)	2.05 m³ (2.68 yd³)	2058 kg (4537 lb)	90	(3)	(3)	(4)	(2)	(3)	(4)	
Severe Duty (SD)	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1452 kg (3201 lb)	90	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
Extreme Duty (XD)	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1621 kg (3573 lb)	90	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
Extreme Duty (XD)	DB	1400 mm (56 inch)	1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³)	1899 kg (4186 lb)	90	(1)	(2)	(3)	(1)	(1)	(3)	
Ditch Clean- ing (DC)	DB	1800 mm (72 inch)	1.96 m³ (2.56 yd³)	1034 kg (2280 lb)	100	(1)	(2)	(3)	(1)	(1)	(3)	
Clean	DB	1800 mm (72 inch)	2.48 m³ (3.24 yd³)	1331 kg (2934 lb)	100	(3)	(4)	(4)	(3)	(3)	(4)	
Up (CU)	DB	2000 mm (78 inch)	2.74 m³ (3.58 yd³)	1417 kg (3124 lb)	100	(4)	(4)	(5)	(4)	(4)	(5)	
General Duty Ex- cavation (GDX)	DB	1400 mm (55 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1163 kg (2563 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	

(Tab	1 ما	ın	con	td)
(Tab	ıe	IU.	COH	ιu)

	DB	1450 mm (57 inch)	1.50 m³ (1.96 yd³)	1200 kg (2645 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	1550 mm (61 inch)	1.60 m³ (2.09 yd³)	1262 kg (2783 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
Heavy Duty Ex-	DB	1450 mm (57 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1467 kg (3234 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(1)	(1)	
cavation (HDX)	DB	1500 mm (59 inch)	1.50 m³ (1.96 yd³)	1518 kg (3346 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(1)	(2)	
Heavy Duty (HD)	DB	1500 mm (61 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³)	1583 kg (3490 lb)	100	(2)	(2)	(4)	(2)	(2)	(3)	
Heavy	DB	1450 mm (57 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1466 kg (3232 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(1)	(1)	

Table 11

Table 11				22	e cc Eva		haut Oui	iak Caumi					
		Unde	rcarriage	33	6 GC Exc	avator wit		ndard	er		Lo	na	
			terweight				Jiai	Idaid	6800 kg	(14991 lb		9	
			Capacity			Rea	ch Boom	ı GC	Mass Boom GC	Rea	ach Boom	GC	Mass Boom GC
Bucket Type	Link- age	Width of Bucket	of Bucket	Weight of Bucket	Fill (%)	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick
General	ТВ	1800 mm (71 inch)	2.60 m³ (3.40 yd³)	2119 kg (4671 lb)	100				(1)				(1)
General Duty (GD)	ТВ	1800 mm (71 inch)	2.60 m³ (3.40 yd³)	2214 kg (4880 lb)	100				(1)				(1)
	ТВ	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.15 yd³)	2220 kg (4894 lb)	100				(1)				(1)
Heavy Duty (HD)	ТВ	1750 mm (69 inch)	2.50 m ³ (3.27 yd ³)	2258 kg (4978 lb)	100				(1)				(1)
	ТВ	1850 mm (72 inch)	2.69 m³ (3.52 yd³)	2387 kg (5262 lb)	100				(2)				(1)

^{(1) 2100} kg/m³ (3500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (2) 1800 kg/m³ (3000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (3) 1500 kg/m³ (2500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (4) 1200 kg/m³ (2000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (5) 900 kg/m³ (1500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material

62

(Table 11, o	contd)								
	ТВ	1850 mm (72 inch)	2.69 m³ (3.52 yd³)	2349 kg (5178 lb)	100		(2)		(1)
	ТВ	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.15 yd³)	2377 kg (5240 lb)	100		(1)		(1)
	ТВ	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.15 yd³)	2392 kg (5273 lb)	100		(1)		(1)
	ТВ	1750 mm (69 inch)	2.50 m³ (3.27 yd³)	2352 kg (5185 lb)	100		(1)		(1)
	ТВ	1950 mm (77 inch)	3.08 m³ (4.03 yd³)	2710 kg (5974 lb)	100		(3)		(2)
Severe Duty Power (SDP)	ТВ	1750 mm (69 inch)	2.40 m³ (3.14 yd³)	2544 kg (5608 lb)	90		(1)		(1)
Extreme Duty Power (XDP)	ТВ	1550 mm (61 inch)	2.00 m³ (2.59 yd³)	2562 kg (5648 lb)	90		(4)		(4)
Severe Duty	ТВ	1600 mm (63 inch)	2.20 m³ (2.88 yd³)	2332 kg (5141 lb)	90		(4)		(4)
(SD)	ТВ	1600 mm (63 inch)	2.20 m³ (2.88 yd³)	2390 kg (5268 lb)	90		(4)		(4)
	ТВ	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.87 m³ (2.44 yd³)	2053 kg (4526 lb)	90		(5)		(6)
Severe Duty Spade (SDS)	ТВ	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.16 yd³)	2367 kg (5218 lb)	90		(1)		(4)
, -,	ТВ	1500 mm (61 inch)	2.14 m³ (2.80 yd³)	2254 kg (4969 lb)	90		(4)		(4)
Severe Duty (SD)	ТВ	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.15 yd³)	2497 kg (5504 lb)	90		(1)		(1)

^{(1) 1200} kg/m³ (2000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (2) 900 kg/m³ (1500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (3) Not Recommended (4) 1500 kg/m³ (2500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (5) 1800 kg/m³ (3000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (6) 2100 kg/m³ (3500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material

Cat Pin Grabber Coupler

Table 12

			336	GC Excavator	with Cat Pi	n Grabber Co	oupler			
		Unde	ercarriage			Standard		Lo	ong	
		Coun	terweight				680	0 kg (14991	lb)	
						Mass Boom GC	Re	ach Boom (ЭС	Mass Boom GC
Bucket Type	Linkage	Width of Bucket	Capacity of Bucket	Weight of Bucket	Fill (%)	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick
	DB	1350 mm (53 inch)	1.64 m ³ (2.14 yd ³)	1181 kg (2604 lb)	100		(1)	(2)	(3)	
General	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.44 yd³)	1286 kg (2834 lb)	100		(2)	(3)	(4)	
Duty (GD)	DB	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.12 m ³ (2.77 yd ³)	1361 kg (3000 lb)	100		(3)	(4)	(5)	
General Duty (GD)	DB	1800 mm (71 inch)	2.36 m³ (3.09 yd³)	1465 kg (3231 lb)	100		(4)	(4)	(5)	
	DB	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.12 m ³ (2.77 yd ³)	1348 kg (2971 lb)	100		(3)	(4)	(5)	
General Duty (GD)	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.87 m ³ (2.44 yd ³)	1321 kg (2911 lb)	100		(2)	(3)	(4)	
	DB	750 mm (30 inch)	0.94 m ³ (1.23 yd ³)	960 kg (2115 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	900 mm (36 inch)	1.19 m³ (1.56 yd³)	1050 kg (2315 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
General	DB	1050 mm (42 inch)	1.46 m³ (1.91 yd³)	1160 kg (2556 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(3)	
Duty Ca- pacity	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.73 m ³ (2.26 yd ³)	1246 kg (2746 lb)	100		(2)	(2)	(4)	
(GDC)	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	2.00 m ³ (2.62 yd ³)	1358 kg (2995 lb)	100		(3)	(3)	(5)	
	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	2.27 m ³ (2.97 yd ³)	1470 kg (3240 lb)	100		(4)	(4)	(5)	
	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.55 m ³ (3.33 yd ³)	1556 kg (3430 lb)	100		(4)	(5)	(6)	
	DB	800 mm (32 inch)	1.18 m³ (1.54 yd³)	1040 kg (2292 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
General Duty Ca-	DB	950 mm (38 inch)	1.49 m³ (1.95 yd³)	1135 kg (2503 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(3)	
pacity - Wide Tip (GDC-WT)	DB	1100 mm (44 inch)	1.46 m³ (1.91 yd³)	1158 kg (2552 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(3)	
	DB	1250 mm (50 inch)	1.73 m ³ (2.26 yd ³)	1243 kg (2739 lb)	100		(2)	(2)	(4)	

(Table 12, contd)

DB	1400 mm (56 inch)	2.00 m ³ (2.62 yd ³)	1355 kg (2988 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)	
DB	1550 mm (62 inch)	2.27 m³ (2.97 yd³)	1468 kg (3236 lb)	100	(4)	(4)	(5)	

- (1) 2100 kg/m³ (3500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (2) 1800 kg/m³ (3000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (3) 1500 kg/m³ (2500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (4) 1200 kg/m³ (2000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (5) 900 kg/m³ (1500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (6) Net December 1800 lb/yd³)

- (6) Not Recommended

Table 13

			336	GC Excavator	with Cat Pi	n Grabber Co	oupler			
		Unde	ercarriage			Standard		Lo	ong	
		Cour	terweight				680	0 kg (14991	lb)	
						Mass Boom GC	Re	ach Boom (GC .	Mass Boom GC
Bucket Type	Linkage	Width of Bucket	Capacity of Bucket	Weight of Bucket	Fill (%)	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick
	DB	750 mm (30 inch)	0.73 m ³ (0.95 yd ³)	1033 kg (2278 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	900 mm (36 inch)	0.95 m ³ (1.24 yd ³)	1181 kg (2603 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	1050 mm (42 inch)	1.17 m ³ (1.54 yd ³)	1271 kg (2802 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m ³ (1.84 yd ³)	1403 kg (3093 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(2)	
	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.64 m ³ (2.14 yd ³)	1450 kg (3196 lb)	100		(3)	(3)	(4)	
Heavy	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.64 m ³ (2.14 yd ³)	1499 kg (3304 lb)	100		(3)	(2)	(4)	
Duty	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m ³ (2.46 yd ³)	1545 kg (3408 lb)	100		(2)	(2)	(5)	
	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m ³ (2.46 yd ³)	1630 kg (3593 lb)	100		(2)	(4)	(5)	
	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.12 m ³ (2.77 yd ³)	1677 kg (3697 lb)	100		(4)	(4)	(5)	
	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.12 m ³ (2.77 yd ³)	1762 kg (3884 lb)	100		(4)	(4)	(5)	
	DB	1800 mm (72 inch)	2.36 m ³ (3.08 yd ³)	1859 kg (4098 lb)	100		(4)	(5)	(6)	
	DB	1800 mm (72 inch)	2.36 m ³ (3.08 yd ³)	1774 kg (3911 lb)	100		(4)	(5)	(6)	
Heavy Du- ty (HD)	DB	1400 mm (55 inch)	1.64 m ³ (2.14 yd ³)	1510 kg (3329 lb)	100		(3)	(2)	(4)	

(Table 13, contd)

ιτα)									
DB	1466 mm (58 inch)	1.76 m ³ (2.30 yd ³)	1557 kg (3324 lb)	100		(3)	(2)	(4)	
DB	1500 mm (61 inch)	1.88 m ³ (2.46 yd ³)	1608 kg (3545 lb)	100		(2)	(4)	(5)	
DB	1650 mm (67 inch)	2.12 m ³ (2.77 yd ³)	1706 kg (3761 lb)	100		(4)	(4)	(5)	
DB	1500 mm (61 inch)	1.88 m ³ (2.46 yd ³)	1620 kg (3571 lb)	100		(2)	(4)	(5)	
DB	1650 mm (67 inch)	2.12 m ³ (2.77 yd ³)	1718 kg (3787 lb)	100		(4)	(4)	(5)	
DB	750 mm (30 inch)	0.73 m ³ (0.95 yd ³)	1007 kg (2220 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
DB	1050 mm (42 inch)	1.17 m³ (1.54 yd³)	1245 kg (2744 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m ³ (1.83 yd ³)	1377 kg (3035 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(2)	
DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.64 m ³ (2.14 yd ³)	1473 kg (3247 lb)	100		(3)	(2)	(4)	
DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m ³ (2.46 yd ³)	1605 kg (3538 lb)	100		(2)	(4)	(5)	
DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.12 m ³ (2.77 yd ³)	1737 kg (3829 lb)	100		(4)	(4)	(5)	
DB	1850 mm (72 inch)	2.36 m ³ (3.09 yd ³)	1834 kg (4043 lb)	100		(4)	(5)	(6)	
DB	900 mm (36 inch)	0.95 m ³ (1.24 yd ³)	1175 kg (2590 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m ³ (1.83 yd ³)	1408 kg (3104 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(2)	
DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.63 m ³ (2.13 yd ³)	1505 kg (3318 lb)	100		(3)	(2)	(4)	
DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.86 m ³ (2.43 yd ³)	1642 kg (3620 lb)	100		(2)	(4)	(5)	
DB	900 mm (36 inch)	0.87 m ³ (1.14 yd ³)	1209 kg (2665 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
DB	1050 mm (42 inch)	1.08 m ³ (1.41 yd ³)	1312 kg (2892 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(1)	
DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.29 m³ (1.69 yd³)	1442 kg (3179 lb)	100		(1)	(1)	(2)	
DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.50 m ³ (1.96 yd ³)	1544 kg (3404 lb)	100		(1)	(3)	(4)	
DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.72 m ³ (2.25 yd ³)	1681 kg (3706 lb)	100		(2)	(2)	(5)	
DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	1.93 m ³ (2.52 yd ³)	1819 kg (4010 lb)	100		(2)	(4)	(5)	
	DB D	DB	DB 1466 mm (58 inch) 1.76 m³ (2.30 yd³) DB 1500 mm (61 inch) 1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³) DB 1650 mm (67 inch) 2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³) DB 1500 mm (61 inch) 1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³) DB 1500 mm (61 inch) 2.12 m³ (2.46 yd³) DB 1650 mm (67 inch) 2.77 yd³) DB 750 mm (30 inch) 0.73 m³ (0.95 yd³) DB 1050 mm (1.54 yd³) DB 1200 mm (48 inch) 1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³) DB 1350 mm (54 inch) 1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³) DB 1500 mm (54 inch) 1.88 m³ (2.14 yd³) DB 1650 mm (2.12 m³ (3.09 yd³) DB 1850 mm (2.12 m³ (3.09 yd³) DB 1850 mm (3.09 yd³) DB 1200 mm (36 inch) 1.40 m³ (1.24 yd³) DB 1200 mm (3.09 yd³) DB 1500 mm (3.09 yd³) DB 1500 mm (1.88 m³ (2.13 yd³) DB 1500 mm (1.84 yd³) DB 1500 mm (1.40 m³ (2.13 yd³) DB 1500 mm (1.63 m³ (1.14 yd³) DB 1050 mm	DB 1466 mm (58 inch) 1.76 m³ (2.30 yd³) 1557 kg (3324 lb) DB 1500 mm (61 inch) 1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³) 1608 kg (3545 lb) DB 1650 mm (67 inch) 2.12 m³ (3761 lb) 1706 kg (3545 lb) DB 1650 mm (67 inch) (2.77 yd³) (3761 lb) DB 1500 mm (61 inch) 1.88 m³ (3571 lb) DB 1650 mm (67 inch) 2.12 m³ (3571 lb) DB 1650 mm (67 inch) 2.12 m³ (3787 lb) DB 1650 mm (30 inch) 0.73 m³ (3787 lb) DB 750 mm (30 inch) 0.73 m³ (3787 lb) DB 1050 mm (2.17 m³ (2220 lb) DB 1050 mm (42 inch) 1.17 m³ (2245 kg (2744 lb) DB 1200 mm (48 inch) 1.40 m³ (3035 lb) DB 1200 mm (48 inch) 1.64 m³ (3247 lb) DB 1350 mm (54 inch) 1.88 m³ (3035 lb) DB 1500 mm (54 inch) 1.84 m³ (3247 lb) DB 1500 mm (54 inch) 1.21 m³ (3247 lb) DB 1650 mm (2.14 yd³) 1737 kg (3829 lb) DB 1650 mm (309 yd³) 1175	DB 1466 mm (58 inch) 1.76 m³ (2.30 yd³) 1557 kg (3324 lb) 100 DB 1500 mm (61 inch) 1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³) 1608 kg (3545 lb) 100 DB 1650 mm (67 inch) (2.27 yd³) 1706 kg (3761 lb) 100 DB 1650 mm (61 inch) (2.46 yd³) (3571 lb) 100 DB 1500 mm (61 inch) (2.46 yd³) (3571 lb) 100 DB 1650 mm (67 inch) (2.77 yd³) (3787 lb) 100 DB 1650 mm (67 inch) (2.77 yd³) (3787 lb) 100 DB 1650 mm (67 inch) (2.77 yd³) (3787 lb) 100 DB 1650 mm (0.95 yd³) (2220 lb) 100 DB 1050 mm (0.95 yd³) 1007 kg (2270 lb) 100 DB 1050 mm (1.75 yd³) 1245 kg (2744 lb) 100 DB 1200 mm (1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³) 1307 kg (2744 lb) 100 DB 1350 mm (1.64 m³ (1.83 yd³) 13035 lb) 100 DB 1350 mm (1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³) 1473 kg (3247 lb) 100 <tr< td=""><td> DB</td><td> DB</td><td> DB</td><td> DB</td></tr<>	DB	DB	DB	DB

^{(1) 2100} kg/m³ (3500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (2) 1500 kg/m³ (2500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (3) 1800 kg/m³ (3000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (4) 1200 kg/m³ (2000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (5) 900 kg/m³ (1500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (6) Not Recommended

Table 14

			336	GC Excavator	with Cat Pi	n Grabber Co	oupier				
		Unde	ercarriage			Standard		Lo	ng		
		Coun	terweight			6800 kg (14991 lb)					
						Mass Boom GC	Re	ach Boom (GC .	Mass Boom GC	
Bucket Type	Linkage	Width of Bucket	Capacity of Bucket	Weight of Bucket	Fill (%)	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	
	DB	750 mm (30 inch)	0.73 m ³ (0.95 yd ³)	1088 kg (2399 lb)	90		(1)	(1)	(1)		
	DB	900 mm (36 inch)	0.95 m ³ (1.24 yd ³)	1241 kg (2735 lb)	90		(1)	(1)	(1)		
	DB	1050 mm (42 inch)	1.17 m ³ (1.54 yd ³)	1338 kg (2949 lb)	90		(1)	(1)	(1)		
Severe Du- ty (SD)	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m ³ (1.83 yd ³)	1478 kg (3258 lb)	90		(1)	(1)	(2)		
	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.64 m ³ (2.14 yd ³)	1581 kg (3485 lb)	90		(1)	(3)	(4)		
	DB	1500 mm (59 inch)	1.91 m ³ (2.50 yd ³)	1666 kg (3672 lb)	90		(2)	(2)	(4)		
	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.15 m ³ (2.81 yd ³)	1802 kg (3972 lb)	90		(2)	(4)	(5)		
Severe Du- ty Spade (SDS)	DB	1550 mm (61 inch)	1.90 m ³ (2.48 yd ³)	1864 kg (4109 lb)	90		(2)	(4)	(5)		
	DB	1400 mm (56 inch)	1.64 m ³ (2.14 yd ³)	1720 kg (3791 lb)	90		(3)	(3)	(4)		
Severe Du- ty (SD)	DB	1700 mm (67 inch)	2.12 m ³ (2.77 yd ³)	2004 kg (4417 lb)	90		(4)	(4)	(5)		
	DB	1850 mm (73 inch)	2.31 m³ (3.02 yd³)	2097 kg (4622 lb)	90		(4)	(5)	(6)		
Severe Du- ty Extreme (SDE)	DB	1700 mm (67 inch)	2.05 m³ (2.68 yd³)	2058 kg (4537 lb)	90		(4)	(4)	(5)		
Severe Du- ty (SD)	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1452 kg (3201 lb)	90		(1)	(1)	(3)		
	DB	750 mm (30 inch)	0.68 m ³ (0.88 yd ³)	1095 kg (2414 lb)	90		(1)	(1)	(1)		
Severe Du- ty Pin	DB	900 mm (36 inch)	0.87 m ³ (1.14 yd ³)	1272 kg (2804 lb)	90		(1)	(1)	(1)		
Grabber Perform- ance (SDS)	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.29 m³ (1.69 yd³)	1520 kg (3351 lb)	90		(1)	(1)	(3)		
	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.50 m ³ (1.96 yd ³)	1628 kg (3589 lb)	90		(1)	(3)	(2)		
Extreme Duty (XD)	DB	1200 mm (48 inch)	1.40 m ³ (1.83 yd ³)	1621 kg (3573 lb)	90		(1)	(1)	(2)		

(Table 14, contd)

(14510 14, 001									
Extreme Duty (XD)	DB	1400 mm (56 inch)	1.64 m ³ (2.14 yd ³)	1899 kg (4186 lb)	90	(3)	(2)	(4)	
Ditch Cleaning (DC)	DB	1800 mm (72 inch)	1.96 m ³ (2.56 yd ³)	1034 kg (2280 lb)	100	(3)	(2)	(4)	
Clean Up	DB	1800 mm (72 inch)	2.48 m³ (3.24 yd³)	1331 kg (2934 lb)	100	(4)	(4)	(5)	
(CU)	DB	2000 mm (78 inch)	2.74 m³ (3.58 yd³)	1417 kg (3124 lb)	100	(4)	(5)	(6)	
General	DB	1400 mm (55 inch)	1.40 m ³ (1.83 yd ³)	1163 kg (2563 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(3)	
Duty Exca- vation	DB	1450 mm (57 inch)	1.50 m ³ (1.96 yd ³)	1200 kg (2645 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)	
(GDX)	DB	1550 mm (61 inch)	1.60 m ³ (2.09 yd ³)	1262 kg (2783 lb)	100	(1)	(3)	(2)	
Heavy Du- ty Excava-	DB	1450 mm (57 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1467 kg (3234 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)	
tion (HDX)	DB	1500 mm (59 inch)	1.50 m ³ (1.96 yd ³)	1518 kg (3346 lb)	100	(1)	(3)	(4)	
Heavy Du- ty (HD)	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³)	1583 kg (3490 lb)	100	(2)	(2)	(5)	
Heavy Du- ty Skeleton (HD)	DB	1450 mm (57 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.83 yd³)	1466 kg (3232 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)	

^{(1) 2100} kg/m³ (3500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (2) 1500 kg/m³ (2500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (3) 1800 kg/m³ (3000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (4) 1200 kg/m³ (2000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (5) 900 kg/m³ (1500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (6) Not Recommended

Table 15

Table 15										
			336	GC Excavator	with Cat Pi	n Grabber Co	oupler			
		Unde	ercarriage			Standard		Lo	ng	
		Coun	terweight			l lb)				
						Mass Boom GC	Reach Boom GC			Mass Boom GC
Bucket Type	Linkage	Width of Bucket	Capacity of Bucket	Weight of Bucket	Fill (%)	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick
General	ТВ	1800 mm (71 inch)	2.60 m ³ (3.40 yd ³)	2119 kg (4671 lb)	100	(1)				(2)
Duty (GD)	ТВ	1800 mm (71 inch)	2.60 m ³ (3.40 yd ³)	2214 kg (4880 lb)	100	(1)				(1)
Heavy Du-	ТВ	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.41 m ³ (3.15 yd ³)	2220 kg (4894 lb)	100	(1)				(2)
ty (HD)	ТВ	1750 mm (69 inch)	2.50 m ³ (3.27 yd ³)	2258 kg (4978 lb)	100	(1)				(2)

⁽⁶⁾ Not Recommended

(Table 15, contd)

(Table 15, col	itu)							
	ТВ	1850 mm (72 inch)	2.69 m ³ (3.52 yd ³)	2387 kg (5262 lb)	100	(1)		(2)
	ТВ	1850 mm (72 inch)	2.69 m³ (3.52 yd³)	2349 kg (5178 lb)	100	(1)		(2)
	ТВ	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.15 yd³)	2377 kg (5240 lb)	100	(1)		(2)
	ТВ	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.41 m ³ (3.15 yd ³)	2392 kg (5273 lb)	100	(1)		(2)
	ТВ	1750 mm (69 inch)	2.50 m ³ (3.27 yd ³)	2352 kg (5185 lb)	100	(1)		(2)
	ТВ	1950 mm (77 inch)	3.08 m ³ (4.03 yd ³)	2710 kg (5974 lb)	100	(1)		(2)
Severe Du- ty Power (SDP)	ТВ	1750 mm (69 inch)	2.40 m³ (3.14 yd³)	2544 kg (5608 lb)	90	(1)		(2)
Extreme Duty Power (XDP)	ТВ	1550 mm (61 inch)	2.00 m³ (2.59 yd³)	2562 kg (5648 lb)	90	(2)		(2)
Severe Du-	ТВ	1600 mm (63 inch)	2.20 m³ (2.88 yd³)	2332 kg (5141 lb)	90	(2)		(2)
ty (SD)	ТВ	1600 mm (63 inch)	2.20 m ³ (2.88 yd ³)	2390 kg (5268 lb)	90	(2)		(2)
	ТВ	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.87 m ³ (2.44 yd ³)	2053 kg (4526 lb)	90	(3)		(3)
Severe Du- ty Spade (SDS)	ТВ	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.16 yd³)	2367 kg (5218 lb)	90	(2)		(2)
	ТВ	1500 mm (61 inch)	2.14 m³ (2.80 yd³)	2254 kg (4969 lb)	90	(2)		(2)
Severe Du- ty (SD)	ТВ	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.15 yd³)	2497 kg (5504 lb)	90	(1)		(2)

CW Quick Coupler

Table 16

				33	6GC Exca	vator wit	h CW Qui	ick Coupl	er				
	Undercarriage						Standard Long						
		Coun	terweight			6800 kg (14991 lb)							
Bucket	Capacity	apacity		Rea	ch Boom	ı GC	Mass Boom GC				Mass Boom GC		
Type	Link- age	Width of Bucket	of Bucket	Weight of Bucket	Fill (%)	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick

⁽¹⁾ Not Recommended (2) 900 kg/m³ (1500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (3) 1200 kg/m³ (2000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material

(Tabl	le 1	16	con	td)
(Iabi		υ.	COLL	w

(10000	00												
General Duty	DB	1500 mm (59 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³)	1256 kg (2768 lb)	100	(1)	(2)	(3)		(1)	(1)	(3)	
(GD)	DB	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1334 kg (2940 lb)	100	(2)	(3)	(4)		(2)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.64 m³ (2.14 yd³)	1419 kg (3128 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(3)		(5)	(1)	(2)	
Heavy Duty (HD)	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³)	1516 kg (3342 lb)	100	(2)	(2)	(3)		(1)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1650 kg (3637 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)		(2)	(3)	(4)	
Severe Duty (SD)	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.15 m³ (2.81 yd³)	1775 kg (3913 lb)	90	(2)	(3)	(4)		(2)	(3)	(4)	
	DB	2200 mm (87 inch)	2.40 m³ (3.14 yd³)	1346 kg (2967 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)		(2)	(3)	(4)	
Ditch Clean- ing (DC)	DB	1800 mm (72 inch)	1.96 m³ (2.56 yd³)	1163 kg (2564 lb)	100	(1)	(2)	(3)		(1)	(2)	(3)	
	DB	2000 mm (79 inch)	2.18 m³ (2.85 yd³)	1250 kg (2756 lb)	100	(2)	(3)	(4)		(2)	(2)	(3)	
Heavy Duty (HD)	ТВ	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.15 yd³)	2120 kg (4673 lb)	100				(4)				(3)
Severe Duty (SD)	ТВ	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.15 yd³)	2267 kg (4998 lb)	90				(3)				(3)

CWS Quick Coupler

Table 17

	336GC Excavator with CWS Quick Coupler											
Undercarriage Standard Long												
		Coun	terweight				(14991 lb)	1 lb)				
Bucket Type	Link- age	Width of Bucket	Capacity of Bucket	Weight of Bucket	Fill (%)	Reach Boom GC	Mass Boom GC	Reach Boom GC	Mass Boom GC			

(continued)

^{(1) 1800} kg/m³ (3000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (2) 1500 kg/m³ (2500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (3) 1200 kg/m³ (2000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (4) 900 kg/m³ (1500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (5) 2100 kg/m³ (3500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material

(Table 17, contd)

(Table 17,	conta)			1					1				
						2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick	2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick	3.2 m (10 ft 5 inch) Stick	3.9 m (12 ft 9 inch) Stick	2.55 m (8 ft 4 inch) Stick
	DB	1200 mm (47 inch)	1.40 m³ (1.84 yd³)	1026 kg (2262 lb)	100	(1)	(1)	(2)		(1)	(1)	(1)	
General Duty (GD)	DB	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1227 kg (2815 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)		(3)	(3)	(4)	
	DB	1800 mm (71 inch)	2.36 m³ (3.09 yd³)	1372 kg (3025 lb)	100	(4)	(4)	(5)		(3)	(4)	(5)	
Heavy	DB	1500 mm (60 inch)	1.88 m³ (2.46 yd³)	1461 kg (3221 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)		(2)	(3)	(4)	
Duty (HD)	DB	1650 mm (65 inch)	2.12 m³ (2.77 yd³)	1581 kg (3486 lb)	100	(3)	(4)	(5)		(3)	(4)	(5)	
Severe Duty (SD)	DB	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.15 m³ (2.81 yd³)	1706 kg (3761 lb)	90	(3)	(4)	(5)		(3)	(3)	(5)	
Ditch Clean-	DB	2400 mm (94 inch)	2.04 m³ (2.67 yd³)	1266 kg (2791 lb)	100	(3)	(3)	(4)		(2)	(3)	(4)	
ing (DC)	DB	2200 mm (87 inch)	2.40 m³ (3.14 yd³)	1347 kg (2970 lb)	100	(4)	(4)	(5)		(3)	(4)	(5)	
Heavy Duty (HD)	ТВ	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.15 yd³)	2052 kg (4524 lb)	100				(4)				(4)
Severe Duty	ТВ	1350 mm (54 inch)	1.87 m ³ (2.44 yd ³)	1898 kg (4185 lb)	90				(2)				(2)
(SD)	ТВ	1650 mm (66 inch)	2.41 m³ (3.15 yd³)	2199 kg (4848 lb)	90				(4)				(4)

^{(1) 2100} kg/m³ (3500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (2) 1800 kg/m³ (3000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (3) 1500 kg/m³ (2500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (4) 1200 kg/m³ (2000 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material (5) 900 kg/m³ (1500 lb/yd³) is the maximum density of material

i08507921

Lifting Capacities

SMCS Code: 7000

WARNING

Failure to comply to the rated load can cause possible personal injury or property damage. This includes the risk of unintended boom lowering. Review the rated load of a particular work tool before performing any operation. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessary for non-standard configurations.

There may be local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of excavators which lift heavy objects. Obey all local and government regulations.

Lifting capacities should be used as a guide. Work tools, uneven ground conditions, soft ground conditions, or poor ground conditions have effects on lifting capacities. The operator is responsible for being aware of these effects.

The lifting capacities are defined by "ISO 10567 2007". The lifting capacities are defined as the lower value of 75% of the static tipping capacity or 87% of the hydraulic lift capacity.

Note: Lifting capacities are based on a standard machine with the following conditions:

- Lift point: Stick nose without bucket
- · Lubricants full
- Fuel tank full
- · Steel track
- · Complete cab with a 75 kg (165 lb) operator

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools and attachments. The weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted from the lift capacity. Consult your Cat ® dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

This machine may be equipped with various sticks. Lifting capacities may vary between the different sticks. Measure the distance on the stick between the boom hinge pin and the work tool hinge pin. This distance will inform you of the size of the stick that is equipped on the machine.

Use the lifting eye that is provided on the stick nose to lift objects. When the lifting eye is used, the connection must be made with a sling or shackle.

Note: Japan regulations require a shovel crane configuration to lift certain objects. A shovel crane has a rated load capacity, therefore, the lift capacities discussed below do not apply to a shovel crane configuration. Contact your Cat dealer for additional information.

Note: Regional regulations may require the use of an overload warning device and boom and stick lowering control valves during object handling applications.

Contact your Cat dealer for additional information.

Configuration Identification

Note: Each component has a stamp to identify the configuration affecting lifting capacity.

The owner will need to check the machine configuration to identify the correct lifting capacity.

The configuration identifier will be located with the part number stamped on the component. Refer to the following table for the abbreviation of the configuration.

Table 18

	Configuration Identification									
Compo- nent	Configuration	Ab- brevi- ation								
	Reach Boom	R								
	Mass Boom	М								
	Variable Angle Boom	VA								
F	Super Long Reach Boom	SLR								
Front	Standard	STD								
	Heavy Duty	HD								
	Extreme Special	ES								
	Thumb Ready Stick	TR								
	Short Undercarriage (Crawler)	STD								
Undercar- riage	Long Undercarriage (Crawler)	LC								
	Long Narrow Undercarriage (Crawler)	LN								
Ordinada n	Standard	-								
Cylinder	Heavy Lift	HL								
Counter- weight	Metric Ton (tonne)	t(1)								

(continued)

(Table 18, contd)

 Counterweight stamp indicates metric ton. (example 1.0t = 1000 kg)

Symbols Found in the Lifting Capacity Charts

Below are symbols that are commonly found on lifting capacity charts for track excavators.

Note: Depending on the machine configuration, some symbols may not be used.

(mm) (inch) Measurements are provided in millimeters and inches



Lift Capacities are provided in kilograms and pounds



Load is limited by hydraulic lifting capacity rather than by a tipping load



Lift point radius



Lift point height



Lifting capacity over the front of the machine



Lifting capacity over the side of the machine



Heavy Lift ON

6800 kg (14991 lb) Counterweight

6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) Reach Boom

3.9 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick

(mm) (inch)		500 60		3000 120		500 180		000 240		500 300		1000 360	4		
kg kg															(mm) (inch)
9000													* 4800	* 4800	7350
360													* 10650	* 10650	290
7500									* 6450	* 6450			* 4450	* 4450	8540
300									* 14250	* 14250			* 9800	* 9800	340
6000									* 6700	* 6700	* 5800	5500	* 4300	* 4300	9340
240									* 14700	* 14700	* 11150	* 11150	* 9500	* 9500	370
4500							* 8250	* 8250	* 7350	7250	* 6850	5400	* 4350	* 4350	9840
180							* 17800	* 17800	* 15950	15550	* 14950	11600	* 9500	* 9500	390
3000					* 12900	* 12900	* 9750	9650	* 8150	6950	7100	5250	* 4450	4350	10100
120					* 27750	* 27750	* 21050	20750	* 17700	14900	15250	11300	* 9800	9600	400
1500					* 15550	13700	* 11200	9100	* 9000	6650	6900	5100	* 4750	4250	10130
60					* 33550	29500	* 24200	19600	* 19500	14300	14850	10950	* 10400	9350	400
0			* 6800	* 6800	* 16950	13100	12200	8700	8800	6400	6800	4950	* 5150	4300	9930
0			* 15500	* 15500	* 36650	28200	26250	18750	18950	13750	14600	10650	* 11350	9450	390
-1500	* 7150	* 7150	* 10700	* 10700	* 17150	12900	11950	8500	8650	6250	6700	4900	* 5900	4550	9490
-60	* 15900	* 15900	* 24200	* 24200	* 37150	27700	25750	18300	18600	13450	14450	10500	* 13000	10050	380
-3000	* 11350	* 11350	* 15650	* 15650	* 16400	12900	11950	8450	8600	6250			7000	5100	8770
-120	* 25400	* 25400	* 35450	* 35450	* 35500	27750	25650	18200	18550	13400			15450	11250	350
-4500	* 16350	* 16350	* 20250	* 20250	* 14600	13100	* 11050	8600	* 8300	6350			* 7900	6200	7690
-180	* 36700	* 36700	* 43700	* 43700	* 31450	28200	* 23700	18500	* 17400	13750			* 17400	13750	300
-6000					* 11100	* 11100	* 7850	* 7850					* 7700	* 7700	6060
-240					* 23350	* 23350							* 16800	* 16800	240

Illustration 67 0.06297664

336~GC:6800~kg~(14991~lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~(21~ft~4~inch) reach boom, 3.9~m~(12~ft~10~inch) stick, 800~mm~(31.5~inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)		60		120		500 180		0000 240		'500 300		1000 360		Ā	
															(mm) (inch)
9000													* 4800	* 4800	7350
360													* 10650	* 10650	290
7500									* 6450	* 6450			* 4450	* 4450	8540
300									* 14250	* 14250			* 9800	* 9800	340
6000									* 6700	* 6700	* 5800	5400	* 4300	* 4300	9340
240									* 14700	* 14700	* 11150	* 11150	* 9500	* 9500	370
4500							* 8250	* 8250	* 7350	7150	* 6850	5350	* 4350	* 4350	9840
180							* 17800	* 17800	* 15950	15350	* 14950	11400	* 9500	* 9500	390
3000					* 12900	* 12900	* 9750	9500	* 8150	6850	7000	5150	* 4450	4300	10100
120					* 27750	* 27750	* 21050	20500	* 17700	14700	15000	11100	* 9800	9450	400
1500					* 15550	13500	* 11200	8950	8900	6550	6800	5000	* 4750	4200	10130
60					* 33550	29100	* 24200	19300	19200	14050	14650	10750	* 10400	9200	400
0			* 6800	* 6800	* 16950	12900	12000	8600	8650	6300	6650	4850	* 5150	4250	9930
0			* 15500	* 15500	* 36650	27750	25800	18450	18650	13550	14350	10450	* 11350	9300	390
-1500	* 7150	* 7150	* 10700	* 10700	* 17150	12700	11800	8350	8500	6150	6600	4800	* 5900	4500	9490
-60	* 15900	* 15900	* 24200	* 24200	* 37150	27250	25350	18000	18300	13250	14200	10350	* 13000	9850	380
-3000	* 11350	* 11350	* 15650	* 15650	* 16400	12700	11750	8350	8500	6150			6850	5000	8770
-120	* 25400	* 25400	* 35450	* 35450	* 35500	27300	25250	17950	18250	13200			15200	11050	350
-4500	* 16350	* 16350	* 20250	* 20250	* 14600	12900	* 11050	8450	* 8300	6250			* 7900	6100	7690
-180	* 36700	* 36700	* 43700	* 43700	* 31450	27750	* 23700	18200	* 17400	13550			* 17400	13550	300
-6000					* 11100	* 11100	* 7850	* 7850					* 7700	* 7700	6060
-240					* 23350	* 23350							* 16800	* 16800	240

| Illustration 68 g06297667

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 700 mm $\,$ (27.6 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)			500 60		000 120		500 180		6000 240		'500 300		1000 360	4		
	\$ 100 kg		C.						d l							(mm) (inch)
9000														* 4800	* 4800	7350
360														* 10650	* 10650	290
7500										* 6450	* 6450			* 4450	* 4450	8540
300										* 14250	* 14250			* 9800	* 9800	340
6000										* 6700	* 6700	* 5800	5400	* 4300	* 4300	9340
240										* 14700	* 14700	* 11150	* 11150	* 9500	* 9500	370
4500								* 8250	* 8250	* 7350	7100	* 6850	5300	* 4350	* 4350	9840
180								* 17800	* 17800	* 15950	15200	* 14950	11300	* 9500	* 9500	390
3000						* 12900	* 12900	* 9750	9450	* 8150	6800	6900	5100	* 4450	4250	10100
120						* 27750	* 27750	* 21050	20300	* 17700	14600	14850	11000	* 9800	9350	400
1500						* 15550	13400	* 11200	8900	8850	6500	6750	4950	* 4750	4150	10130
60						* 33550	28850	* 24200	19150	19000	13950	14500	10650	* 10400	9100	400
0				* 6800	* 6800	* 16950	12800	11900	8500	8600	6250	6600	4850	* 5150	4200	9930
0				* 15500	* 15500	* 36650	27500	25600	18300	18450	13450	14200	10400	* 11350	9250	390
-1500		* 7150	* 7150	* 10700	* 10700	* 17150	12550	11700	8300	8450	6100	6550	4750	* 5900	4450	9490
-60		* 15900	* 15900	* 24200	* 24200	* 37150	27050	25100	17850	18150	13150	14050	10250	* 13000	9750	380
-3000		* 11350	* 11350	* 15650	* 15650	* 16400	12600	11650	8250	8400	6050			6800	4950	8770
-120		* 25400	* 25400	* 35450	* 35450	* 35500	27050	25000	17750	18100	13100			15050	10950	350
-4500		* 16350	* 16350	* 20250	* 20250	* 14600	12800	* 11050	8350	* 8300	6200			* 7900	6000	7690
-180		* 36700	* 36700	* 43700	* 43700	* 31450	27500	* 23700	18050	* 17400	13400			* 17400	13400	300
-6000						* 11100	* 11100	* 7850	* 7850					* 7700	* 7700	6060
-240						* 23350	* 23350							* 16800	* 16800	240

Illustration 69 g06297670

336 GC: 6800 kg (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 600 mm (23.6 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)		500 60		000		1500 180		.000 240		7500 300	l '	9000 360	\[\sqrt{\pi}	أجعر	
				-											
		P		æ		喦	P	æ		æ	Į,	Ġ.	140	<u> </u>	(mm) (inch)
9000													4800	4800	7350
360													10650	10650	290
7500									6450	• 6450			• 4450	4450	8540
300									14250	14250			9800	• 9800	340
6000									6700	• 6700	• 5800	5650	• 4300	4300	9340
240									14700	14700	11150	11150	• 9500	• 9500	370
4500							* 8250	* 8250	* 7350	* 7350	. 6850	5550	4350	4350	9840
180							* 17800	• 17 800	15950	15950	14950	11950	• 9500	• 9500	390
3000					12900	12900	9750	9750	* 8150	7150	. 7250	5400	• 4450	4450	10100
120					* 27750	* 27750	* 21050	* 21050	17700	15350	15800	116.00	9800	9800	400
1500					15550	14100	* 11200	9350	. 9000	6350	. 7700	5250	4750	4400	10130
60					33550	30350	* 24200	20150	19500	14700	16750	11300	10400	9650	400
0			6800	- 6800	16950	13500	* 12200	8950	. 9600	6600	* 8050	5100	• 5150	4450	9930
0			* 15500	* 15500	* 36650	29050	* 26400	19350	20850	14200	17300	11000	11350	9800	390
-1500	* 7150	* 7150	10700	10700	17150	13250	* 12600	8750	. 9900	6450	7950	5050	- 5900	4700	9490
-60	15900	15900	* 24200	- 24200	* 37150	28550	* 27250	18900	* 21400	13900	17150	10850	• 1 3000	10350	380
-3000	11350	11350	* 15650	15650	16400	13300	* 12300	8750	9600	6450			7100	5250	8770
-120	* 25400	* 25400	* 35450	* 35450	* 35500	28550	* 26550	18800	* 20700	13850			• 15 800	11600	350
-4500	16350	16350	* 20250	- 20250	14600	13500	* 11050	8850	* 8300	6550			7900	6350	7690
-180	* 36700	* 36700	43700	43700	* 31450	29050	* 23700	19050	17400	14200			17400	14200	300
-6000			,		11100	11100	* 7850	7850					* 7700	* 7700	6060
-240					* 23350	• 23350							16800	16800	240

Illustration 70 g06346792

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 850 mm $\,$ (33.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)			500 60		120		1500 180		:000 240		1500 300		9000 360	Z	لدعي	
7			P		B				4		砸		Œ	I ₀	B	(mm) (inch)
9000														4800	4800	7350
360														10650	10650	290
7500										• 6450	• 6450			4450	• 4450	8540
300										14250	14250			9800	9800	340
6000										• 6700	6700	• 5800	5500	4300	4300	9340
240										14700	14700	11150	11150	9500	• 9500	370
4500								* 8250	8250	* 7350	7250	• 6850	5400	4350	4350	9840
180								17800	17800	15950	15550	14950	11600	9500	9500	390
3000						12900	12900	9750	9650	* 8150	6900	* 7250	5250	4450	4350	10100
120						• 27750	• 27750	* 21050	20750	17700	14900	15800	11250	9800	9600	460
1500						15550	13700	11200	9100	9000	6650	7700	5100	4750	4250	10130
60						* 33550	29450	* 24200	19600	19500	14250	16750	10900	10400	9350	400
0				. 6800	• 6800	16950	13100	12200	8700	9600	6400	7800	4950	• 5150	4300	9930
٥				15500	15500	* 36650	28150	* 26400	18750	20850	13750	16750	10650	11350	9450	390
-1500	T	7150	* 7150	10700	• 10700	17190	12#50	12600	8500	. 9900	6250	7700	4900	. 5900	4550	9490
-60		15900	15900	24200	- 24200	* 37150	27650	* 27250	18300	21400	13450	16600	10500	13000	10000	380
-3000	1-	11350	11350	15650	15650	16400	12900	12300	8450	9600	6200			* 7100	5100	8770
-120	. :	25400	* 29400	* 35450	* 35450	* 35500	27700	* 26550	18200	* 20700	13400			15800	11250	350
-4500	1.	16350	• 16350	* 20250	* 20250	14600	13100	11050	8550	. 8300	6350			* 7900	6150	7690
-130	1.	36700	* 36700	43700	• 4 3700	* 31450	28150	* 23700	18450	17400	13750			17400	13750	300
-6000						11100	11100	* 7850	* 7850					1700	* 7700	6060
-240						• 23350	23350							16800	16800	240

Illustration 71 g06346805

336~GC: 6800~kg (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9~m (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 600~mm (23.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (insh)		500 60		:000 120		150e 180		5000 240		1500 300		1000 360	1	<u></u>	
1	1	Œ,	10	Œ,	P	4	P	æ	1	Œ.	1	æ	140	æ	(mm) (inch)
9000													4809	4800	7350
360													10650	10650	290
7500									* 6450	* 6450			4450	4450	8540
300									14250	* 14250			9800	9800	340
6000									* 6700	* 6700	* 5800	5550	4300	4300	9340
240									14700	14700	11150	* 11150	9500	9500	370
4500							* 8250	* 8250	7350	7300	. 6850	5450	4350	4350	9840
1#0							- 17800	17:00	* 15950	15650	14950	11700	9500	9500	390
3000					12900	12900	• 9750	9700	* 8150	7000	* 7250	5300	4450	4400	10100
120					. 27750	27750	• 21050	20900	17700	15050	15800	11350	9800	9650	400
1500					15550	13 800	11200	9150	9000	8700	* 7700	5150	4750	4360	10130
4.0					* 33550	29750	* 24200	19750	19500	14400	16750	11000	10400	9450	400
0			. 6800	. 6800	16950	13200	• 12200	8000	* 9600	6450	7850	5000	• 5150	4350	9930
0			15500	15500	. 36620	28400	• 26400	18900	• 20850	13900	16900	10750	11350	9550	390
-1500	7150	* 7150	10700	10760	17150	13000	12600	8550	- 9900	6300	7800	4950	5900	4600	9490
-40	15900	15900	. 54500	. 24200	37150	27900	- 27250	18450	* 21400	13600	16750	10600	13000	10100	380
-3000	11350	• 11350	15650	15650	16400	13000	• 12300	8550	* 9600	6300			* 7100	5150	8770
-120	• 25400	• 25400	• 35450	. 35450	35500	27950	• 26550	18350	• 20700	13550			15800	11350	350
-4500	16350	16350	. 20250	* 20250	14600	13200	11050	3650	* \$300	6400			* 7900	6250	7690
-1 ≑0	* 3670#	* 36700	43700	43700	* 31450	28400	- 23700	184 50	17400	13850			17400	13850	300
-6000	Ì				11100	11100	- 7850	* 7250					7700	1790	6060
-240	l				. 23350	23350							16800	16860	240

Illustration 72 g06346809

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 700 mm $\,$ (27.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)	1	560 60		:000 120		1500 180		3000 240		7500 300		1000 360		,F=3,	
1		Œ		R	1	A	1	æ	1			æ	1	GP	(mm) (inch)
9000													4800	4800	7350
360													10650	10650	290
7500									6450	. 6450			• 4450	4450	8540
300									14250	14250			9800	9800	340
6000									• 6700	6700	5800	5650	4300	• 4300	9340
240									14700	14700	11150	11150	9500	9500	370
4500							* 8250	* \$250	7350	7350	. 6850	5550	4350	4350	9840
180							17800	17800	15950	15900	14950	11900	9500	9500	390
3000					12900	12900	9750	9750	* 8150	7100	7250	5400	4450	4450	10160
120					* 27750	. 27750	* 21050	* 21050	17700	15250	15800	11550	9800	9800	460
1500					15550	14000	* 11200	9300	. 6060	6#00	* 7700	5200	4750	4350	10130
60					* 33550	30200	- 24200	20050	19500	14650	16750	11200	10400	9600	400
0			. 6800	* 6800	16950	13400	• 12200	8950	9600	6550	8000	5100	* 5150	4450	9930
0		l .	15500	* 15500	. 36620	28900	• 26400	19200	• 20850	14100	17200	10950	11350	9750	390
-1500	* 7150	* 7150	10700	10700	17150	13200	12600	8700	9900	6400	7900	5000	• 5900	4700	9490
-60	15900	- 15900	* 24200	* 24200	37150	28400	- 27250	18750	21400	13+00	17050	10800	13000	10300	380
-3000	• 11350	• 11350	15650	* 15650	• 16400	13200	• 12300	8700	• 9680	6400			* 7100	5250	8770
-120	• 25400	• 25400	* 35450	• 35450	• 35500	28400	• 26550	18700	• 20700	13000			• 15800	11550	350
-4500	• 16350	• 16350	. 50520	* 20250	• 14600	13400	• 11050	3800	. 8300	6550			• 7900	6350	7690
-180	* 36700	- 36700	43700	* 43700	* 31450	28900	- 23700	18950	17400	14100			17400	14100	300
-6000					11100	11100	* 7850	* 7850					* 7700	7700	6060
-240					. 23350	. 53350							16800	* 16800	240

Illustration 73 g06346813

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 800 mm $\,$ (31.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)		500 60		120		1500 180		-000 240		7500 300		360	4	<u>.</u> ≢3	
	14	8		æ		æ	4	<u> </u>	6	dip	1	Ġ	1	-	(mm) (inch)
9000													4800	4#00	7350
260													10650	10650	290
7500									• 6450	. 6450			4450	4450	8540
300									14250	14250			9800	9000	340
6000									6700	6700	* 5#00	5600	4300	4300	9340
240									14700	14700	11150	* 11150	9500	9500	370
4500							9250	• 8250	* 7350	* 7350	* 6850	5500	4350	4350	9840
180							17890	17800	15950	15800	14950	11800	9500	9500	390
3000					12,900	12900	9750	9750	* 8150	7050	* 7250	5350	4450	4450	10100
120					. 27750	• 27750	1 21050	* 21050	17700	15200	* 15*00	11500	9800	9#00	400
1500					* 15550	13950	11200	9250	9000	6750	* 7700	5200	4750	4350	10130
60					. 33550	30000	* 24200	19950	19500	14550	16750	11150	10400	9550	400
0			. 6800	. 6800	16950	13350	12200	8850	9600	6500	7950	5050	5150	4400	9930
0			15500	15500	. 36650	28700	* 26499	19100	20850	14050	17100	10850	11350	9650	390
-1500	* 7150	• 7150	10700	10700	17150	13100	12600	8650	9900	6400	7850	5000	5900	4650	9490
-60	* 15900	• 15900	24200	24200	97150	20200	27250	18650	1 21400	13750	16950	10750	13000	10250	300
-3000	* 11350	• 11350	15650	15650	* 16400	13150	12300	8600	9600	6350			* 7100	5200	8770
-120	* 25400	• 25400	35450	35450	35500	2#250	26550	18550	20700	13700			15800	11450	350
-4500	* 16350	• 16350	. 50520	* 20250	14600	13350	11050	8750	* 8300	6500			7900	6300	7690
-180	* 36700	* 36700	43700	43700	31450	2#700	* 23700	18850	17400	14000			17400	14000	300
-6000					11100	11100	7850	* 7850					* 7700	* 7700	6060
-240					23350	* 23350							16800	* 16#00	240

Illustration 74 g06346823

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 600 mm $\,$ (23.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

78
Product Information Section
Lifting Capacities

(mm) (inch)		500 60		:000 120		1500 180		.000 240		'500 300		1000 360	4	_F~]	
7 .		龟			10	Æ		퀀		<u>6</u>			14		(mm) (inch)
9000													• 4800	* 4800	7350
360													10650	10650	290
7500									6450	6450			• 4450	* 4450	8540
300									14250	14250			9800	9800	340
6000									• 6700	6700	• 5800	5600	4300	4300	9340
240									14700	14700	• 11150	11150	9500	9500	370
4500							* \$250	* \$250	* 7350	7350	• 6850	5500	4350	4350	9840
180							* 17800	17800	15950	15800	• 14950	11750	9500	• 9500	390
3000					12900	12900	• 9750	9750	* 8150	7050	• 7250	5350	• 4450	4450	10100
120					. 27750	* 27750	* 21050	21050	17700	15150	15800	11450	9800	9750	400
1500					15550	13900	* 11200	9250	9000	6750	• 7700	5150	• 4750	4350	10130
60					* 33550	29950	• 24200	19900	19500	14500	• 16750	11100	10400	9500	400
0			• 6800	. 6800	16950	13300	• 12200	8850	9600	6500	7900	5050	• 5150	4400	9930
			• 15500	15500	. 36650	28650	* 26400	19050	. 20850	14000	17050	10850	11350	9650	390
-1500	* 7150	* 7150	10700	10700	17150	13100	• 12600	8650	• 9900	6350	7850	4950	• 5900	4650	9490
-60	15900	· 15900	• 24200	. 24200	. 37150	28150	• 27250	18600	· 21400	13700	16900	10700	13000	10200	380
-3000	11350	11350	15650	15650	16400	13100	• 12300	8600	9600	6390			• 7100	5200	8770
-120	• 25400	• 25400	* 35450	* 35450	• 35500	28150	• 26550	18500	. 20700	13650			15800	11450	350
-4500	16350	• 16350	• 20250	* 20250	14600	13300	11050	8700	. 8300	6450			• 7900	6300	7690
-180	* 36700	* 36700	43700	43700	* 31450	28600	- 23700	18800	17400	14000			17400	14000	300
-6000					11100	11100	* 7850	* 7850					. 7700	• 7700	6060
-240					* 23350	* 23350							16800	* 16800	240

Illustration 75 g06346829

336 GC: 6800 kg (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 600 mm (23.6 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	1	1500 60		:000 120		1500 180		5000 2 4 0		'500 300		1000 360	4	_E-Z_	
1	16		P	윤	Ę.	æ	Į.	æ	16	C#	ન	C#	1	ď	(mm) (inch)
9000													4800	4800	7350
360													10650	10650	290
7500									• 6450	• 6450			• 4450	• 4450	8540
300									• 14250	• 14250			. 9800	• 9800	340
6000									* 6700	• 6700	• 5800	5700	4300	4300	9340
240									14700	• 14700	11150	11150	9500	• 9500	370
4500							* 8250	* 8250	* 7350	* 7350	* 6850	5600	4350	4350	9840
180							17800	17800	• 15950	• 15950	14950	12050	9500	• 9500	390
3000					12900	12900	9750	9750	* 8150	7200	* 7250	5450	4450	• 4450	10100
120					. 27750	• 27750	• 21050	* 21050	17700	15500	• 15800	11750	. 9800	• 9800	400
1500					15550	14200	• 11200	9450	• 9000	6900	• 7700	5300	4750	4450	10130
60					• 33550	30650	• 24200	20350	• 19500	14850	• 16750	11400	10400	9750	400
0			• 6800	. 6800	16950	13650	12200	9050	• 9600	6650	* 8050	5150	• 5150	4500	9930
٥			* 15500	15500	* 36650	29300	* 26400	19500	* 20850	14350	• 17400	11100	11350	9900	390
-1500	* 7150	* 7150	10700	10700	17150	13400	12600	8850	9900	6500	8050	5100	. 5900	4750	9490
-60	15900	15900	• 24200	. 24200	37150	28800	• 27250	19050	* 21400	14050	17350	11000	13000	10500	380
-3000	* 11350	* 11350	• 15650	15650	16400	13400	• 12300	8800	9600	6500			7100	5300	8770
-120	* 25400	* 25400	* 35450	* 35450	* 35500	28850	. 26550	19000	- 20700	14000			15800	11750	350
-4500	* 16350	* 16350	• 20250	. 20250	14600	13600	11050	8950	* 8300	6650			* 7900	6450	7690
-180	* 36700	* 36700	43700	43700	* 31450	29300	• 23700	19250	• 17400	14350		l	17400	14350	300
-6000					11100	• 11100	* 7850	* 7850					• 7700	• 7700	6060
-240					. 23350	• 23350							16800	16800	240

Illustration 76 g06346838

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 800 mm $\,$ (31.5 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

3.9 m (12 ft 10 inch) Stick with Auxiliary Tool Control System

(mm) (inch)			500 60		120		500 180		0000 240		7500 300		1000 360	<u> </u>	*	
	\$ \$ \$															(mm) (inch)
9000														* 4750	* 4750	7350
360														* 10600	* 10600	290
7500										* 6400	* 6400			* 4400	* 4400	8540
300										* 14050	* 14050			* 9750	* 9750	340
6000										* 6650	* 6650	* 5750	5500	* 4300	* 4300	9340
240										* 14500	* 14500	* 11050	* 11050	* 9400	* 9400	370
4500								* 8150	* 8150	* 7250	7200	* 6750	5350	* 4300	* 4300	9840
180								* 17600	* 17600	* 15750	15550	* 14750	11500	* 9400	* 9400	390
3000						* 12750	* 12750	* 9650	9600	* 8050	6900	7050	5200	* 4400	4300	10100
120						* 27450	* 27450	* 20800	20750	* 17450	14850	15200	11200	* 9700	9500	400
1500						* 15400	13650	* 11050	9050	* 8850	6600	6900	5050	* 4700	4200	10130
60						* 33150	29400	* 23900	19500	* 19200	14200	14800	10800	* 10300	9250	400
0				* 6750	* 6750	* 16750	13000	* 12050	8650	8750	6350	6750	4900	* 5100	4250	9930
0				* 15400	* 15400	* 36200	28000	* 26050	18600	18850	13650	14500	10500	* 11250	9350	390
-1500		* 7100	* 7100	* 10650	* 10650	* 16900	12800	11900	8450	8600	6200	6650	4800	* 5850	4500	9490
-60		* 15800	* 15800	* 24100	* 24100	* 36650	27500	25650	18150	18500	13300	14350	10400	* 12900	9900	380
-3000		* 11300	* 11300	* 15650	* 15650	* 16200	12800	11850	8400	8550	6150			6950	5050	8770
-120		* 25300	* 25300	* 35350	* 35350	* 35000	27500	25500	18050	18450	13250			15350	11100	350
-4500		* 16300	* 16300	* 19950	* 19950	* 14400	13000	* 10900	8500	* 8150	6300			* 7750	6100	7690
-180		* 36600	* 36600	* 43050	* 43050	* 31000	28000	* 23350	18350	* 17100	13600			* 17100	13600	300
-6000						* 10900	* 10900	* 7700	* 7700					* 7550	* 7550	6060
-240						* 22900	* 22900							* 16450	* 16450	240

Illustration 77 g06297784

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 800 mm $\,$ (31.5 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)		500 60		120		500 180		0000 240		'500 300		1000 360			
				d				d l							(mm) (inch)
9000													* 4750	* 4750	7350
360													* 10600	* 10600	290
7500									* 6400	* 6400			* 4400	* 4400	8540
300									* 14050	* 14050			* 9750	* 9750	340
6000									* 6650	* 6650	* 5750	5400	* 4300	* 4300	9340
240									* 14500	* 14500	* 11050	* 11050	* 9400	* 9400	370
4500							* 8150	* 8150	* 7250	7100	* 6750	5300	* 4300	* 4300	9840
180							* 17600	* 17600	* 15750	15300	* 14750	11350	* 9400	* 9400	390
3000					* 12750	* 12750	* 9650	9500	* 8050	6800	6950	5150	* 4400	4250	10100
120					* 27450	* 27450	* 20800	20450	* 17450	14650	14950	11000	* 9700	9350	400
1500					* 15400	13450	* 11050	8900	* 8850	6500	6750	4950	* 4700	4150	10130
60					* 33150	28950	* 23900	19200	19100	13950	14550	10650	* 10300	9050	400
0			* 6750	* 6750	* 16750	12800	11950	8500	8600	6250	6600	4800	* 5100	4200	9930
0			* 15400	* 15400	* 36200	27600	25750	18350	18550	13400	14250	10350	* 11250	9200	390
-1500	* 7100	* 7100	* 10650	* 10650	* 16900	12600	11750	8300	8450	6100	6550	4750	* 5850	4400	9490
-60	* 15800	* 15800	* 24100	* 24100	* 36650	27050	25200	17850	18200	13100	14100	10200	* 12900	9750	380
-3000	* 11300	* 11300	* 15650	* 15650	* 16200	12600	11700	8250	8450	6050			6800	4950	8770
-120	* 25300	* 25300	* 35350	* 35350	* 35000	27100	25100	17750	18150	13050			15100	10900	350
-4500	* 16300	* 16300	* 19950	* 19950	* 14400	12800	* 10900	8350	* 8150	6200			* 7750	6000	7690
-180	* 36600	* 36600	* 43050	* 43050	* 31000	27550	* 23350	18050	* 17100	13400			* 17100	13400	300
-6000					* 10900	* 10900	* 7700	* 7700					* 7550	* 7550	6060
-240					* 22900	* 22900							* 16450	* 16450	240

Illustration 78 g06297791

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,(14991$ lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,(21$ ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,(12$ ft 10 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 700 mm $\,(27.6$ inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)			500 60		000		500 180		000 240		500 300		000 360	4		
<u></u>	he Lb															(mm) (inch)
9000	\neg													* 4750	* 4750	7350
360														* 10600	* 10600	290
7500										* 6400	* 6400			* 4400	* 4400	8540
300										* 14050	* 14050			* 9750	* 9750	340
6000										* 6650	* 6650	* 5750	5350	* 4300	* 4300	9340
240										* 14500	* 14500	* 11050	* 11050	* 9400	* 9400	370
4500								* 8150	* 8150	* 7250	7050	* 6750	5250	* 4300	* 4300	9840
180								* 17600	* 17600	* 15750	15200	* 14750	11250	* 9400	* 9400	390
3000						* 12750	* 12750	* 9650	9400	* 8050	6750	6900	5100	* 4400	4200	10100
120						* 27450	* 27450	* 20800	20300	* 17450	14500	14800	10900	* 9700	9250	400
1500						* 15400	13350	* 11050	8850	8800	6450	6700	4900	* 4700	4100	10130
60						* 33150	28750	* 23900	19050	18950	13850	14400	10550	* 10300	9000	400
0				* 6750	* 6750	* 16750	12700	11850	8450	8550	6200	6550	4750	* 5100	4150	9930
0				* 15400	* 15400	* 36200	27350	25500	18150	18400	13300	14100	10250	* 11250	9100	390
-1500		* 7100	* 7100	* 10650	* 10650	* 16900	12450	11600	8200	8400	6050	6500	4700	* 5850	4400	9490
-60		* 15800	* 15800	* 24100	* 24100	* 36650	26800	25000	17700	18050	13000	13950	10100	* 12900	9650	380
-3000		* 11300	* 11300	* 15650	* 15650	* 16200	12500	11550	8150	8350	6000			6750	4900	8770
-120		* 25300	* 25300	* 35350	* 35350	* 35000	26850	24900	17600	18000	12950			14950	10800	350
-4500		* 16300	* 16300	* 19950	* 19950	* 14400	12700	* 10900	8300	* 8150	6150			* 7750	5950	7690
-180		* 36600	* 36600	* 43050	* 43050	* 31000	27300	* 23350	17900	* 17100	13300			* 17100	13250	300
-6000						* 10900	* 10900	* 7700	* 7700					* 7550	* 7550	6060
-240						* 22900	* 22900							* 16450	* 16450	240

Illustration 79 g06297793

336 GC: 6800 kg (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m (12 ft 10 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 600 mm (23.6 inch) track shoes.

	(mm) (inch)			50) 60		:000 120		1500 180		:000 240		'500 300		1000 360	<u> </u>		
	1	- W - S				B		围		ď		d P		d	P	ď	(mm) (inch)
		П															
	9000	┪													4750	- 4750	7350
_	360	\perp													10600	* 10600	290
1	7500	- [• 6400	• 6400			4400	- 4400	8540
	300										14050	• 14050			9750	• 9750	340
	6000										. 6650	• 6650	• 5750	5650	4300	• 4300	9340
	240										14500	• 14500	11050	11050	9400	• 9400	370
	4500	П							* \$150	* 8150	1 7250	* 7250	6750	5550	4300	* 4300	9840
	180	- 1							17600	17600	15750	* 15750	14750	11850	9400	9400	390
	3000	П					12750	* 12750	9650	9650	. 8050	7100	* 7150	5350	4400	* 4400	10100
!	120	- 1					27450	• 27450	• 20800	. 50800	17450	15300	15600	11550	9700	• 9700	400
	1500	П					15400	14050	11050	9300	* 8850	6800	7600	5200	4700	4350	10130
	60	- 1					* 33150	30250	• 23900	20100	19200	14600	16500	11150	10300	9550	400
	0	П			6750	• 6750	16750	13400	12050	8900	9500	6550	. 7900	5050	• 5100	4400	9930
	0	- 1			15400	* 15400	* 36200	28050	* 26050	19200	20550	14050	17100	10850	11250	9650	390
	-1500	1	7100	* 7100	10650	10650	16900	13150	12400	\$700	9750	6400	7900	5000	. 2820	4650	9490
	-60	- 1	15800	15800	24100	* 24100	. 36650	28300	. 26900	18700	21050	13750	17050	10700	12900	10250	380
	-3000	ヿ	11300	• 11300	15650	• 15650	16200	13200	12100	8650	9450	6350			* 7100	5200	8770
1	-120	- 1	25300	• 25300	35350	• 35350	* 35000	28350	* 26150	18600	20350	13700			15700	11450	350
	-4500	ヿ	16300	• 16300	19950	19950	14400	13400	10900	8750	* \$150	6500			1 7750	6300	7690
1	-180	- 1	36600	* 36600	43050	43050	* 31000	28*00	. 53350	18900	17100	14050			17100	14050	300
	-6000	ヿ					10900	10900	. 7700	* 7700					. 7550	* 7950	6060
	-240	- 1					* 22900	* 22900							16450	* 16450	240

Illustration 80 g06345398

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 850 mm $\,$ (33.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)	,	1500 60		:000 120		1500 180	l	6000 240		7500 300	l	9000 360	5	<u>.es</u>	
: -1 HC -1 L -1 Ls		C.		Œ.	1	æ	10	ď		Œ.		Œ.	10	œ	(mm) (inch)
9000													• 4750	• 4750	7396
360													10600	10680	290
7500									* 6400	• 6400			4400	4490	\$540
300									* 14050	14050			9750	9750	340
6000				İ					* 6650	* 6650	* 5750	5450	4300	4390	9340
240									14500	* 14500	11050	11050	9400	• 9400	370
4500				i			* 8150	* 8150	* 7250	7200	6750	5350	4300	4300	9840
180							17600	17600	15750	19500	14750	11500	9400	• 9400	390
3000					12750	12750	9650	9600	* 8050	6900	* 7150	5200	4400	4390	10100
120					* 27450	* 27450	. 50800	20700	17450	14850	19600	11150	9700	9450	400
1500					15400	13650	11050	9050	* 8850	6600	7600	5050	4700	4200	10130
60					* 33150	29350	23900	19500	* 19200	14150	* 16500	10860	10300	9200	400
0			6750	6750	16750	13000	12050	8650	* 9500	6350	7750	4900	* 5100	4250	9930
0			15400	15400	* 36200	27950	. 26050	18600	* 20550	13600	16650	10500	11250	9350	390
-1500	* 7100	* 7100	10650	• 10650	16900	12750	12400	8400	• 9750	6200	7650	4#00	• 5850	4500	9490
-60	15800	• 15800	24100	• 24100	* 36650	27450	26400	18100	* 21050	13300	16500	10350	12900	9990	380
-3000	11300	• 11300	15650	• 15650	16200	12800	12100	8350	• 9450	6150			• 7100	5000	8776
-120	• 25300	• 25300	• 35350	• 35350	• 35000	27450	* 26150	18000	* 20350	13250			• 15700	11100	350
-4500	16300	• 16300	19950	19950	14400	13000	10900	8500	* 8150	6300			• 7750	6100	7690
-180	. 36600	• 36600	43050	43050	- 31000	27950	* 23350	18300	• 17100	13600			• 17100	13600	300
-6000					10900	10900	* 7700	• 7700					• 7550	• 7550	6060
-240	l			l	• 22900	• 22900							• 16450	16450	240

Illustration 81 g06345409

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 600 mm $\,$ (23.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)		500 60		120		1500 1 80		3000 240	I	7500 300		360	£	<u></u>	
1	16			4	140	(F)	I.	æ	Ph.	diam'		ď	II.	Œ,	(mm) (in ch)
9000													4750	• 4750	7350
360													10600	10600	290
7500									• 6400	• 6400			4400	• 4400	0540
300									14050	• 14050			9750	9750	340
6000									* 6650	- 6650	• 5750	5500	4300	4300	9340
240									14500	14500	11050	11050	9400	- 9400	370
4500							* 8150	* \$150	* 7250	* 7250	6750	5400	4300	* 4300	9840
180							17600	17600	15750	15650	14750	11600	9400	9400	390
3000					12750	* 12750	9650	9650	* 8050	6950	7150	5250	4400	4350	10100
120	l .				• 27450	* 27450	. 50800	- 20800	17450	14950	15600	11250	9700	9550	400
1500					15400	13750	11050	9100	8850	6650	* 7600	5100	4700	4250	10130
60					* 33150	29600	* 23900	19650	19200	14300	16500	10900	10300	9300	400
0			6750	6750	16750	13100	12050	8700	9500	6400	7800	4950	5100	4300	9930
0			15400	15400	* 36200	28250	26050	18750	20550	13750	16800	10600	11250	9450	390
-1500	7100	* 7100	10650	10650	16900	12900	12400	8500	9750	6250	7750	4850	. 5850	4550	9490
-60	15800	15:00	* 24100	* 24100	* 36650	27700	* 26900	18300	• 21050	13450	16650	10450	12900	10000	380
-3000	11300	11300	15650	• 15650	16200	12900	12100	8450	9450	6200			* 7100	5050	2770
-120	. 25300	* 25304	* 35350	* 35350	* 35000	27750	* 26150	18200	* 20350	13400			15700	11200	350
-4500	16300	16300	19950	19950	14400	13100	10900	8550	* 8150	6350		<u> </u>	* 7750	6150	7690
-180	. 36600	. 36400	43050	43050	· 31000	28200	. 23350	18500	* 17100	13750			17100	13750	300
-6000					10900	10900	* 7700	* 7700					* 7550	* 7550	6060
-240	l				. 55900	• 22900			l				16450	16450	240

Illustration 82 g06345422

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 700 mm $\,$ (27.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

	(mm) (inch)			500 60		:000 120		1 500 180		:000 2 4 0	l .	7500 300	1	1000 360	4	.F-]	
	7	· .		(F)	Į,	Œ,	14	Œ	4	Œ	P	Œ	Į.	C#I	P	æ	(mm) (inch)
Г		Τ															
\vdash	9000	7													• 4750	4750	7350
	360	- 1													10600	10600	290
Г	7500	Т									6400	. 6400			4400	4400	8540
	300										14050	14050			9750	9750	340
Г	6000	Т									• 6650	. 6650	• 5750	5600	4300	4300	9340
1	240	- 1									14500	14500	11050	11050	9400	9400	370
Г	4500	Т							* 8150	* \$150	* 7250	1250	6750	5500	4300	4300	9840
	180								17600	17600	15750	15750	14750	11800	9400	9400	390
Г	3000	Т					1 12750	12750	* 9650	* 9650	* 8050	7050	* 7150	5350	4400	4400	10100
	120	- 1					* 27450	* 27450	* 20800	• 20800	17450	15200	15600	11450	9700	9700	400
Г	1500	Т					15 400	13950	11050	9250	. 8820	4750	* 7600	5150	4700	4300	10130
	60	- 1					* 33150	30100	* 23900	20000	19200	14550	16500	11100	10300	9500	400
Г	0	T			8750	6750	16750	13350	12050	8850	9500	6500	7900	5050	5100	4350	9930
	0	- 1			15400	15400	* 36200	28700	* 26050	19100	- 20550	14000	17100	10800	11250	9600	390
Г	-1500	T	* 7100	* 7100	10650	• 10650	16900	13100	12400	8650	9750	6350	7900	4950	• 5850	4600	9490
	-60	-1	• 15800	15800	* 24100	* 24100	* 36650	28150	* 26900	18600	* 21050	13700	16950	10650	12900	10150	380
	-3000	T	11300	11300	15650	* 15650	16200	13100	12:100	8600	9450	6300			7100	5150	8770
	-120	-1	25300	* 25300	* 35350	* 35350	* 35000	28200	• 26150	18500	• 20350	13600			15700	11400	350
	-4500	┪	16300	* 16300	19950	19950	14400	13350	* 10900	8700	* 8150	6450			• 7750	6250	7690
1	-180	- [• 36600	36600	43050	• 43050	* 31000	28650	• 23350	18800	• 17100	14000			17100	13950	300
Г	-6000	┑					10900	10900	* 7700	* 7700					• 7550	. 7550	6060
	-240	- 1			1		• 22900	. 22900		l	l	l			16450	16450	240

Illustration 83 g06345612

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 800 mm $\,$ (31.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (in-sh)		1500 60		120		150 0 1#0		6000 240	l '	7500 300		9000 360		,FJ	
;	 1	Œ	4	æ	6	æ	1	æ	10		1	Œ	10		(mm) (inch)
9000													4750	4750	7350
360													10600	10600	290
7500									• 6490	• 6400			4400	- 4400	8540
300									14050	14050			9750	9750	340
6,000									• 6650	• 6650	• 5750	5550	4300	4300	9340
240									14500	14500	11050	11050	9400	9400	370
4500							* 8150	* 8150	* 7250	* 7250	• 6750	5450	4300	4300	9840
190						l .	17600	17600	15750	19790	14750	11750	9400	- 9400	390
3000					12750	12750	- 9650	9650	* 8050	7050	* 7150	5300	4400	4400	10100
120					* 27450	* 27450	* 20800	* 20800	• 17450	15100	15600	11400	9700	9700	400
1500					15400	13900	11050	9200	* 8850	6700	7600	5150	4700	4300	10130
60					33150	29900	* 23900	19850	19200	14450	16500	11050	10300	9400	400
			- 6750	6750	16750	13250	12050	3800	9500	6490	. 7900	5000	• 5100	4350	9930
			15400	15400	* 36200	28500	- 26050	18950	20550	13900	17000	10750	11250	9550	390
-1500	* 7100	* 7100	* 10650	10650	* 16900	13000	• 12400	8600	9750	6300	7850	4900	. 5850	4600	9490
-60	* 15:00	15800	* 24100	* 24100	. 36650	28000	* 26900	18500	* 21050	13600	16850	10600	12900	10100	380
-3000	* 11300	11300	* 15650	15650	16200	13050	* 12100	8550	• 9450	6300			* 7100	5150	8770
-120	* 25300	* 25300	• 35350	• 35350	• 35000	28000	• 26150	18400	• 20350	13550			15700	11350	350
-4500	16300	16300	* 19950	19950	14400	13250	* 10900	8650	* \$150	6400			* 7750	6250	7690
-180	* 36600	. 36600	• 43050	43050	* 31000	28500	• 23350	18700	17100	13900			17100	13900	300
-6000					10900	10900	* 7700	* 7700					* 7550	* 7550	6060
-240					. 22900	- 22900							16450	16450	240

| Illustration 84 g06345644

336~GC: $6800~kg\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, $6.5~m\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, $3.9~m\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick with Aux, $600~mm\,$ (23.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)		1	500 60		:000 120		15 00 180		:000 240		'500 300		9000 360	4	-F-3	
3	p. 4	4				10	Œ	10	æ	Į,			Ġ	120		(mm) (inch)
9000														4750	4750	7350
360														10600	10600	290
7500										6400	. 6400			4400	- 4400	8540
300										14050	14050			9750	9750	340
6000										* 6650	. 6650	. 5750	5550	4300	4300	9340
240										14500	14500	11050	11050	9400	• 9400	370
4500								* #150	* 8150	* 7250	1250	. 6750	5450	4300	4300	9840
180								17600	17600	15750	15750	14750	11700	9400	9400	390
3000						* 12750	• 12750	9650	9650	* 8058	7000	* 7H50	5390	4400	4400	10100
120						• 27450	• 27450	. 50800	• 20800	* 17450	15100	15600	11350	9700	9650	490
1500						15400	13950	11050	9200	. 8828	6700	* 7600	5100	4700	4250	10130
6.0						* 33150	29850	. 53900	19800	19208	14400	16500	11000	10300	9400	400
ů				6750	4 6750	16750	13200	12050	8800	9500	6450	7900	5000	5100	4350	9930
				15400	15400	* 36200	28450	• 26050	18900	* 20550	13850	16950	10700	11250	9500	390
-1500		* 7100	* 7100	10650	10650	* 16900	13000	12400	8550	• 9750	6300	7800	4900	• 5850	4600	9490
-60		15800	- 15800	* 24100	* 24100	* 36650	27900	. 56900	18450	* 21050	13550	16300	10550	12900	10050	3#0
-3000		11300	• 11300	15650	* 15650	* 16200	13000	12100	8500	* 9458	6250			* 7100	5100	8770
-120		* 25300	• 25300	* 35350	* 35350	* 35000	27950	* 26150	18350	* 20350	13500			19700	11300	350
-4500		16300	• 16300	19950	19950	14400	13200	10900	8650	* 8150	6400			• 7750	6200	7690
-180		* 36600	- 36600	43050	43050	- 21000	28400	. 53350	18650	17100	13850			17100	13850	300
-6000						10900	10900	* 7700	* 7700					. 7550	* 7550	6060
-240						• 22900	• 22900							16450	• 16450	240

Illustration 85 g06345649

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 600 mm $\,$ (23.6 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

(mm) (inch)		1500 60		:000 120	l	1500 180		6000 240		7500 300		9000 360	4	- F-3	
7; 4	B	C#	1		Ę6	c#I	0	¢.	Ð	C F	0	C I	10	ď	(mm) (inch)
9000													4750	4750	7350
360													10600	* 10600	290
7500									6400	6400			4400	4400	8540
300									14050	14050			9750	9750	340
6000		Ì							• 6650	. 6650	5750	5700	4300	4300	9340
240									14500	14500	11050	* 11050	9400	9400	370
4500							* 8150	* #150	- 7250	. 7250	6750	5600	4300	* 4300	9840
180							* 17600	17600	15750	15750	14750	12000	9400	* 9400	390
3000					• 12750	12750	* 9650	9650	* 8050	7150	* 7150	5400	4400	* 4400	10100
120					* 27450	* 27450	* 20800	* 20800	• 17450	15450	15600	11650	9700	• 9700	400
1900					- 15400	14150	* 11050	9400	. \$850	6850	* 7600	5250	4790	4400	10130
60					* 33150	30500	* 23900	20250	19200	14750	16500	11300	10300	9650	400
0			6750	• 675¢	16750	13550	* 1205e	9000	9500	6600	7900	5100	· 5100	4450	9930
0			15400	15400	* 36200	29150	* 26050	19400	* 20550	14200	17100	11000	11250	9750	390
-1500	• 7100	* 7100	10650	10650	• 16900	13300	* 12400	8800	9750	6450	• 7900	5050	• 5850	4700	9490
-60	15800	15800	* 24100	* 24100	* 36650	28600	* 26900	18900	* 21050	13900	17100	10850	12900	10350	380
-3000	11300	11300	15650	15650	* 16200	13300	* 12100	8750	9450	6450			7100	5250	\$770
-120	• 25300	. 25300	. 35350	* 35350	* 35000	28650	* 26150	18800	• 20350	13850	ĺ	l	15700	11600	350
-4500	16300	16300	19950	19950	14400	13950	10900	8850	* 8150	6550			17750	6350	7690
-180	• 36600	* 36600	43050	43050	• 31000	29100	* 23350	19100	17100	14200		l	17100	14200	300
-6000					10900	10900	* 7700	. 7700					. 7550	* 7550	6060
-240					* 22900	* 22900							16450	16450	240

| Illustration 86 | g06345655

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 800 mm $\,$ (31.5 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	1	500 60		120		1500 180		5000 240		'500 300		9000 360	<u>.</u>	<u>,</u> 63	
7 -		4		Œ.	10	Œ,	10	æ	4				10	Œ.	(mm) (inch)
9000													• 4750	4750	7350
360													* 10600	10600	290
7500									- 6400	6400			• 4400	4400	8540
300									14050	14050			• 9750	9750	340
6000									• 6650	. 6650	• 5750	5050	• 4300	4300	9340
240									• 14500	14500	11050	10800	• 9400	9400	370
4500							* 8150	* 8150	• 7250	6650	• 6750	4950	• 4300	4200	9840
180							17600	17600	• 15750	14350	14750	10600	• 9400	9300	390
3000					• 12750	12750	9650	8850	* 8050	6350	* 7150	4800	• 4400	3950	10100
120					* 27450	27450	. 50800	19050	17450	13650	15600	10250	9700	8700	400
1500					• 15400	12350	11050	8300	* 8850	6050	* 7600	4600	• 4700	3850	10130
60					* 33150	26650	. 53900	17850	19200	13000	16500	9900	10300	8450	400
0			• 6750	• 6750	• 16750	11750	12050	7900	• 9500	5800	7700	4500	• 5100	3900	9930
۰			15400	• 15400	• 36200	25300	. 56020	16950	• 20550	12450	16600	9600	11250	8550	390
-1500	* 7100	* 7100	10650	* 10650	* 16900	11550	* 12400	7650	9750	5650	7650	4400	• 5850	4100	9490
-60	15800	15800	• 24100	- 24100	* 36650	24800	. 56900	16500	- 21050	12150	16450	9500	12900	9050	380
-3000	11300	11300	15650	* 15650	* 16200	11550	12100	7600	9450	5600			* 7100	4600	8770
-120	• 25300	• 25300	• 35350	* 35350	- 35000	24850	* 26150	16400	• 20350	12100			• 15700	10150	350
-4500	• 16300	16300	19950	• 19950	• 14400	11750	10900	7750	* 8150	5750			• 7750	5600	7690
-180	• 36600	. 36600	43050	• 43050	* 31000	25300	• 23350	16700	• 17100	12450			• 17100	12450	300
-6000					* 10900	10900	* 7700	* 7700					* 7550	• 7550	6060
-240					• 22900	. 55900							16450	16450	240

Illustration 87 g06347017

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 600 mm $\,$ (23.6 inch) track shoes (LN).

(mm) (inch)		1500 60		:000 120		150 0 180		5000 240		7500 200		360	£	<u>.</u>	
'		(F)	4	œ.	P	(F)	P	(F)		(F)	4		Į.	ď	(mm) (inch)
9000													4750	4750	7390
360								ļ					10600	10600	290
7500									* 6400	• 6400			4400	* 4400	8540
300	1								14050	14050		l	9750	9750	340
6000									. 6650	. 6650	- 5750	5100	4300	4300	9340
240	1								14500	14500	11050	10900	9400	9400	370
4500							* 8150	* 8150	* 7250	6700	• 6750	5000	• 4300	4250	9840
180	1	ļ					* 17600	17600	15750	14450	14750	10700	9400	9400	390
2000					12750	12750	* 4650	2900	* 2050	6400	* 7150	4850	4400	4000	10100
120	1	ļ			* 27450	* 27450	* 20800	19200	17450	13800	15600	10350	9700	8800	400
1500					* 15400	12450	11050	8350	* 8850	6100	* 7600	4650	4700	3900	1013-0
60	1				* 33450	26900	* 23900	18000	19200	13100	16500	10000	* 10300	8550	400
٥			6750	6750	16750	11850	12050	7950	* 9500	5850	7800	4500	5100	3950	9930
٥	1		15400	15400	* 36200	25550	* 24050	17150	* 20550	12600	16750	9700	11250	8650	390
-1500	* 710	* 7100	10650	10650	* 16900	11650	12400	7750	9750	5700	7700	4450	- 5850	4150	9490
-60	1580	15800	. 24100	. 24100	* 36650	25050	* 26900	16650	* 21050	12300	16600	9600	* 12900	9150	380
-3000	1130	11300	• 15650	15650	* 16200	11650	12100	7700	• 9450	5700			* 7100	4650	8770
-120	. 2530	25300	. 38380	. 38380	. 35000	25050	* 26150	16550	. 20350	12250			15700	10250	390
-4500	1630	16300	19950	19950	14400	11850	* 10900	7800	* 8150	5800			* 7750	5650	7690
-180	3660	. 36600	43050	43050	* 31000	25500	* 23350	16850	17100	12600			17100	12550	300
-6000	1				10900	10900	* 7790	* 7700					* 7550	* 7550	6060
-240					. 22900	. 22900							16450	16450	240

Illustration 88 g06347020

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 700 mm $\,$ (27.5 inch) track shoes (LN).

	(mm) (inch)			1500 60			:000 120		1500 180		5000 240	l '	1500 300		340	£	<u>.</u>	
	7	7 : 1	4	CF-]				æ	140	ďP	1		140	æ	10	[]	(mm) (inch)
Н	90 00	1			t											* 4750	4750	7350
	360	- 1														10600	10600	290
Г	7500	1			1							• 6400	6400			* 4400	4400	*540
	300											14050	14050			9750	9750	340
Г	6000	Т			Т							* 6650	* 6650	* 5750	5150	* 4300	4300	9340
	240											14500	14500	• 11050	11000	9400	9400	370
	4500	Т			Т					* 8150	8156	• 7250	6800	• 6750	5050	* 4300	4300	9840
	180				1					* 17600	17600	• 15750	14600	14750	10800	9400	9400	390
	3000	- 1						* 12750	* 12750	* 9650	9000	* \$050	6450	* 7150	4900	* 4400	4050	10100
L	120	ㅗ			1			* 27450	* 27450	* 20800	19400	* 17450	13900	* 15600	10500	* 9700	8900	400
	1500	- 1						* 15400	12600	* 11050	\$450	* #850	6150	* 7600	4700	4700	3950	10130
_	6.0	丄			\perp			* 33150	27150	* 23900	18200	19200	13250	* 16500	10100	* 10300	8650	400
İ	0	- 1			ŀ	6750	- 6750	* 16750	12000	* 12050	2050	• 9500	5900	7900	4600	* 5100	3950	9930
	0				1	15400	15400	- 36200	25800	* 26050	17300	. 50220	12750	16950	9850	11250	8750	390
İ	-1500	1	7100	* 710	۰[۰	10650	10650	16900	11750	* 12400	7850	9750	5750	7800	4500	* 5850	4200	9490
	-60		15800	• 1580	0 .	24100	* 24100	* 36650	25300	* 26900	16850	* 21050	12400	16800	9700	12900	9250	3*0
	-3000	Ŀ	11300	1130	۰	15650	* 156.50	* 16200	11800	* 12100	7800	• 9450	5750			* 7100	4700	\$770
	-120	<u></u>	25300	2530	0 .	35350	* 35350	- 35000	25350	* 26190	16750	• 20350	12350			* 15700	10350	350
	-45 00	ı٠	16200	1630	0 .	19950	- 19950	14400	12000	* 10900	7900	* 8150	5900			* 7750	5700	7690
	-180	Ŀ	36600	. 3660	۰.	43050	* 43050	* 31000	25800	* 23390	17050	17100	12700			17100	12700	300
	-6000							10900	10900	7700	* 7700					* 7550	* 7550	6060
	-240							- 22900	* 22900							* 16450	16450	240

Illustration 89 g06347218

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 600 mm $\,$ (23.6 inch) track shoes (LN).

(mm) (in ch)	1	1500 60		:000 120		150e 180		000 240		7500 300		1000 360		-F-Z	
	4				1	Œ	1	æ					1	Œ.	(mm) (in ch)
9000													4750	4750	7350
360													10600	10600	290
75 00	1								• 6400	. 6400			4400	- 4400	8540
300									14050	14050			9750	9759	340
5000									* 6650	. 6650	• 5750	5150	4300	4300	9340
240									14500	14500	11050	10950	9400	9400	370
4500							* 8150	* 8150	• 7250	6750	• 6750	5050	4300	* 4300	9840
189		ļ					17600	17690	• 15750	14550	14750	10800	9400	9400	390
3000					12750	12750	• 4650	#950	* #050	6450	* 7150	4850	4400	4000	10100
120		ļ			* 27450	. 27450	* 20800	19350	17450	13900	15600	10450	9700	8850	400
1500					15400	12950	11050	\$400	* #850	6150	* T600	4700	4700	3900	10130
60					1 33150	27100	* 23900	18150	19200	13250	16500	10100	10300	8600	400
۰			6750	6750	16750	11950	12050	*000	* 4500	5900	7850	4550	5100	3450	9930
0			* 15400	15400	* 36200	25750	* 26050	17250	* 20550	12700	16900	9800	11250	8700	390
-1500	* 7100	* 7100	10650	10650	16900	11750	12400	7800	* 9750	5750	7800	4500	. 5850	4200	9490
-6.0	15800	15800	24100	* 24100	* 36650	25250	* 26900	16800	* 21050	12400	16750	9650	* 12900	9200	380
-3000	11300	11300	* 15650	* 15650	16200	11750	* 12100	7750	* 9450	5750			* 7100	4700	8770
-120	. 25300	. 58300	. 38380	. 38380	. 35000	25250	* 26150	16700	* 20350	12350			19700	10250	350
-4500	16300	. 16300	19950	19950	14400	11950	10900	7900	* 8150	5850			* 7750	5700	7690
-180	. 36600	. 36600	43050	43050	* 31000	25700	* 23350	17000	17100	12700			17100	12650	300
-6000					10900	10900	* 7700	. 7790					* 7550	* 7550	6060
-240					22900	. 22900							16450	16450	240

Illustration 90 g06347228

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.9 m $\,$ (12 ft 10 inch) stick, 600 mm $\,$ (23.6 inch) heavy-duty track shoes (LN).

Product Information Section Lifting Capacities

86

3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) Stick

(mm)	1	500	3	000	4	500	6	000	7	500	9	000	K —		
(inch)		60		120		180		240		300	:	360	/6		
	X 1		T 1		T 1	50%	X 1	200	X 11		T 1		— 1		(mm)
	<u>↓</u> pû,		Ip0g		<u>↓</u> ₽ ⁰ ¶		<u> </u>		Ĩ₽ٶ		_ <u>I</u> բՈղ		ige∯ng		(inch)
<u></u>	U	ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	U		U		U		U		T	المراجية	TU	ا حول	
7500									* 6850	* 6850			* 5750	* 5750	7700
300													* 12700	* 12700	300
6000									* 7500	7350			* 5550	* 5550	8580
240									* 16350	15800			* 12250	* 12250	340
4500					* 11450	* 11450	* 9200	* 9200	* 8050	7150	* 6600	5350	* 5600	5250	9130
180							* 19850	* 19850	* 17450	15400			* 12350	11550	360
3000					* 14450	14350	* 10600	9500	* 8750	6900	7050	5250	* 5850	4900	9410
120					* 31050	30950	* 22950	20450	* 19050	14800	15200	11250	* 12800	10750	370
1500					* 16650	13450	* 11900	9000	9050	6650	6950	5100	* 6250	4750	9440
60					* 35900	29050	* 25700	19450	19450	14250	14900	11000	* 13700	10500	380
0					* 17350	13100	12200	8700	8850	6450	6850	5000	6600	4850	9220
0					* 37600	28200	26250	18800	19000	13850	14700	10800	14550	10700	370
-1500			* 11700	* 11700	* 17000	13050	12050	8600	8750	6350			7100	5200	8750
-60			* 26500	* 26500	* 36850	28000	25950	18500	18800	13700			15650	11450	350
-3000			* 18500	* 18500	* 15750	13150	* 12000	8650	8800	6400			8100	5950	7960
-120			* 41900	* 41900	* 34150	28250	* 25900	18600	18950	13800			18000	13150	320
-4500			* 17700	* 17700	* 13350	* 13350	* 10100	8850					* 8500	7550	6750
-180			* 38150	* 38150	* 28650	* 28650	* 21500	19050					* 18700	16950	270

Illustration 91 g0629767

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2~m (10 ft 6 inch) stick, 800~mm (31.5 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	 500 60		3000 120		500 180	-	000 240		'500 300		1000 360		ĬĀ	
														(mm) (inch)
7500								* 6850	* 6850			* 5750	* 5750	7700
300												* 12700	* 12700	300
6000								* 7500	7250			* 5550	* 5550	8580
240								* 16350	15600			* 12250	* 12250	340
4500				* 11450	* 11450	* 9200	* 9200	* 8050	7050	* 6600	5300	* 5600	5150	9130
180						* 19850	* 19850	* 17450	15150			* 12350	11400	360
3000				* 14450	14150	* 10600	9350	* 8750	6800	6950	5150	* 5850	4800	9410
120				* 31050	30500	* 22950	20150	* 19050	14600	14950	11050	* 12800	10600	370
1500				* 16650	13250	* 11900	8900	8900	6500	6800	5050	* 6250	4700	9440
60				* 35900	28600	* 25700	19150	19150	14050	14650	10800	* 13700	10300	380
0				* 17350	12900	12000	8600	8700	6350	6750	4950	6500	4800	9220
0				* 37600	27750	25850	18500	18700	13650	14500	10600	14300	10500	370
-1500		* 11700	* 11700	* 17000	12850	11850	8450	8600	6250			7000	5100	8750
-60		* 26500	* 26500	* 36850	27550	25550	18200	18500	13450			15400	11250	350
-3000		* 18500	* 18500	* 15750	12950	11900	8500	8650	6300			8000	5850	7960
-120		* 41900	* 41900	* 34150	27800	25600	18300	18650	13550			17700	12900	320
-4500		* 17700	* 17700	* 13350	13200	* 10100	8700					* 8500	7450	6750
-180		* 38150	* 38150	* 28650	28450	* 21500	18750					* 18700	16650	270

Illustration 92 g06297683

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2~m (10 ft 6 inch) stick, 700 mm (27.6 inch) track shoes.

M0110641-02

Product Information 9

(mm) (inch)	1500 60		000 120		500 180		000 240		7500 300		1000 360			
														(mm) (inch)
7500								* 6850	* 6850			* 5750	* 5750	7700
300												* 12700	* 12700	300
6000								* 7500	7200			* 5550	* 5550	8580
240								* 16350	15450			* 12250	* 12250	340
4500				* 11450	* 11450	* 9200	* 9200	* 8050	7000	* 6600	5250	* 5600	5100	9130
180						* 19850	* 19850	* 17450	15050			* 12350	11300	360
3000				* 14450	14050	* 10600	9300	* 8750	6700	6900	5100	* 5850	4750	9410
120				* 31050	30300	* 22950	20000	* 19050	14450	14800	11000	* 12800	10500	370
1500				* 16650	13150	* 11900	8800	8800	6450	6750	5000	* 6250	4650	9440
60				* 35900	28350	* 25700	19000	19000	13900	14550	10700	* 13700	10200	380
0				* 17350	12800	11900	8500	8600	6300	6650	4900	6450	4750	9220
0				* 37600	27500	25600	18350	18550	13500	14350	10550	14200	10400	370
-1500		* 11700	* 11700	* 17000	12700	11750	8400	8550	6200			6900	5050	8750
-60		* 26500	* 26500	* 36850	27350	25300	18050	18350	13350			15250	11150	350
-3000		* 18500	* 18500	* 15750	12800	11800	8400	8550	6250			7900	5800	7960
-120		* 41900	* 41900	* 34150	27550	25400	18150	18450	13450			17550	12800	320
-4500		* 17700	* 17700	* 13350	13100	* 10100	8600					* 8500	7400	6750
-180		* 38150	* 38150	* 28650	28200	* 21500	18600					* 18700	16550	270

Illustration 93 g06297686

 $336~\mathrm{GC}$: $6800~\mathrm{kg}$ (14991 lb) counterweight, $6.5~\mathrm{m}$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, $3.2~\mathrm{m}$ (10 ft 6 inch) stick, $600~\mathrm{mm}$ (23.6 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	1	1500 60		:000 120		1500 180		.000 240		7500 300)000 360	4	<u>.</u>	
7 -	Į,				II.	Œ.	II.	ď	Į,	ď	Į,	C.	140	윤	(mm) (inch)
7500									• 6850	• 6850			• 5750	• 5750	7700
300													12700	12700	300
6000									* 7500	* 7500			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240									• 16350	16250			12250	12250	340
4500					11450	* 11450	• 9200	• 9200	* 8050	7350	. 6600	5500	• 5600	5400	9130
180							19850	19850	• 17450	15800			12350	11900	360
3000					14450	* 14450	* 10600	9750	* 8750	7100	• 7750	5400	• 5850	5050	9410
120					* 31050	* 31050	• 22950	21050	• 19050	15250	16900	11600	12800	11100	370
1500					* 16650	13850	* 11900	9300	• 9500	6800	* \$100	5250	• 6250	4900	9440
60					* 35900	29850	• 25700	20000	• 20550	14700	• 17550	11350	13700	10800	380
0					17350	13500	* 12600	9000	• 9950	6650	\$100	5200	• 6950	5000	9220
0					* 37600	29050	• 27300	19350	• 21550	14300	17400	11150	15250	11000	370
-1500			* 11700	11700	17000	13400	• 12700	8850	• 9950	6550			* 8100	5350	8750
-60			• 26500	- 26500	• 36850	28850	• 27500	19100	• 21550	14100			17900	11800	350
-3000			* 18500	18500	• 15750	13500	• 12000	8900	• 9300	6600			* \$500	6100	7960
-120			• 41900	41900	• 34150	29100	• 25900	19150	19900	14200			18650	13550	320
-4500			* 17700	17700	* 13350	* 13350	10100	9100					* \$500	7800	6750
-180			* 38150	* 38150	• 28650	- 28650	• 21500	19650					18700	17450	270

| Illustration 94 g06346895

336~GC: 6800~kg~(14991~lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~(21~ft~4~inch) reach boom, 3.2~m~(10~ft~6~inch) stick, 850~mm~(33.5~inch) track shoes (LC).

88 Product Information Section Lifting Capacities

(mm) (inch)		1500 60		:000 120		1500 180		5000 240		7500 300	· ·	9000 360	<u> </u>	<u>,</u> 62	
	44 9			铂	10	Œ,	1	Œ.					P	<u>.e.</u>	(mm) (inch)
7500									• 6850	• 6850			- 5750	• 5750	7700
300													• 12700	12700	300
6000									• 7500	7350			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240									• 16350	15800			• 12250	12250	340
4500					11450	11450	• 9200	9200	* 8050	7150	* 6600	5350	- 5600	5200	9130
180							19850	19850	17450	15350			• 12350	11550	360
3000					14450	14350	10600	9500	* 8750	6850	* 7750	5250	- 5850	4900	9410
120					* 31050	30900	* 22950	20450	19050	14800	16900	11250	• 12800	10750	370
1500					16650	13450	11900	9000	• 9500	6600	7950	5100	• 6250	4750	9440
60					* 35900	29000	* 25700	19400	* 20550	14250	17050	10950	* 13700	10450	380
0					17350	13100	• 12600	8700	• 9950	6450	7850	5000	• 6950	4850	9220
0					* 37600	28150	* 27300	18750	* 21550	13850	16850	10800	* 15250	10650	370
-1500			• 11700	11700	17000	13000	12700	8600	• 9950	6350			* 8100	5200	8750
-60			• 26500	* 26500	* 36850	27950	* 27500	18500	• 21550	13650			17900	11450	350
-3000			18500	18500	15750	13100	12000	8600	9300	6400			* 8500	5950	7960
-120			11900	41900	* 34150	28200	• 25900	18550	19900	13750			18650	13100	320
-4500			17700	17700	13350	* 13350	10100	8800					* \$500	7550	6750
-180			* 38150	* 38150	* 28650	* 28650	• 21500	19050					• 1 8700	16900	270

Illustration 95 g06346906

336~GC: 6800~kg (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2~m (10 ft 6 inch) stick, 600~mm (23.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)		500 60		:000 120		1500 180		500 0 240		7500 300		1000 360		<u>.</u>	
1 mg		P		<u>1</u>			P							1	(mm) (inch)
7500									* 6850	• 6850			* 5750	• 5750	7700
300													* 12700	12700	300
6000									* 7500	7400			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240									16350	15900			* 12250	* 12250	340
4500					* 11450	11450	• 9200	* 9200	* 8050	7200	• 6600	5400	* 5600	5250	9130
180							• 19850	19850	17450	15500			12350	11650	360
3000					14450	14450	* 10600	9550	* 8750	6950	* 7750	5300	* 5850	4950	9410
120					* 31050	* 31050	- 22950	20600	19050	14950	16900	11350	* 12800	10850	370
1500					* 16650	13550	* 11900	9100	• 9500	6700	8000	5150	* 6250	4800	9440
60					* 35900	29250	* 25700	19600	* 20550	14400	17250	11100	13700	10600	380
0					• 17350	13200	• 12600	8800	9950	6500	7900	5050	• 6950	4900	9220
0					• 37600	28400	• 27300	18950	• 21550	13950	17050	10900	15250	10750	370
-1500			• 11700	11700	17000	13150	• 12700	8650	• 9950	6400			* 8100	5250	8750
-60	l		- 26500	. 26500	* 36850	20250	- 27500	18650	* 21550	13800			17900	11550	350
-3000			* 18500	18500	15750	13250	• 12000	8700	• 9300	6450			* 8500	6000	7960
-120	l		41900	41900	* 34150	28450	• 25900	18750	19900	13900			* 18650	13250	320
-4500	1		• 17700	17700	13350	• 1 3350	• 10100	8900					* 8500	7650	6750
-180			• 38 1 50	38150	• 28650	• 28650	• 21500	19200					18700	17050	270

Illustration 96 g06346928

336~GC: 6800~kg~(14991~lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~(21~ft~4~inch) reach boom, 3.2~m~(10~ft~6~inch) stick, 700~mm~(27.6~inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)	1	500 60		:000 120		1500 180		5000 240		7500 300	l	9000 360	4	<u>_</u>	
1	4					[]	1	4	P			æ	1	<u>.</u>	(mm) (inch)
7500	i –								• 6850	• 6850			• 5750	• 5750	7700
300	l												• 12700	12700	300
6000									• 7500	* 7500			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240									• 16350	16150			• 12250	12250	340
4500					* 11450	11450	• 9200	9200	* 8050	7300	. 6600	5500	• 5600	5350	9130
180							19850	19850	* 17450	15750			12350	11850	360
3000					* 14450	14450	10600	9700	* 8750	7050	* 7750	5350	* 5850	5000	9410
120	<u> </u>				• 31050	* 31050	• 22950	20900	19050	15150	16900	11550	12800	11050	370
1500					* 16650	13800	11900	9250	• 9500	6800	* 8100	5250	6250	4900	9440
60					* 35900	29700	* 25700	19900	* 20550	14600	17550	11250	13700	10750	380
0	l				* 17350	13400	12600	8950	• 9950	6600	8050	5150	• 6950	5000	9220
0					• 37600	28900	• 27300	19250	• 21550	14200	17350	11100	• 15250	10950	370
-1500	i		11700	11700	* 17000	13350	12700	8800	• 9950	6500			* 8100	5350	8750
-60			* 26500	• 26500	* 36850	28700	• 27500	19000	• 21550	14050			17900	11750	350
-3000			18500	18500	* 15750	13450	12000	8850	• 9300	6550			* 8500	6100	7960
-120	<u> </u>		41900	* 41900	* 34150	28950	• 25900	19050	19900	14150			18650	13450	320
-4500			17700	17700	* 13350	13350	10100	9050					* 8500	7750	6750
-180			* 38150	* 38150	• 28650	• 28650	• 21500	19550					18700	17350	270

Illustration 97 g06346940

336~GC: 6800~kg~(14991~lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~(21~ft~4~inch) reach boom, 3.2~m~(10~ft~6~inch) stick, 800~mm~(31.5~inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (insh)	500 60		:000 120		1500 180		3000 240		7500 300	l	9000 360	4	<u>-</u> 85	
4			- - -		₽.	4	d P	16		4			4	(mm) (inch)
7500								6850	• 6850			• 5750	• 5750	7700
300												* 12700	12700	300
6000								* 7500	* 7500			* 5550	• 5550	8580
240								• 16350	16050			12250	• 12250	340
4500				11450	11450	9200	• 9200	* 8050	7250	. 6600	5450	* 5600	5350	9130
180						* 19850	19850	* 17450	15650			• 12350	11750	360
3000				14450	• 14450	* 10600	9650	* 8750	7000	• 7750	5350	* 5850	5000	9410
120				* 31050	* 31050	- 22950	20800	• 19050	15100	16900	11450	12800	10950	370
1500				16650	13700	• 11900	9200	9500	6750	* 8100	5200	• 6250	4850	9440
60				* 35900	29550	• 25700	19800	20550	14550	17450	11200	13700	10700	380
0				17350	13350	• 12600	8900	9950	6550	8000	5100	• 6950	4950	9220
۰				* 37600	28700	* 27300	19150	* 21550	14100	17250	11000	* 15250	10900	370
-1500		• 11700	11700	• 17000	13250	• 12700	8750	• 9950	6450			* 8100	5300	8750
-60		• 26500	• 26500	* 36850	28500	• 27500	18850	• 21550	13950			17900	11650	350
-3000		• 18500	* 18500	• 15750	13350	• 12000	8800	• 9300	6500			* 8500	6050	7960
-120		41900	41900	• 34150	28750	• 25900	13950	19900	14050			18650	13400	320
-4500		* 17700	17700	• 13350	* 13350	* 10100	9000					* 8500	7700	6750
-180		* 38150	* 38150	• 28650	* 28650	- 21500	19400					* 18700	17250	270

Illustration 98 g06346942

336~GC: 6800~kg~(14991~lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~(21~ft~4~inch) reach boom, 3.2~m~(10~ft~6~inch) stick, 600~mm~(23.6~inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)	1500 60	·	:000 120		1500 180		000 240		7500 300	l	9000 360	4	_F~_	
7	Œ			10	æ	₽	æ	4			Œ	10	윤	(mm) (inch)
7500								• 6850	• 6850			• 5750	• 5750	7700
300												12700	* 12700	300
6000								* 7500	7450			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240								* 16350	16050			12250	12250	340
4500				11450	• 11450	• 9200	• 9200	* 8050	7250	. 6600	5450	• 5600	5300	9130
180						19850	• 1 9850	17450	15600			12350	11750	360
3000				14450	14450	10600	9650	* 8750	7000	* 7750	5300	• 5850	4950	9410
120				* 31050	* 31050	* 22950	20750	19050	15050	16900	11450	12800	10950	370
1500				16650	13700	11900	9150	9500	6750	8100	5200	• 6250	4850	9440
60				* 35900	29450	* 25700	19750	* 20550	14500	17400	11150	13700	10650	380
0				17350	13300	12600	8850	• 9950	6550	8000	5100	• 6950	4950	9220
0				* 37600	28600	* 27300	19100	* 21550	14100	17200	11000	15250	10850	370
-1500		11700	• 11700	17000	13250	* 12700	8750	• 9950	6450			* 8100	5300	\$750
-60		• 26500	* 26500	* 36850	28450	* 27500	18800	* 21550	13900			17900	11650	350
-3000		18500	* 18500	15750	13350	* 12000	8750	9300	6500			* \$500	6050	7960
-120		41900	* 41900	* 34150	28700	* 25900	18900	19900	14000			18650	13350	320
-4500		17700	• 17700	13350	13350	10100	8950					* 8500	7700	6750
-180		* 38150	* 38150	* 28650	* 28650	* 21500	19350					18700	17200	270

Illustration 99 g06346947

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2~m (10 ft 6 inch) stick, 600~mm (23.6 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

(mm) (insh)			500 60		:000 120		1500 180		3000 240		'500 300		9000 360	4	<u>-</u>	
`;	, 1	Į,	Œ	1	_ - -	0	æ			Ð	d l	4				(mm) (insh)
7500										* 6850	* 6850			• 5750	• 5750	7700
300	┸													12700	12700	300
6000										* 7500	* 7500			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240										* 16350	• 16350			12250	• 12250	340
4500	1					11450	* 11450	. 9200	• 9200	* 8050	7400	. 6600	5550	5600	5450	9130
180								19850	19850	• 17450	15950			12350	12000	360
3000	- 1					14450	• 14450	10600	9850	* 8750	7150	* 7750	5450	• 5850	5100	9410
120	┸					* 31050	* 31050	* 22950	21200	* 19050	15400	* 16900	11700	12800	11200	370
1500	-1					16650	14000	11900	9400	* 9500	6900	* 8100	5350	• 6250	4950	9440
60						* 35900	30150	* 25700	20200	• 20550	14850	17550	11450	13700	10950	380
0						17350	13600	12600	9050	• 9950	6700	8200	5250	6950	5050	9220
0						* 37600	29300	• 27300	19550	• 21550	14450	17400	11250	15250	11150	370
-1500	Т			11700	11700	* 17000	13550	* 12700	8950	• 9950	6600			* 8100	5400	8750
-60				* 26500	* 26500	* 36850	29150	• 27500	19250	* 21550	14250	1		17900	11950	350
-3000	T			18500	18500	• 15750	13650	• 12000	9000	• 9300	6650			* 8500	6200	7960
-120	-			41900	41900	* 34150	29350	- 25900	19350	• 19900	14350			18650	13700	320
-4500	1			17700	17700	* 13350	• 13350	* 10100	9200					* 8500	7850	6750
-180				* 38150	* 38150	* 28650	* 28650	* 21500	19850					18700	17600	270

Illustration 100 g06346954

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2~m (10 ft 6 inch) stick, 800~mm (31.5 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

Product Information Section Lifting Capacities

91

3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) Stick with Auxiliary Tool Control System

															-
(mm)	1	500	3	000	4	500	6	000	7	500	9	000	K —		
(inch)		60		120		180		240	(300		360			
	¥-1		Ŧ		¥ 11		¥ 1		* 1		Ŧ-1		* 1		(mm)
	<u> </u>		Ipûn		± ₽ Ū¶		<u> </u>		Ĩ₽ٶ		Į p Ūq		<u>Հ</u> բՈղ		(inch)
	U		U		U		U		U	_	U		U		
7500									* 6800	* 6800			* 5700	* 5700	7700
300													* 12600	* 12600	300
6000									* 7400	7350			* 5550	* 5550	8580
240									* 16150	15800			* 12200	* 12200	340
4500					* 11300	* 11300	* 9050	* 9050	* 7950	7150	* 6550	5300	* 5550	5200	9130
180							* 19650	* 19650	* 17250	15350			* 12250	11450	360
3000					* 14300	* 14300	* 10500	9450	* 8650	6850	7050	5200	* 5800	4850	9410
120					* 30700	* 30700	* 22650	20400	* 18800	14750	15150	11150	* 12700	10650	370
1500					* 16450	13400	* 11750	8950	9000	6600	6900	5050	* 6200	4700	9440
60					* 35450	28900	* 25350	19350	19400	14150	14850	10850	* 13650	10350	380
0					* 17150	13000	12150	8650	8800	6400	6800	4950	6550	4800	9220
0					* 37100	28000	26150	18650	18950	13750	14650	10700	14450	10550	370
-1500			* 11700	* 11700	* 16800	12950	12000	8500	8700	6300			7050	5150	8750
-60			* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	27800	25850	18350	18700	13550			15550	11300	350
-3000			* 18450	* 18450	* 15550	13050	* 11800	8550	8750	6350			8100	5900	7960
-120			* 41850	* 41850	* 33650	28050	* 25550	18400	18850	13650			17900	13000	320
-4500			* 17450	* 17450	* 13150	* 13150	* 9950	8750					* 8350	7500	6750
-180			* 37500	* 37500	* 28200	* 28200	* 21100	18900					* 18400	16800	270

Illustration 101 g06297810

336~GC:6800~kg~(14991~lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~(21~ft~4~inch) reach boom, 3.2~m~(10~ft~6~inch) stick with Auxiliary, 800~mm~(31.5~inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	 500 60		000 120		500 180	-	000 240		'500 300		1000 360			
No Kin														(mm) (inch)
7500								* 6800	* 6800			* 5700	* 5700	7700
300												* 12600	* 12600	300
6000								* 7400	7250			* 5550	* 5550	8580
240								* 16150	15550			* 12200	* 12200	340
4500				* 11300	* 11300	* 9050	* 9050	* 7950	7050	* 6550	5250	* 5550	5100	9130
180						* 19650	* 19650	* 17250	15100			* 12250	11300	360
3000				* 14300	14100	* 10500	9350	* 8650	6750	6950	5100	* 5800	4750	9410
120				* 30700	30500	* 22650	20100	* 18800	14500	14900	10950	* 12700	10500	370
1500				* 16450	13200	* 11750	8850	8850	6500	6800	5000	* 6200	4650	9440
60				* 35450	28450	* 25350	19050	19100	13950	14600	10700	* 13650	10200	380
0				* 17150	12800	11950	8500	8650	6300	6700	4900	6450	4700	9220
0				* 37100	27550	25750	18350	18650	13500	14400	10500	14200	10400	370
-1500		* 11700	* 11700	* 16800	12750	11800	8400	8550	6200			6950	5050	8750
-60		* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	27350	25400	18050	18400	13300			15300	11150	350
-3000		* 18450	* 18450	* 15550	12850	* 11800	8400	8600	6200			7950	5800	7960
-120		* 41850	* 41850	* 33650	27600	25500	18100	18550	13450			17600	12800	320
-4500		* 17450	* 17450	* 13150	* 13150	* 9950	8650					* 8350	7400	6750
-180		* 37500	* 37500	* 28200	* 28200	* 21100	18650					* 18400	16550	270

| Illustration 102 g06297818

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg~(14991~lb)$ counterweight, 6.5~m~(21~ft~4~inch) reach boom, 3.2~m~(10~ft~6~inch) stick with Auxiliary, 700~mm~(27.6~inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	500 60		000 120		500 180	-	000 240	100	'500 300		9000 360			
No Cis														(mm) (inch)
7500								* 6800	* 6800			* 5700	* 5700	7700
300												* 12600	* 12600	300
6000								* 7400	7200			* 5550	* 5550	8580
240								* 16150	15450			* 12200	* 12200	340
4500				* 11300	* 11300	* 9050	* 9050	* 7950	6950	* 6550	5200	* 5550	5050	9130
180						* 19650	* 19650	* 17250	15000			* 12250	11200	360
3000				* 14300	14000	* 10500	9250	* 8650	6700	6850	5050	* 5800	4700	9410
120				* 30700	30250	* 22650	19950	* 18800	14400	14750	10900	* 12700	10400	370
1500				* 16450	13100	* 11750	8750	8800	6400	6750	4950	* 6200	4600	9440
60				* 35450	28200	* 25350	18900	18900	13800	14450	10600	* 13650	10100	380
0				* 17150	12700	11850	8450	8600	6200	6600	4850	6400	4700	9220
0				* 37100	27300	25500	18200	18450	13400	14250	10400	14100	10300	370
-1500		* 11700	* 11700	* 16800	12600	11700	8300	8500	6150			6850	5000	8750
-60		* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	27150	25200	17900	18250	13200			15150	11000	350
-3000		* 18450	* 18450	* 15550	12750	11750	8350	8500	6150			7900	5750	7960
-120		* 41850	* 41850	* 33650	27350	25250	17950	18350	13300			17450	12650	320
-4500		* 17450	* 17450	* 13150	13050	* 9950	8550					* 8350	7350	6750
-180		* 37500	* 37500	* 28200	28050	* 21100	18450					* 18400	16400	270

Illustration 103 g06297823

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 600 mm (23.6 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (insk)	500 60		:000 120		1500 180		.000 2 4 0		'500 300		360		<u>.</u>	
11 - 12 - 12 - 12 - 12 - 12 - 12 - 12 -	和		砸				郚					140	<u> </u>	(mm) (inch)
7500								• 6800	. 6800			• 5700	• 5700	7700
300												* 12600	• 12600.	300
6000								* 7400	* 7400			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240								16150	* 16150			* 12200	• 12200	340
4500				• 11300	11300	9050	• 9050	• 7950	7350	• 6550	5500	• 5550	5350	9130
180						19650	* 19650	17250	15750			12250	11800	360
3000				14300	14300	10500	9750	* 8650	7050	• 7650	5350	• 5800	5000	9410
120				* 30700	* 30700	* 22650	20950	18800	15150	16650	11500	12700	11000	370
1500				16450	13800	11750	9250	9350	6800	* 7950	5200	• 6200	4850	9440
60				* 35450	29750	• 25350	19900	• 20250	14600	17300	11200	13650	10700	380
0				17150	13400	12450	8900	• 9800	6600	8050	5100	• 6900	4950	9220
0				* 37100	28850	* 26950	19200	• 21200	14150	17300	11000	15200	10900	370
-1500		11790	11700	16800	13300	* 12500	8800	9800	6500			* 8050	5300	\$750
-60		* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	28650	* 27100	18900	• 21250	13950			17800	11700	350
-3000		18450	* 18450	15550	13450	* 11800	8800	9150	6500			* \$350	6050	7960
-120		41850	* 41850	* 33650	28900	* 25550	19000	19550	14100			18350	13400	320
-4500		17450	17450	13150	13150	9950	9050					* 8350	7750	6750
-180		* 37500	* 37500	* 28200	• 28200	21100	19500					18400	17300	270

| Illustration 104 g06345689

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 850 mm (33.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)		500 60		:000 120		1500 180		000 240		7500 300		360	<u>.</u>	<u>_</u> e_;	
7)	F - F -			[]	1	(F)	1	æ					10	晉	(mm) (inch)
7500									* 6800	• 6800			• 5700	• 5700	7700
300													12600	• 12600	300
6000									* 7400	7350			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240									* 16150	15750			12200	• 12200	340
4500					* 11300	* 11300	9050	9050	* 7950	7100	6550	5300	• 5550	5200	9130
180							19650	* 19650	* 17250	15300			12250	11450	360
3000					14300	• 14300	10500	9450	* 8650	6850	* 7650	5200	• 5800	4850	9410
120					* 30700	* 30700	* 22650	20400	18890	14700	* 16650	11150	12700	10650	370
1500					16450	13400	11750	8950	* 9350	6550	7900	5050	• 6200	4700	9440
60					* 35450	28850	* 25350	19300	* 20250	14150	17000	10850	13650	10350	380
0					17150	13000	12450	8650	* 9800	6350	7800	4950	. 6900	4800	9220
0					* 37100	27950	* 26950	18600	* 21200	13700	16800	10650	15200	10550	370
-1500			11700	11700	* 16800	12900	12500	\$500	* 9800	6300			* 8050	5150	8750
-60			* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	27750	* 27100	18300	* 21250	13500			17800	11300	350
-3000			18450	18450	* 15550	13000	11800	8550	• 9150	6300			* 8350	5850	7960
-120			• 41850	41850	* 33650	28000	* 25550	18400	* 19550	13650			18350	13000	320
-4500			17450	17450	13150	* 13150	9950	8750					* 8350	7500	6750
-180			* 37500	* 37500	* 28200	* 28200	* 21100	18900					18400	16800	270

Illustration 105 g06345724

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 600 mm (23.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)	1	1500 60		120		1500 180		.000 240	· ·	7500 300		9000 360	Ī	_es_l	
-	1					县		县				Ġ.		Œ	(mm) (insh)
7500									* 6800	. 6800			• 5700		
300	!												* 12600		300
6000									* 7400	* 7400			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240									* 16150	15900			* 12200	12200	340
4500	1				11300	11300	9050	* 9050	* 7950	7200	* 6550	5350	• 5550	5250	9130
180							19650	* 19650	* 17250	15450			12250	11550	360
3000					14300	* 14300	* 10500	9550	* 8650	6900	* 7650	5250	• 5800	4900	9410
120					* 30700	* 30700	* 22650	20550	* 18800	14850	16650	11250	• 12700	10750	370
1500					* 16450	13500	11750	9050	* 9350	6650	* 7950	5100	• 6200	4750	9440
60	1				• 35450	29100	• 25350	19500	* 20250	14250	17200	10950	13650	10450	380
0					17150	13100	12450	\$700	• 9800	6450	7900	5000	• 6900	4850	9220
0					* 37100	28200	• 26950	18800	• 21200	13850	16950	10750	• 15200	10650	370
-1500	i i		11700	11700	* 16800	13050	• 12500	*600	. 9800	6350			. 8050	5200	8750
-60			* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	28000	• 27100	18500	• 21250	13650			17800	11400	350
-3000	Ì		18450	18450	15550	13150	11800	\$600	• 9150	6400			* 8350	5900	7960
-120			• 41850	• 41850	• 33650	28250	• 25550	18550	• 19550	13750			18350	13100	320
-4500	1		17450	17450	13150	13150	• 9950	*850					* 8350	7550	6750
-180			* 37500	* 37500	. 28200	* 28200	• 21100	19050					18400	16950	270

| Illustration 106 g06345786

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 700 mm (27.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)			500 60		:000 120		15 00 180	l '	.000 240	l '	7500 300		360 360	<u> </u>	<u>.</u> ₽-3.	
1		ð			<u> </u>	P	<u> </u>	4	码	P				H		(mm) (inch)
7500	1									* 6800	• 6800			• 5700	• 5700	7700
300	1													12600	12600	300
6000										* 7400	* 7400			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240										* 16150	16150			12200	12200	340
4500	П					11300	11300	9050	9050	• 7950	7300	• 6550	5450	• 5550	5300	9130
180								• 19650	19650	* 17250	15700			12250	11750	360
3000						14300	14300	10500	9700	* 8650	7000	* 7650	5350	• 5800	4950	9410
120						* 30700	* 30700	* 22650	20850	* 18800	15100	* 16650	11450	12700	10950	370
1500						16450	13700	11750	9200	• 9350	6750	* 7950	5200	• 6200	4850	9440
60						* 35450	29600	* 25350	19800	* 20250	14500	* 17300	11150	13650	10650	380
0						17150	13350	12450	8850	* 9800	6550	8000	5100	• 6900	4950	9220
0						* 37100	28700	* 26950	19100	* 21200	14100	17250	10950	• 15200	10850	370
-1500	1			* 11700	11700	16800	13250	12500	8750	9800	6450			* \$050	5250	8750
-60				* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	28500	* 27100	18800	* 21250	13900			17800	11600	350
-3000	1	П		* 18450	18450	15550	13350	11800	8750	• 9150	6500			* 8350	6050	7960
-120				* 41850	* 41850	* 33650	28750	• 25550	18900	* 19550	14000			18350	13350	320
-4500				* 17450	17450	13150	13150	• 9950	9000					* 8350	7700	6750
-180				* 37500	* 37500	* 28200	* 28200	* 21100	19400					* 18400	17200	270

Illustration 107 g06345805

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 800 mm (23.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)	1	1500 60		:000 120		1500 180		5000 240	1	'500 300		1000 360	4	-F-1	
	1			C.		甚		di I	4	di P	4	C.	1	Æ	(mm) (inch)
7500									. 6800	* 6800			• 5700	• 5700	7700
300	<u> </u>												12600		300
6000									* 7400				* 5550	* 5550	\$580
240	├								16150	16050			12200	12200	340
4500					* 11300	11300	9050	* 9050	* 7950	7250	• 6550	5400	• 5550	5300	9130
180							19650		17250	15600			12250	11700	360
3000					14300		10500	9600	* 8650	6950		5300		4950	9410
120	<u> </u>				* 30700		* 22650	20750		15000	-	11350		10850	370
1500					* 16450	13650	* 11750	9150	9350	6700		5150		4800	9440
60	<u> </u>				* 35450		* 25350	19700	_	14400		11100		10600	380
•					17150	13250	12450	**00	. 9800	6500	7950	5050		4900	9220
0					* 37100	28500	* 26950	19000	* 21200	14000	17150	10900	* 15200	10750	370
-1500	i		11700	* 11700	* 16800	13150	12500	8700	. 9800	6400			* 8050	5250	\$750
-60			* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	28300	* 27100	18700	* 21250	13800			17800	11550	350
-3000	l		18450	18450	* 15550	13300	* 11800	\$700	9150	6450			* 8350	6000	7960
-120			• 41850	41850	* 33650	28550	• 25550	18750	19550	13900			18350	13250	320
-4500			17450	17450	13150	13150	9950	8950					* 8350	7650	6750
-180			* 37500	* 37500	• 28200	* 28200	• 21100	19250					18400	17100	270

Illustration 108 g06345816

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 600 mm (27.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)		500 60		:000 120		1500 180		000 240		7500 300		1000 360	4	-e-1	
3	F .	Ħ		<u>.</u>		<u> </u>		æ						<u>.</u>	(mm) (inch)
7500									. 6800	. 6800			• 5700	• 5700	7700
300													* 12600	12600	300
6000									* 7400	* 7400			• 5550	• 5550	8580
240									16150	16000			12200	12200	340
4500	1				* 11300	* 11300	9050	* 9050	* 7950	7250	• 6550	5400	• 5550	5250	9130
180							• 19650	* 19650	17250	15550			12250	11650	360
3000					14300	14300	10500	9600	* 8650	6950	* 7650	5300	* 5800	4900	9410
120					* 30700	* 30700	• 22650	20700	18890	14950	16650	11350	12700	10850	370
1500					16450	13600	11750	9100	9350	6700	* 7950	5150	* 6200	4800	9440
60					* 35450	29300	• 25350	19650	• 20250	14400	17300	11050	13650	10550	380
0					17150	13200	12450	**00	• 9800	6500	7950	5050	* 6900	4900	9220
0					* 37100	28450	* 26950	18950	• 21200	13950	17100	10850	15200	10750	370
-1500			11700	11700	16800	13150	12500	8650	9800	6400			* 8050	5200	\$750
-60			* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	28250	• 27100	18650	* 21250	13750			17800	11500	350
-3000			* 18450	18450	15550	13250	11800	\$700	9150	6450			* 8350	5950	7960
-120			* 41850	• 41850	* 33650	28500	• 25550	18700	19550	13850			18350	13200	320
-4500		·	17450	17450	13150	* 13150	9950	8900					* 8350	7650	6750
-180			* 37500	• 37500	• 28200	. 58500	• 21100	19200					18400	17050	270

Illustration 109 g06345827

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 600 mm (27.6 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	500 60	_	:000 120		1500 180		:000 240	·	7500 300	l	9000 360		<u>.</u> =1	
,					砂		Œ.	14	Ġ.		P			(mm) (insh)
7500								• 6800	* 6800			• 5700	• 5700	7700
300												• 1 2600	• 12600	300
6000								* 7400	* 7400			• 5550		8580
240								16150	* 16150			• 12200	* 12200	340
4500				• 11 300	• 11300	* 9050	9050	• 7950	7400	• 6550	5550	• 5550	5400	9130
180						19650	19650	17250	15900			• 12250	11950	360
3000				• 14300	• 14300	* 10500	9800	* 8650	7100	* 7650	5400	* 5800	5050	9410
120				* 30700	* 30700	* 22650	21150	18800	15300	16650	11600	12700	11100	370
1500				16450	13950	* 11750	9350	9350	6850	* 7950	5250	• 6200	4900	9440
60				* 35450	30000	* 25350	20100	• 20250	14750	17300	11350	* 13650	10800	380
0				17150	13550	* 12450	9000	• 9800	6650	* 8100	5200	• 6900	5000	9220
0				* 37100	29100	* 26950	19400	• 21200	14300	17300	11150	• 15200	11000	370
-1500		• 11700	11700	• 16800	13450	* 12500	8850	• 9800	6550			* 8050	5350	8750
-60		* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	28900	* 27100	19100	• 21250	14100			17800	11800	350
-3000		18450	18450	• 15550	13550	* 11800	8900	9150	6600			* #350	6100	7960
-120		* 41850	* 41850	* 33650	29150	* 25550	19200	19550	14200			18350	13550	320
-4500		17450	17450	13150	13150	9950	9100	· · · · · ·		i .		* \$350	7800	6750
-180		• 37500	• 3 75 00	• 28200	• 28200	• 21100	19700					18400	17500	270

Illustration 110 g06345836

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 800 mm (31.5 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

96 Product Information Section Lifting Capacities

(mm) (inch)		500 60		:000 120		1500 180		.000 240		7500 300		1000 360	<u> </u>	,	·
	y . 3	铂		哥										a	(mm) (inch)
	Τ														
7500	T								. 6800	. 6800			• 5700	• 5700	7700
300													12600	* 12600	300
6000	Т								* 7400	6800			• 5550	5400	8580
240									16150	14600			12200	12000	340
4500	Т				* 11300	• 11300	9050	9050	* 7950	6600	• 6550	4900	• 5550	4800	9130
180							19650	19650	17250	14150			12250	10550	360
3000					• 14300	13050	10500	8700	* 8650	6300	* 7650	4890	• 5800	4450	9410
120					* 30700	28150	* 22650	18750	18800	13550	16650	10250	12700	9800	370
1500	Т				• 16450	12150	11750	8200	9350	6050	7900	4650	• 6200	4350	9440
60					* 35450	26150	* 25350	17700	* 20250	13000	16950	9950	13650	9500	380
0					17150	11750	12450	7900	9800	5850	7800	4550	• 6900	4400	9220
0					• 37100	25300	• 26950	17000	• 21200	12550	16750	9800	15200	9650	370
-1500	Т		11700	11700	• 16800	11700	12500	7750	9800	5750			* 8050	4700	8750
-60			* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	25100	• 27100	16700	• 21250	12350			17800	10350	350
-3000	Т		18450	* 18450	* 15550	11800	11800	7800	9150	5800			* 8350	5400	7960
-120	┸		41850	• 41850	* 33650	25350	• 25550	16800	19550	12500			18350	11900	320
-4500	Т		17450	17450	* 13150	12100	9950	8000					* 8350	6850	6750
-180	┸		* 37500	• 37500	• 28200	26000	• 21100	17300					18400	15350	270

Illustration 111 g06347243

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m $\,$ (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 600 mm $\,$ (23.6 inch) track shoes (LN).

(mm) (inch)	l	500 60		000 120		1500 180		3000 240	l	7500 300		9000 360		_ES	
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		H				<u> </u>	Þ	Œ.				Œ.	1	Œ.	(mm) (insh)
7500									* 6800	• 6800			• 5700	• 5700	7700
300													12600	• 12600	300
6000									* 7400	6850			• 5550	5450	8580
240									* 16150	14700			12200	12100	340
4500					11300	11300	9050	9050	• 7950	6650	6550	4950	• 5550	4800	9130
180							19650	19650	* 17250	14250			12250	10650	360
3000					14300	13150	10500	8750	* 8650	6350	* 7650	4800	• 5800	4500	9410
120					* 30700	28350	* 22650	18900	* 18800	13700	16650	10350	12700	9900	370
1500					16450	12250	11750	8300	9350	6100	7950	4700	• 6200	4350	9440
6.0					* 35450	26400	* 25350	17850	* 20250	13100	17100	10050	13650	9600	380
0					17150	11850	12450	7950	• 9800	5900	7850	4600	• 6900	4450	9220
0					* 37100	25550	* 26950	17150	* 21200	12700	16900	9850	15200	9750	370
-1500			11700	• 11700	16800	11800	12500	7850	. 9800	5800			* 8050	4750	8750
-60			* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	25350	* 27100	16850	* 21250	12500			17800	10450	350
-3000			18450	18450	15550	11900	11800	7850	• 9150	5850			* 8350	5450	7960
-120			41850	• 41850	* 33650	25600	* 25550	16950	• 19550	12600			18350	12000	320
-4500			17450	17450	13150	12200	• 9950	8050					* 8350	6950	6750
-180			* 37500	• 37500	* 28200	26250	* 21100	17450					18400	15500	270

Illustration 112 g06347250

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, $\!6.5$ m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m $\,$ (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 700 mm $\,$ (27.5 inch) track shoes (LN).

(mm) (insh)	1500 60	_	:000 120		1500 180		:000 2 4 0		7500 300		360 360	Ī	<u>_</u>	
1					뮨		d .	Po		P	Œ.	1	晉	(mm) (inch)
7500								* 6800	• 6800			• 5700	• 5700	7700
300												12600	12600	300
6000								* 7400	6900			• 5550	5500	8580
240								• 16150	14850			• 12200	• 12200	340
4500				• 11300	* 11300	9050	9050	* 7950	6700	• 6550	5000	• 5550	4850	9130
180						19650	19650	* 17250	14400			12250	10750	360
3000				• 14300	13250	10500	8850	* 8650	6400	* 7650	4850	5800	4550	9410
120				* 30700	28650	* 22650	19050	* 18800	13800	16650	10450	12700	10000	370
1500				• 16450	12350	11750	8350	9350	6150	* 7950	4750	• 6200	4400	9440
60				• 35450	26650	• 25350	18050	• 20250	13250	17300	10200	13650	9700	380
0				• 17150	12000	12450	8050	• 9800	5950	7950	4650	. 6900	4500	9220
				* 37100	25800	* 26950	17350	* 21200	12800	17100	10000	15200	9850	370
-1500		* 11700	11700	* 16800	11900	• 12500	7900	• 9800	5850			* 8050	4800	8750
-60		* 26400	. 56400	* 36400	25600	* 27100	17050	* 21250	12650			17800	10550	350
-3000		* 18450	18450	* 15550	12000	* 11800	7950	9150	5900			* 8350	5500	7960
-120		* 41850	• 41850	* 33650	25850	* 25550	17100	19550	12750			18350	12150	320
-4500		* 17450	17450	• 13150	12300	• 9950	8150		[* 8350	7000	6750
-180		* 37500	37500	* 28200	26500	* 21100	17600					18400	15700	270

Illustration 113 g06347277

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m $\,$ (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 600 mm $\,$ (23.6 inch) track shoes (LN).

(mm) (inch)	l '	500 60		:000 1 20		1500 180		-000 240		7500 300		9000 360		-e-1	
1	P	P	P	H.	I		1	(P)	P	C.		(F)	14	Æ	(mm) (inch)
7500									• 6800	• 6800			• 5700	• 5700	7700
300													• 12600	12600	300
6000									* 7400	6900			• 5550	5500	8580
240									* 16150	14800			• 12200	* 12200	340
4500					11300	• 11300	9050	• 9050	• 7950	6700	• 6550	5000	• 5550	4850	9130
180							• 19650	• 19650	* 17250	14350			• 12250	10750	360
3000					14300	13250	10500	8800	* 3650	6400	* 7650	4850	• 5800	4550	9410
120					* 30700	28550	* 22650	19000	* 18800	13800	16650	10450	* 12700	9950	370
1500					16450	12350	• 11750	8350	9350	6150	* 7950	4750	• 6200	4400	9440
60					* 35450	26600	* 25350	18000	* 20250	13200	17250	10150	* 13650	9700	380
0					17150	11950	• 12450	8050	9800	5956	7900	4650	• 6900	4500	9220
0					* 37100	25750	• 26950	17300	* 21200	12800	17050	9950	• 15200	9850	370
-1500			11700	11700	16800	11900	12500	7900	9800	5850			* 8050	4800	8750
-60			* 26400	* 26400	* 36400	25550	* 27100	17000	* 21250	12600			* 17800	10550	350
-3000			18450	* 18450	15550	12000	* 11800	7950	9150	5900			* 8350	5450	7960
-120			1 41850	• 41850	* 33650	25800	• 25550	17100	• 19550	12700			• 18350	12100	320
-4500			17450	17450	13150	12300	9950	\$150					* 8350	7000	6750
-180			1 37500	* 37500	* 28200	26450	* 21100	17550					* 18400	15650	270

Illustration 114 g06347291

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 3.2 m (10 ft 6 inch) stick with Auxiliary, 600 mm (23.6 inch) heavy-duty track shoes (LN).

2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick

_																	
	(mm)		1	500	3	000	4	500	6	000	7	500	9	000	K	→	
	(inch)			60		120		180		240	;	300					
	\	Á	T		X-1		— 1		X-0		— 1		— 1				(mm)
			<u>₽</u> ₫		Ipûn		I		Ipû¶		I.O.		Į,		Iprûn		(inch)
		Ć.	U	المالية المالية	T		U		של		TU		Ü		TU	مهني ا	
	7500														* 7300	* 7300	7340
	300														* 16150	* 16150	290
	6000								* 8550	* 8550	* 7950	7300			* 7000	6250	8250
	240								* 18550	* 18550	* 17400	15700			* 15450	13850	330
	4500						* 12350	* 12350	* 9700	* 9700	* 8400	7100			* 7000	5500	8820
	180						* 26450	* 26450	* 21000	* 21000	* 18350	15300			* 15450	12200	350
	3000						* 15350	14150	* 11100	9450	* 9100	6850	7100	5250	6950	5150	9110
	120						* 32900	30500	* 23950	20350	* 19750	14800			15300	11350	360
	1500						* 14100	13400	* 12250	9000	9050	6650	6950	5150	6800	5050	9140
	60						* 34300	28850	* 26450	19400	19500	14300			15000	11050	360
	0						* 16550	13150	12250	8750	8900	6500			7000	5150	8920
	0						* 37800	28300	26300	18850	19100	13950			15400	11300	350
	-1500				* 10950	* 10950	* 16800	13150	12150	8650	8800	6450			7550	5550	8420
	-60				* 24900	* 24900	* 36450	28250	26100	18700	19000	13850			16650	12200	340
	-3000				* 19750	* 19750	* 15300	13300	* 11750	8750	* 8900	6500			* 8700	6400	7600
	-120				* 43650	* 43650	* 33100	28600	* 25300	18850					* 19100	14200	300
	-4500				* 16000	* 16000	* 12450	* 12450	* 9250	9000					* 8450	8450	6330
	-180				* 34450	* 34450	* 26650	* 26650	* 19400	* 19400					* 18550	* 18550	250

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8 m $\,$ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 800 mm $\,$ (31.5 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	 500 60		3000 120		500 180	-	5000 240	100	'500 300	g	1000		Ž.	
														(mm) (inch)
7500												* 7300	* 7300	7340
300												* 16150	* 16150	290
6000						* 8550	* 8550	* 7950	7200			* 7000	6150	8250
240						* 18550	* 18550	* 17400	15500			* 15450	13650	330
4500				* 12350	* 12350	* 9700	* 9700	* 8400	7000			* 7000	5450	8820
180				* 26450	* 26450	* 21000	* 21000	* 18350	15100			* 15450	12000	350
3000				* 15350	13950	* 11100	9300	* 9100	6750	6950	5150	6850	5050	9110
120				* 32900	30050	* 23950	20050	19700	14600			15050	11150	360
1500				* 14100	13200	* 12250	8850	8900	6550	6850	5050	6700	4950	9140
60				* 34300	28450	* 26450	19100	19150	14100			14750	10900	360
0				* 16550	12950	12050	8600	8750	6400			6900	5050	8920
0				* 37800	27850	25900	18550	18800	13750			15150	11150	350
-1500		* 10950	* 10950	* 16800	12950	11950	8550	8700	6300			7450	5450	8420
-60		* 24900	* 24900	* 36450	27850	25700	18400	18700	13650			16350	12000	340
-3000		* 19750	* 19750	* 15300	13100	* 11750	8600	8800	6400			8650	6300	7600
-120		* 43650	* 43650	* 33100	28150	* 25300	18550					* 19100	14000	300
-4500		* 16000	* 16000	* 12450	* 12450	* 9250	8900					* 8450	8300	6330
-180		* 34450	* 34450	* 26650	* 26650	* 19400	19200					* 18550	* 18550	250

| Illustration 116 g06297694

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8 m $\,$ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 700 mm (27.6 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	 1500 60		3000 120		500 180		5000 240		500 300	g	1000			
													C#	(mm) (inch)
7500												* 7300	* 7300	7340
300												* 16150	* 16150	290
6000						* 8550	* 8550	* 7950	7150			* 7000	6100	8250
240						* 18550	* 18550	* 17400	15350			* 15450	13550	330
4500				* 12350	* 12350	* 9700	* 9700	* 8400	6950			* 7000	5400	8820
180				* 26450	* 26450	* 21000	20950	* 18350	15000			* 15450	11900	350
3000				* 15350	13800	* 11100	9200	9100	6700	6900	5100	6800	5050	9110
120				* 32900	29850	* 23950	19900	19550	14450			14950	11050	360
1500				* 14100	13100	12200	8800	8850	6500	6800	5000	6650	4900	9140
60				* 34300	28200	26300	18950	19000	13950			14600	10800	360
0				* 16550	12850	11950	8550	8650	6300			6800	5000	8920
0				* 37800	27600	25650	18400	18650	13600			15000	11050	350
-1500		* 10950	* 10950	* 16800	12850	11850	8450	8600	6250			7350	5400	8420
-60		* 24900	* 24900	* 36450	27600	25450	18250	18500	13500			16250	11900	340
-3000		* 19750	* 19750	* 15300	13000	* 11750	8550	8700	6350			8550	6250	7600
-120		* 43650	* 43650	* 33100	27950	* 25300	18400					18950	13850	300
-4500		* 16000	* 16000	* 12450	* 12450	* 9250	8800					* 8450	8250	6330
-180		* 34450	* 34450	* 26650	* 26650	* 19400	19050					* 18550	18500	250

Illustration 117 g06297701

 $336~\mathrm{GC}$: $6800~\mathrm{kg}$ (14991 lb) counterweight, $6.5~\mathrm{m}$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, $2.8~\mathrm{m}$ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, $600~\mathrm{mm}$ (23.6 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	1	500 60		:000 120		1500 180		000 240		7500 300	٠	1000		<u>,</u>	
11 = 1		æ			P	码	140	æ		æ			14	윤	(mm) (inch)
7500													* 7300	* 7300	7340
300													* 16150	16150	290
6000							* 8550	* 8550	* 7950	7500			* 7000	6400	8250
240							* 18550	* 18550	17400	16150			15450	14250	330
4500					12350	12350	9700	* 9700	* \$400	7300			* 7000	5700	8820
180					* 26450	* 26450	* 21000	* 21000	18350	15750			15450	12550	350
3000					15350	14500	11100	9700	9100	7050	* 8050	5400	* 7250	5300	9110
120					* 32900	31350	* 23950	20900	19750	15250			15950	11700	360
1500					14100	13800	* 12250	9250	9750	6850	8250	5300	* 7700	5200	9140
60					* 34300	29700	* 26450	20000	* 21100	14750			17000	11400	360
0					16550	13950	* 12800	9000	10100	6700			8250	5300	8920
0					* 37800	29150	• 27700	19450	* 21850	14400			18200	11650	350
-1500			10950	10950	* 16800	13550	12700	*95 0	• 9950	6650			* 8550	5700	8420
-60			* 24900	* 24900	* 36450	29100	* 27450	19250	* 21500	14300			18850	12600	340
-3000			19750	19750	15300	13700	• 11750	9000	* 8900	6700			* 8700	6600	7600
-120			* 43650	* 43650	* 33100	29450	* 25300	19400					19100	14650	300
-4500			16000	16000	12450	12450	9250	• 9250					* 8450	* 8450	6330
-180			* 34450	* 34450	* 26650	* 26650	19400	19400					18550	18550	250

Illustration 118 g06346965

336~GC: 6800~kg~ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 850~mm~ (33.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)	500 60		:000 120		1500 180		.000 240		'500 300	•	1000	£	<u>_</u> 85	
71 NG 1	P		<u>a</u>	10	Œ.		FF.				œ.		晉	(mm) (inch)
7500												* 7300	* 7300	7340
300					Į					ļ		16150	16150	290
6000						* 8550	* 8550	* 7950	7300			* 7000	6250	8250
240						18550	18550	17400	15700			15450	13850	330
4500				12350	• 12350	• 9700	9700	* 8400	7100			* 7000	5500	8820
180				* 26450	• 26450	* 21000	* 21000	18350	15300			* 15450	12200	350
3000				* 15350	14100	* 11100	9400	9100	6850	* 8050	5250	* 7250	5150	9110
120				* 32900	30450	* 23950	20300	19750	14800			15950	11350	360
1500				14100	13400	* 12250	9000	9750	6650	7950	5150	* 7700	5050	9140
60				* 34300	28850	* 26450	19400	* 21100	14300			17000	11050	360
0				16550	13150	* 12800	8750	10100	6450			8000	5150	8920
0				* 37800	28250	* 27700	18850	* 21850	13950			17600	11300	350
-1500		10950	10950	16800	13150	* 12700	8650	• 9950	6400			* 8550	5550	8420
-60		* 24900	* 24900	* 36450	28250	* 27450	18650	* 21500	13850			18850	12200	340
-3000		19750	19750	• 15300	13300	* 11750	8750	. 8900	6500			* 8700	6400	7600
-120		43650	43650	* 33100	28550	* 25300	18800					19100	14200	300
-4500		* 16000	16000	12450	12450	* 9250	9000					* 8450	8400	6330
-180		* 34450	* 34450	* 26650	* 26650	* 19400	19400					18550	18550	250

Illustration 119 g06346971

336~GC: 6800~kg (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 600~mm (23.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)	500 60		:000 120		1500 180		3000 240		'500 300		9000		<u>,</u> = 1	
1	<u>4</u>						(F)			1			<u> </u>	(mm) (inch)
7500												* 7300	* 7300	7340
300												* 16150	16150	290
6000						* \$550	* \$550	• 7950	7350			* 7000	6300	\$250
240						* 18550	* 18550	* 17400	15800			* 15450	13950	330
4500				12350	12350	9700	• 9700	* 8400	7200			* 7000	5550	8820
180				* 26450	* 26450	* 21000	* 21000	* 18350	15450			* 15450	12300	350
3000				15350	14250	11100	9500	* 9100	6950	* 8050	5300	* 7250	5200	9110
120				* 32900	30700	* 23950	20500	* 19750	14900			* 15950	11450	360
1500				14100	13500	12250	9100	* 9750	6700	8050	5200	* 7700	5100	9140
60				* 34300	29100	* 26450	19550	* 21100	14400			17000	11150	360
0				16550	13250	12800	8850	* 10100	6550			\$100	5200	8920
0				* 37800	28500	* 27700	19000	* 21850	14050			17800	11400	350
-1500		10950	10950	* 16800	13250	12700	\$750	• 9950	6500			* 8550	5600	8420
-60		* 24900	* 24900	* 36450	28500	* 27450	18850	* 21500	13950			* 18850	12300	340
-3000		19750	19750	• 15300	13400	11750	\$800	* 8900	6550			* 8700	6450	7600
-120		43650	43650	* 33100	28800	* 25300	19000					19100	14300	300
-4500		16000	* 16000	* 12450	• 12450	* 9250	9100					* 8450	* 8450	6330
-180		* 34450	* 34450	* 26650	* 26650	19400	19400					18550	18550	250

Illustration 120 g06346976

336~GC: 6800~kg~ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 700~mm~ (27.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)		500 60		0 00 120		1500 180		.000 240		'500 300	•	1000	4	_E-3_	
3		댼								얜			1	<u>.</u>	(mm) (inch)
7500	T												• 7300	• 7300	7340
300	l												• 16150	16150	290
6000	Ī						* 8550	* 8550	• 7950	7500			• 7000	6400	\$250
240	ı						* 18550	18550	17400	16050			• 15450	14200	330
4500	П				12350	• 12350	* 9700	• 9700	* 8400	7300			• 7000	5650	8820
180					• 26450	* 26450	* 21000	* 21000	* 18350	15700			• 15450	12500	350
3000					15350	14450	* 11100	9650	* 9100	7050	* 8050	5400	* 7250	5300	9110
120					. 35400	31200	* 23950	20800	19750	15150			15950	11650	360
1500	- 1				14100	13700	* 12250	9200	• 9750	6800	8200	5300	• 7700	5150	9140
60					* 34300	29550	* 26450	19900	* 21100	14650			• 17000	11350	360
0	l				16550	13450	* 12800	8950	* 10100	6650			\$250	5300	8920
0					* 37800	29000	* 27700	19350	* 21850	14300			18100	11600	350
-1500	ı		10950	• 10950	16800	13450	* 12700	8900	• 9950	6600			* 8550	5700	8420
-60			* 24900	* 24900	* 36450	28950	* 27450	19150	* 21500	14200			* 18850	12550	340
-3000			19750	• 19750	15300	13600	* 11750	8950	* 8900	6700			* 8700	6600	7600
-120			* 43650	* 43650	33100	29300	* 25300	19300					• 19100	14550	300
-4500	1		* 16000	* 16000	12450	• 12450	* 9250	9250					* 8450	* 8450	6330
-180			* 34450	* 34450	* 26650	* 26650	* 19400	19400					* 18550	* 18550	250

Illustration 121 g06346983

336~GC: 6800~kg (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 800~mm (31.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (insh)			500 60	_	000 120		1500 180		1000 240		'500 300	ė	1000	4	-F-1	
3	. 1	1	P	14		P		146	Į.	140	퀀	14			县	(mm) (inch)
	T															
7500	T													• 7300	• 7300	7340
300														16150	16150	290
6000	T							* 8550	* 8550	• 7950	7450			* 7000	6350	8250
240								18550	18550	17400	15950			• 15450	14100	330
4500	Т					12350	12350	9700	9700	* 8400	7290			* 7000	5600	\$820
180						* 26450	* 26450	* 21000	• 21000	18350	15600			15450	12400	350
3000	Т					• 15350	14350	11100	9600	9100	7000	* \$050	5350	• 7250	5250	9110
120	\perp					* 32900	31000	23950	20700	19750	15050			15950	11550	360
1500	Т					14100	13650	12250	9150	9750	6750	8150	5250	• 7700	5150	9140
60	┸					* 34300	29400	26450	19750	21100	14550			17000	11300	360
0	Г					• 16550	13400	12800	\$900	10100	6600			8150	5250	8920
	ᆚ					* 37800	28800	* 27700	19200	* 21850	14200			18000	11550	350
-1500	П			10950	10950	16800	13400	12700	**50	• 9950	6550			* 8550	5650	8420
-60	ᆚ			* 24900	* 24900	* 36450	28800	* 27450	19050	* 21500	14100			18850	12450	340
-3000	Г			19750	19750	• 15300	13550	11750	\$900	* 8900	6650			* 8700	6550	7600
-120	┵			* 43650	* 43650	* 33100	29100	* 25300	19200					19100	14500	300
-4500				* 16000	* 16000	12450	12450	9250	9200					* 8450	* 8450	6330
-180				* 34450	* 34450	* 26650	* 26650	19400	19400					18550	18550	250

g06346996 Illustration 122

336~GC: 6800~kg~ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 600~mm~ (23.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (in ch)			500 60	_	:000 120		1500 180		.000 240	l	'500 300	٠	*000		<u>دھ</u> ر	
1	J - 4	6	P		码		砂		码		砂			墫		(mm) (inch)
	I															
7500	7													* 7300	* 7300	7340
300														• 16150	• 16150	290
6000	T							* \$550	* 8550	• 7950	7400			* 7000	6350	8250
240								* 18550	• 18550	17400	15950			15450	14050	330
4500	T					• 12350	• 12350	• 9700	9700	* \$400	7250			* 7000	5600	8820
180						* 26450	* 26450	* 21000	* 21000	18350	15550			* 15450	12400	350
3000						• 15350	14350	• 11100	9550	9100	7000	* 8050	5350	• 7250	5250	9110
120						• 32900	30950	* 23950	20650	19750	15000			• 15950	11550	360
1500						* 14100	13600	12250	9150	9750	6750	\$100	5250	* 7700	5100	9140
60						• 34300	29300	• 26450	19700	21100	14550			17000	11250	360
0						* 16550	13350	12800	8900	10100	6600			\$15 0	5250	8920
0						* 37800	28750	* 27700	19150	• 21850	14200			17950	11500	350
-1500	1			* 10950	10950	* 16800	13350	12700	8800	• 9950	6550			* 8550	5650	8420
-60				• 24900	• 24900	* 36450	28700	* 27450	19000	• 21500	14050			* 18850	12400	340
-3000	1		_	* 19750	19750	* 15300	13500	* 11750	8900	. 8900	6600			* 8700	6500	7600
-120				43650	43650	* 33100	29050	• 25300	19150					19100	14450	300
-4500				16000	16000	* 12450	• 12450	• 9250	9150					* 8450	* 8450	6330
-180				* 34450	• 34450	* 26650	* 26650	19400	19400					* 18550	* 18550	250

Illustration 123 g06347003

336 GC: 6800 kg (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 600 mm (23.5 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

(mm) (inch)		500 60		:000 120		1500 180		6000 240		7500 300	•	9000	4	-Fi	
1			10		P	Œ.	1	æ	100		1		1	Æ	(mm) (inch)
	ı														
7500	T												• 7300	• 7300	7340
300													16150	16150	290
6000							• 8550	* 8550	• 7950	7600			• 7000	6450	8250
240							• 18550	18550	17400	16300			• 15450	14400	330
4500					• 1 2350	* 12350	• 9700	9700	* 8400	7400			* 7000	5750	8820
180					* 26450	* 26450	* 21000	• 21000	18350	15900			15450	12700	350
3000		· ·			• 15350	14650	11100	9800	9100	7150	* 8050	5450	* 7250	5350	9110
120					* 32900	31650	* 23950	21100	19750	15350			• 15950	11800	360
1500					14100	13900	• 12250	9350	9750	6900	* \$300	5350	• 7700	5250	9140
60	_				* 34300	30000	* 26450	20200	* 21100	14900			* 17000	11550	360
0	- 1				• 16550	13700	12800	9100	10100	6750			\$350	5350	8920
0					* 37800	29400	* 27700	19650	* 21850	14550			18400	11800	350
-1500	ı		10950	10950	• 16 800	13650	• 12706	9050	• 9950	6700			* 8550	5750	8420
-60			* 24900	• 24900	* 36450	29400	* 27450	19450	• 21500	14400			18850	12700	340
-3000			19750	19750	• 15 300	13800	11750	9100	. 8900	6800			* \$700	6700	7600
-120			* 43650	43650	* 33100	29700	* 25300	19600					19100	14800	300
-4500	1		16000	16000	12450	12450	9250	9250					* 8450	* 8450	6330
-180			* 34450	* 34450	* 26650	* 26650	* 19400	19400					* 18550	18550	250

Illustration 124 g06347008

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg~$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 800~mm~ (31.5 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) Stick with Auxiliary Tool Control System

(mm) (inch)		500		000		500 180		000 240		500 300	ę	9000		*	
														Œ,	(mm) (inch)
7500													* 7300	* 7300	7340
300													* 16100	* 16100	290
6000							* 8450	* 8450	* 7850	7300			* 7000	6200	8250
240							* 18400	* 18400	* 17200	15700			* 15400	13800	330
4500					* 12250	* 12250	* 9600	* 9600	* 8300	7100			* 7000	5500	8820
180					* 26200	* 26200	* 20750	* 20750	* 18100	15300			* 15350	12100	350
3000					* 15200	14100	* 10950	9400	* 9000	6850	7050	5200	6900	5100	9110
120					* 32550	30450	* 23700	20300	* 19500	14750			15250	11250	360
1500					* 14050	13350	* 12100	8950	9050	6600	6950	5100	6800	5000	9140
60					* 34250	28700	* 26150	19300	19450	14200			14950	10950	360
0					* 16550	13050	12200	8700	8850	6450			6950	5100	8920
0					* 37350	28100	26250	18750	19050	13850			15300	11200	350
-1500			* 10900	* 10900	* 16600	13050	12100	8600	8800	6350			7500	5500	8420
-60			* 24850	* 24850	* 35950	28100	26000	18550	18900	13700			16550	12100	340
-3000			* 19700	* 19700	* 15050	13200	* 11600	8700	* 8750	6450			* 8550	6350	7600
-120			* 43050	* 43050	* 32650	28450	* 24950	18700					* 18800	14100	300
-4500			* 15750	* 15750	* 12250	* 12250	* 9100	8950					* 8300	* 8300	6330
-180			* 33850	* 33850	* 26200	* 26200	* 19100	* 19100					* 18200	* 18200	250

Illustration 125 g06297830

336~GC: 6800~kg~(14991~lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~(21~ft~4~inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~(9~ft~2~inch) stick, 800~mm~(31.5~inch) track shoes.

													1		
(mm)	1	500	3	000	4	500	e	000	7	500	9	000	<u> </u>		
(inch)		60		120	19	180	1	240	;	300			_K	_	
No.	₹-II	14 - 11	₹ _1	14 - 41	Ŧ-1	10 - 1	* 1	14 - 1	Ŧ	14 - 51	* I	14 - 1	Ŧ-1		(mm)
	<u> </u>		₽ 0		<u>₽</u> ₫		I I		i iro		Î₽ٶ				(inch)
is its	U		U		U		U		U		U	-	U	~- T	
7500													* 7300	* 7300	7340
300													* 16100	* 16100	290
6000							* 8450	* 8450	* 7850	7200			* 7000	6100	8250
240							* 18400	* 18400	* 17200	15450			* 15400	13600	330
4500					* 12250	* 12250	* 9600	* 9600	* 8300	7000			* 7000	5400	8820
180					* 26200	* 26200	* 20750	* 20750	* 18100	15050			* 15350	11950	350
3000					* 15200	13900	* 10950	9250	* 9000	6750	6950	5150	6800	5050	9110
120					* 32550	30000	* 23700	20000	* 19500	14500			15000	11100	360
1500					* 14050	13150	* 12100	8850	8900	6500	6800	5000	6650	4900	9140
60					* 34250	28300	* 26150	19050	19100	14000			14700	10800	360
0					* 16550	12850	12000	8550	8700	6350			6850	5000	8920
0					* 37350	27700	25800	18450	18750	13650			15050	11000	350
-1500			* 10900	* 10900	* 16600	12850	11900	8450	8650	6250			7400	5400	8420
-60			* 24850	* 24850	* 35950	27650	25600	18250	18600	13500			16300	11900	340
-3000			* 19700	* 19700	* 15050	13000	* 11600	8550	8750	6350			* 8550	6250	7600
-120			* 43050	* 43050	* 32650	28000	* 24950	18400					* 18800	13850	300
-4500			* 15750	* 15750	* 12250	* 12250	* 9100	8850					* 8300	8250	6330
-180			* 33850	* 33850	* 26200	* 26200	* 19100	* 19100					* 18200	* 18200	250
100			53000	53000	23200	23200	.5100	.5100					.5200	.0200	200

Illustration 126 g06297831

336 GC: 6800 kg $\,$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5 m $\,$ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8 m $\,$ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 700 mm $\,$ (27.6 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)	 500 60		3000 120		500 180		000 240		500 300	g	1000			
														(mm) (inch)
7500												* 7300	* 7300	7340
300												* 16100	* 16100	290
6000						* 8450	* 8450	* 7850	7150			* 7000	6050	8250
240						* 18400	* 18400	* 17200	15350			* 15400	13500	330
4500				* 12250	* 12250	* 9600	* 9600	* 8300	6950			* 7000	5350	8820
180				* 26200	* 26200	* 20750	* 20750	* 18100	14950			* 15350	11850	350
3000				* 15200	13800	* 10950	9200	* 9000	6700	6900	5100	6750	5000	9110
120				* 32550	29800	* 23700	19850	19500	14400			14900	11000	360
1500				* 14050	13000	* 12100	8750	8800	6450	6750	4950	6600	4850	9140
60				* 34250	28050	* 26150	18850	18950	13850			14550	10700	360
0				* 16550	12750	11900	8500	8650	6250			6800	4950	8920
0				* 37350	27450	25600	18300	18550	13500			14900	10900	350
-1500		* 10900	* 10900	* 16600	12750	11800	8400	8550	6200			7350	5350	8420
-60		* 24850	* 24850	* 35950	27400	25400	18100	18450	13400			16150	11800	340
-3000		* 19700	* 19700	* 15050	12900	* 11600	8450	8650	6300			8500	6200	7600
-120		* 43050	* 43050	* 32650	27750	* 24950	18250					* 18800	13750	300
-4500		* 15750	* 15750	* 12250	* 12250	* 9100	8750					* 8300	8200	6330
-180		* 33850	* 33850	* 26200	* 26200	* 19100	18950					* 18200	* 18200	250

Illustration 127 g06297834

336 GC: 6800 kg (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 600 mm (23.6 inch) track shoes.

(mm) (inch)		1500 60		:000 120		1500 180		000 240		1500 300	ę	9000	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	
'							14	d l		1 <u>1</u>		Œ.	P	砸	(mm) (inch)
7500	1												* 7300	• 7300	7340
300	1												16100	16100	290
6000							* 8450	* 8450	* 7850	7500			* 7000	6400	8250
240	1						18400	18400	17200	16100			15400	14200	330
4500	Т				* 12250	12250	9600	• 9600	* 8300	7300			* 7000	5650	8820
180					• 26200	• 26200	• 20750	• 20750	18100	15700			• 15350	12500	350
3000					* 15200	14500	10950	9650	9000	7050	* 7950	5350	* 7200	5250	9110
120					* 32550	31300	• 23700	20850	19500	15150			• 15850	11600	360
1500					* 14050	13700	12100	9250	9600	6800	* 8150	5250	* 7700	5150	9140
60					* 34250	29550	• 26150	19900	* 20850	14650			* 16900	11300	360
0	1				* 16550	13450	* 12650	8950	• 9950	6650			8250	5250	8920
0					• 37350	28950	• 27350	19300	* 21550	14300			18150	11550	350
-1500	i	1	10900	* 10900	• 16600	13450	12500	8850	• 9850	6550			* 8450	5650	8420
-60			• 24850	• 24850	* 35950	28950	• 27100	19100	• 21200	14150			18600	12500	340
-3000	1		19700	19700	• 15050	13600	11600	8950	* \$750	6650			* 8550	6550	7600
-120			43050	43050	* 32650	29250	* 24950	19250					* 18800	14550	300
-4500			• 15750	15750	• 12250	12250	9100	9100					. 8300	. 8300	6330
-180			* 33850	* 33850	* 26200	* 26200	19100	19100					* 18200	18200	250

| Illustration 128 | g06346514

336~GC: 6800~kg~ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 850~mm~ (31.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)			500 60		:000 120		1500 180		:000 240		7500 300	4	1000	<u> </u>	<u>_</u>	
*1 1	F · 4 ·		H		æ	100								100	砸	(mm) (inch)
7500	╗													* 7300	* 7300	7340
300														16100	16100	290
6000								* 8450	* 8450	7850	7300			* 7000	6200	8250
240								18400	18400	17200	15650			15400	13800	330
4500						• 12250	• 12250	• 9600	9600	. 8300	7100			* 7000	5500	8820
180						• 26200	• 26200	• 20750	• 20750	18100	15250			15350	12100	350
3000						* 15200	14100	10950	9400	9000	6850	• 7950	5200	* 7200	5100	9110
120						• 32550	30400	• 23700	20250	19500	14700			15850	11250	360
1500						14050	13300	* 12100	8950	9600	6600	7950	5100	* 7700	5000	9140
60						* 34250	28700	* 26150	19300	* 20850	14200			16900	10950	360
0						• 16550	13050	* 12650	8700	9950	6400			8000	5100	8920
0						• 37350	28100	• 27350	18700	• 21550	13850			17550	11200	350
-1500				10900	10900	16600	13050	• 12500	\$600	9850	6350			* 8450	5500	8420
-60				* 24850	· 24850	* 35950	28050	* 27100	18500	• 21200	13700			18600	12100	340
-3000	T	_		19700	19700	• 15050	13200	• 11600	8650	* 8750	6450			* 8550	6350	7600
-120				43050	43050	• 32650	28400	* 24950	18650					18800	14050	300
-4500	П			• 15750	15750	• 12250	• 12250	• 9100	8950					. 8300	. \$300	6330
-180				* 33850	* 33850	* 26200	• 26200	* 19100	19100					18200	18200	250

Illustration 129 g06346551

336~GC: 6800~kg~ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 600~mm~ (23.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)		500 60		:000 120		1500 180		000 2 4 0		'500 300	ş	000		<u>_</u>	
	4	砸	Ð	1				Œ.	1					<u> </u>	(mm) (inch)
7500													* 7300	* 7300	7340
300													* 16100	* 16100	290
6000							* 8450	* 8450	* 7850	7350			* 7000	6250	\$250
240							* 18400	* 18400	* 17200	15800			* 15400	13900	330
4500					12250	12250	• 9600	• 9600	* 8300	7150			* 7000	5550	\$820
1#0					* 26200	* 26200	* 20750	* 20750	* 18100	15400			* 15350	12200	350
3000					• 15200	14200	10950	9500	• 9000	6900	. 7950	5250	* 7200	5150	9110
120					* 32550	30650	* 23700	20450	19500	14850			* 15850	11350	360
1500			-		14050	13450	12100	9050	9600	6650	8000	5150	* 7700	5050	9140
60					* 34250	28950	* 26150	19450	* 20850	14300			* 16900	11050	360
0					16550	13150	12650	8750	• 9950	6500			8050	5150	\$920
0					* 37350	28350	* 27350	18900	* 21550	13950			17750	11300	350
-1500			* 10900	* 10900	16600	13150	12500	\$700	• 9850	6400			* 8450	5550	\$420
-60			* 24850	* 24850	* 35950	28300	* 27100	18700	* 21200	13850			* 18600	12200	340
-3000			19700	19700	15050	13300	11600	8750	* 8750	6500			* 8550	6400	7600
-120			* 43050	* 43050	* 32650	28650	• 24950	18850					* 18800	14200	300
-4500		Ī	* 15750	* 15750	12250	12250	• 9100	9050					* 8300	* 8300	6330
-1#0			* 33850	* 33850	. 26200	* 26200	19100	19100					18200	* 18200	250

g06346576 Illustration 130

336~GC: 6800~kg~ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 700~mm~ (27.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)		500 60		:000 120		1500 180		3000 240		'500 300	4	9000		_F=1	
- ;	F - F	fi		£.	10	Œ				[]		Œ	P	_ •••	(mm) (inch)
7500	T												* 7300	* 7300	7340
300													• 16100	* 16100	290
6000							* 8450	* 8450	• 7850	7450			• 7000	6350	8250
240							* 18400	* 18400	* 17200	16050			* 15400	14150	330
4500					12250	• 12250	• 9600	• 9600	* 8300	7250			* 7000	5600	8820
180					. 26200	* 26200	* 20750	• 20750	* 18100	15650			• 15350	12400	350
3000					• 15200	14400	* 10950	9600	• 9000	7000	* 7950	5350	• 7200	5250	9110
120					* 32550	31150	* 23700	20750	* 19500	15100			• 15850	11550	360
1500					14050	13650	* 12100	9200	* 9600	6750	8150	5250	* 7700	5100	9140
60					* 34250	29400	* 26150	19800	* 20850	14550			16900	11250	360
0					• 16550	13400	* 12650	8900	• 9950	6600			\$200	5250	8920
0					* 37350	28800	* 27350	19200	* 21550	14200			18050	11500	350
-1500			* 10900	10900	* 16600	13400	* 12500	**00	* 9850	6550			* \$450	5650	\$420
-60			• 24850	• 24850	* 35950	28800	* 27100	19000	* 21200	14100			18600	12 400	340
-3000			19700	• 19700	• 15050	13550	* 11600	8900	* 8750	6650			* 8550	6550	7600
-120			* 43050	* 43050	* 32650	29100	* 24950	19150					* 18800	14450	300
-4500			• 15750	• 15750	• 12250	• 12250	* 9100	9100					. 8300	* 8300	6330
-180			* 33850	* 33850	* 26200	* 26200	* 19100	• 19100					* 18200	* 18200	250

Illustration 131 g06346746

336~GC: 6800~kg (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 800~mm (31.5 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm) (inch)	1	1500 60		:000 120	l	1500 180	l	1000 240		7500 300	ę	1000	_	-E-3	
-	10					C.	4	Œ.			4			桶	(mm) (inch)
7500													* 7300	* 7300	7340
300													* 16100	16100	290
6000	1						* 8450	* 8450	* 7850	7450			* 7000	6300	\$250
240							18400	18400	17200	15950			• 15400	14050	330
4500	l				12250	* 12250	* 9600	• 9600	* 8300	7250			* 7000	5600	\$\$20
180					• 26200	* 26200	* 20750	• 20750	18100	15550			• 15350	12350	350
3000					• 15200	14350	* 10950	9550	• 9000	6950	• 7950	5300	• 7200	5200	9110
120	<u> </u>	L			* 32550	30950	* 23700	20650	19500	15000			* 15850	11450	360
1500					14050	13550	* 12100	9100	• 9600	6700	8100	5200	* 7700	5100	9140
60	l				• 34250	29250	* 26150	19650	* 20850	14450			* 16900	11200	360
0	Ī				• 16550	13300	12650	8850	9950	6550			8150	5200	8920
	l				• 37350	28650	• 27350	19100	* 21550	14100			17950	11400	350
-1500	1		• 10900	10900	• 16600	13300	• 12500	8750	• 9850	6500			* 8450	5600	8420
-60	I		* 24850	• 24850	• 35950	28600	* 27100	18900	• 21200	14000			• t8600	12350	340
-3000			• 19700	• 19700	• 15050	13450	11600	8850	* 8750	6600			* 8550	6500	7600
-120	Į .		- 43050	43050	• 32650	28950	• 24950	19050					• t**00	14350	300
-4500	1		• 15750	• 15750	• 12250	• 12250	• 9100	• 9100					* 8300	. 8300	6330
-180			* 33850	* 33850	• 26200	* 26200	19100	19100					* 18200	18200	250

Illustration 132 g06346749

336~GC: 6800~kg~ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 600~mm~ (23.6 inch) track shoes (LC).

(mm (inch		1	500 60	_	:000 120		1500 180		5000 240	l '	'500 300	•	1000		.e-1	
3	ú	4				14	F	1	æ	4	Æ			P	æ	(mm) (inch)
7504	,	1												* 7300	* 7300	7340
300)	1												16100	16100	290
6000	,							* 8450	* 8450	• 7850	7400			* 7000	6300	8250
240)	l						18400	18400	17200	15900			• 15400	14000	330
4504	,					* 12250	12250	• 9600	. 9600	* #300	7200			* 7000	5550	8820
180	,					• 26200	• 26200	• 20750	• 20750	18100	15500			• 15350	12300	350
3000	,					* 15200	14300	10950	9550	• 9000	6950	• 7950	5300	* 7200	5200	9110
120)	l				• 32550	30900	• 23700	20600	19500	14950			15850	11450	360
1504	,					14050	13550	• 12100	9100	• 9600	6700	\$100	5200	* 7700	5050	9140
61)	1				* 34250	29150	• 26150	19600	- 20850	14450			16900	11150	360
, .	,					* 16550	13300	12650	**50	• 9950	6550			\$100	5200	8920
,)					• 37350	28550	• 27350	19050	• 21550	14050			17900	11400	350
-1500	,			10900	10900	* 16600	13250	• 12500	\$750	• 9850	6450			* 8450	5600	8420
-60)	l		* 24850	* 24850	* 35950	28500	* 27100	18850	• 21200	13950			18600	12300	340
-3000)			19700	19700	15050	13400	11600	**00	* 8750	6550			* 8550	6450	7600
-120				43050	* 43050	* 32650	28850	• 24950	19000					18800	14300	300
-4500)			• 15750	15750	12250	12250	• 9100	* 9100					* 8300	* 8300	6330
-180)			* 33850	* 33850	• 26200	. 56500	19100	19100					18200	18200	250

Illustration 133 g06346757

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg~$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m ~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8 m ~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 600 mm (23.6 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

(mm) (inch)		1500 60		:000 120		4500 180		.000 240		'500 300	•	9000		- 	
	1	G#	1	Ġ.	6	æ	10	뫈	1	C.	10		1	<u> </u>	(mm) (inch)
7500													* 7300	• 7300	7340
300													16100	* 16100	290
6000							* \$450	* \$450	* 7850	7550			* 7000	6450	8250
240							* 18400	18400	17200	16250			* 15400	14350	330
4500					12250	• 12250	• 9600	• 9600	. 8300	7350	ŀ		* 7000	5700	8820
180					• 26200	• 26200	• 20750	• 20750	18100	15850			• 15350	12600	350
3000					15200	14650	10950	9750	9000	7100	* 7950	5400	* 7200	5300	9110
120					• 32550	31600	• 23700	21050	19500	15300			• 15850	11700	360
1500					14050	13850	12100	9300	9600	6850	* \$150	5300	* 7700	5200	9140
60					* 34250	29850	* 26150	20100	• 20850	14800			16900	11450	360
0					16550	13600	12650	9050	9950	6700			* 8250	5300	8920
0					• 37350	29250	• 27350	19500	• 21550	14400			18150	11700	350
-1500			10900	10900	16600	13600	* 12500	\$ 9 50	• 9850	6650			* 8450	5700	8420
-60			• 24850	• 24850	• 35950	29200	• 27100	19300	• 21200	14300			18600	12600	340
-3000			19700	19700	• 15050	13750	11600	9050	* 8750	6750	ŀ		* 8550	6650	7600
-120			* 43050	• 43050	* 32650	29550	* 24950	19450					* 18800	14650	300
-4500			* 15750	15750	12250	* 12250	• 9100	9100					* 8300	* \$300	6330
-180			• 33850	• 33850	• 26200	• 26200	19100	19100					18200	• 18200	250

Illustration 134 g06346764

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg~$ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 800~mm~ (31.5 inch) heavy-duty track shoes.

(mm) (inch)			500 60		:000 120		1500 180		6000 240		7500 300	•	1000		, 2	
	<u> </u>	.	Ð				æ	1				Į.			<u>.</u>	(mm) (inch)
7500	1													* 7300	7050	7340
300														16100	15800	290
6000								* 8450	* 8450	* 7850	6750			* 7000	5750	8250
240								18400	18400	17200	14500			* 15400	12750	330
4500						• 12250	• 12250	9600	9150	. 8300	6550			* 7000	5050	8820
180						* 26200	• 26200	20750	19750	* 18100	14100			• 15350	11150	350
3000						• 15200	12800	10950	8650	9000	6300	* 7950	4800	* 7200	4700	9110
120						* 32550	27700	* 23700	18600	* 19500	13550			* 15850	10350	360
1500	1					• 14050	12050	12100	8200	• 9600	6050	7900	4700	* 7700	4600	9140
60						* 34250	26000	* 26150	17650	* 20850	13050			* 16900	10050	360
0						• 16550	11800	12650	7950	• 9950	5900			7950	4650	8920
0						* 37350	25450	* 27350	17100	* 21550	12700			17500	10300	350
-1500				10900	10900	• 16600	11800	12500	7850	9850	5850			* 8450	5050	8420
-60				* 24850	* 24850	* 35950	25400	27100	16900	* 21200	12550			* 18600	11100	340
-3000		П		19700	19700	* 15050	11950	11600	7900	* 8750	5900			* 8550	5850	7600
-120				* 43050	43050	* 32650	25750	• 24950	17050					* 18800	12900	300
-4500				15750	15750	* 12250	• 12250	9100	8200					* \$300	7700	6330
-180				* 33850	* 33850	* 26200	• 26200	19100	17750					* 18200	17200	250

Illustration 135 g06347300

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8 m (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 600 mm (23.6 inch) track shoes (LN).

	(mm) (inch)			500 60		:000 1 20		1500 180		:000 240		7500 300	•	9000	4	<u>_</u>	
	-1	: # : Lb	4			æ	14	æ	14	Œ		Œ.	Į,	Œ,	P	ŒP	(mm) (inch)
-	7500	┪													• 7300	7100	7340
	300	- 1													16100	15950	290
1	6000								* 8450	* 8450	* 7850	6800			* 7000	5800	8250
	240								18400	18400	• 17200	14600			• 15400	12850	330
-	4500						* 12250	• 12250	• 9600	9250	. 8300	6600			• 7000	5100	8820
	180						* 26200	• 26200	• 20750	19900	12100	14200			• 15350	11250	350
	3000						* 15200	12950	10950	8700	• 9000	6350	* 7950	4850	* 7200	4750	9110
I	120						* 32550	27950	* 23700	18800	19500	13650			* 15850	10450	360
	1500						14050	12200	12100	8250	9600	6100	8000	4750	* 7700	4600	9140
	60						* 34250	26250	* 26150	17850	• 20850	13150			• 16900	10150	360
	0						• 16550	11950	• 12650	8000	• 9950	5950			8050	4700	8920
	0						* 37350	25650	• 27350	17250	* 21550	12800			17650	10400	350
	-1500				10900	10900	* 16600	11900	• 12500	7900	• 9850	5900			* 8450	5100	8420
	-60				* 24850	* 24850	* 35950	25650	• 27100	17050	• 21200	12700			• 18600	11200	340
	-3000				19700	19700	* 15050	12050	* 11600	8000	* 8750	6000			* \$550	5900	7600
	-120				43050	43050	* 32650	25950	• 24950	17200					* 18800	13050	300
	-4500				15750	15750	* 12250	* 12250	9100	8250					* \$300	7750	6330
_	-180				* 33850	* 33850	* 26200	• 26200	19100	17900					* 18200	17350	250

Illustration 136 g06347323

336~GC: 6800~kg~ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 700~mm~ (27.5 inch) track shoes (LN).

(mm) (inch)		1500 60	_	120		1500 180	· ·	-000 240		'500 300	٠	9000		=	
;						Œ.		푠		B	140	C.			(mm) (inch)
7500	1												* 7390	7150	7340
300													16100	16100	290
6000							* 8450	* 8450	* 7850	6850			* 7000	5850	8250
240							18400	18400	17200	14750			15400	13000	330
4500					* 12250	12250	9600	9300	* 8300	6650			* 7000	5150	8820
180					- 26200	• 26200	• 20750	20050	18100	14350			15350	11400	350
3000					• 15200	13050	10950	8800	9000	6400	• 7950	4900	1 7200	4800	9110
120					* 32550	28200	* 23700	18950	19500	13800			15850	10550	360
1500					14050	12300	12100	8350	9600	6150	8100	4800	1 7790	4650	9140
60					* 34250	26500	* 26150	18000	* 20850	13300			16900	10300	360
0					• 16550	12050	12650	8100	9950	6000			8100	4750	8920
0					* 37350	25950	* 27350	17450	* 21550	12950			17850	10500	350
-1500			10900	10900	* 16600	12050	12500	\$000	9850	5950			* \$450	5150	8420
-60			* 24850	* 24850	* 35950	25900	* 27100	17250	* 21200	12800			18600	11300	340
-3000			19700	19700	• 15050	12200	11600	8100	* 8750	6050			* \$550	5950	7600
-120			* 43050	* 43050	* 32650	26250	* 24950	17400					18800	13200	300
-4500			• 15750	15750	12250	12250	9100	8350					. \$300	7850	6330
-180			* 33850	* 33850	- 26200	• 26200	19100	18100					18200	17550	250

Illustration 137 g06347330

 $336~GC:\,6800~kg~$ (14991 lb) counterweight,6.5 m ~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8 m ~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 600 mm ~ (23.6 inch) track shoes (LN).

(mm) (inch)	1	500 60		:000 120		1500 180		.000 240		7500 300	ę	9000	£	_F~1	
٠, -		\mathbf{G}				Œ		1				Œ.	14	P	(mm) (inch)
7500	1												* 7300	7150	7340
300													* 16100	16050	290
6000							* 8450	* 8450	* 7850	6850			* 7000	5850	\$250
240							18400	* 18400	17200	14700			• 15400	12950	330
4500					* 12250	• 12250	9600	9300	* 8300	6650			• 7000	5150	8820
180					* 26200	• 26200	* 20750	20050	* 18100	14300			• 15350	11350	350
3000					• 15200	13000	10950	8750	• 9000	6400	* 7950	4850	• 7200	4800	9110
120					* 32550	28150	* 23700	18900	* 19500	13800			* 15850	10550	360
1500					14050	12250	12100	8350	• 9600	6150	8050	4750	• 7700	4650	9140
60					* 34250	26450	* 26150	17950	* 20850	13250			* 16900	10250	360
0					* 16550	12000	12650	8050	• 9950	6000			\$100	4750	8920
0					* 37350	25850	* 27350	17400	* 21550	12900			17800	10450	350
-1500			10900	10900	* 16600	12000	12500	8000	9850	5950			* 8450	5100	8420
-60			• 24850	• 24850	* 35950	25850	* 27100	17200	* 21200	12800			18600	11300	340
-3000			19700	19700	15050	12150	11600	8050	* 8750	6050			* 8550	5950	7600
-120			• 43050	• 43050	* 32650	26150	* 24950	17350					• 18800	13150	300
-4500			15750	15750	12250	• 12250	9100	8350					* 8300	7800	6330
-180			* 33850	* 33850	* 26200	• 26200	19100	18050					* 18200	17500	250

Illustration 138 g06347341

336~GC: 6800~kg~ (14991 lb) counterweight, 6.5~m~ (21 ft 4 inch) reach boom, 2.8~m~ (9 ft 2 inch) stick, 600~mm~ (23.6 inch) heavy-duty track shoes (LN).

Identification Information

i08686529

Plate Locations and Film Locations

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

The Product Identification Number (PIN) will be used to identify a powered machine that is designed for an operator to ride.

Cat ® products such as engines, transmissions, and major attachments that are not designed for an operator to ride are identified by Serial Numbers.

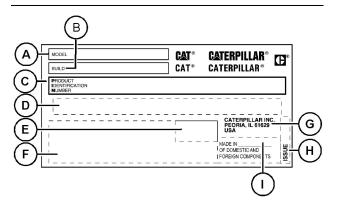
For quick reference, record the identification numbers in the spaces that are provided below the illustration.

Product Identification Number (PIN) Plate



Illustration 139 g06276619

The PIN plate is positioned on the front of the machine, close to the operator compartment.



Manufacturer Name and Address _______

Model (A)______

Build (B)______

Product Identification Number (C)______

Bar Code (D)______

Month and Year of Manufacture Plate (If Required) (E)_____

Regional Certification Plate (If Required) (F)______

Address of Manufacturer (G)______

Issue (H)_____

Local regulation may require documentation of the month and/or year of manufacture in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Comply with these regulations

Country of Origin Info Plate (If Required) (I)_____

Regional Product Marking (If Equipped)

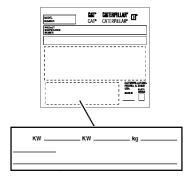


Illustration 141 g06650998

Regional marking plate

This plate is positioned on the bottom left side of the PIN plate or near the PIN plate.

Note: The regional marking plate or plates are installed on machines that meet the applicable requirements that were effective at that time and may differ from the one shown above.

Regional product marking may include one or more of the following:

CE

CE mark



UKCA mark



EAC mark



Gulf Standardization Organization (GSO) mark



Ukraine mark

The following information may be stamped onto the regional product marking plate. For quick reference, record this information in the spaces that are provided below:

- Engine Power Primary Engine (kW)____
- Engine Power for Additional Engine (If Equipped)
- Typical Machine Operating Weight (kg)______
- Month and/or Year of Manufacture______
- Machine Type______

Eurasian Economic Union

Manufacturer Information

Manufacturer:

Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Street Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

Entity authorized by the manufacturer at the territory of Eurasian Economic Union:

Caterpillar Eurasia LLC 75, Sadovnicheskaya Emb. Moscow 115035, Russia

Machine Specification Film

The machine specification film is on machines that are going into Japan.

The Japanese Industrial Safety and Health Act requires machine specifications to be displayed on a film that can easily be seen by the operator.

If equipped, this film will be on the cab door.



Illustration 142

g06178867

Typical example

Electromagnetic Emissions

Note: This label is on machines that are going into Canada.

CANADA ICES-002

NMB2

Illustration 143

g06063443

If equipped, this label is located next to the PIN plate. This label verifies that the product meets the requirements of ICES-002 Issue 6. Compliance to ICES-002 Issue 6 is accomplished by meeting electromagnetic emissions industry standard CISPR-12.

China Pin Plate

Will be located next to the pin plate or on the pin plate.



Illustration 144 g03153576

Engine Serial Number

This label is on the engine.

Engine Serial Number _

Sound Certification

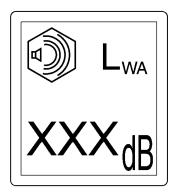


Illustration 145

g06675270

Sound certification film

A typical example of this film is shown.

A certification film is used to verify the environmental sound certification on machines that are certified to the regional requirements. A film installed on your machine will have a value. The value that is listed on the film indicates the guaranteed exterior sound power level ($L_{\text{\tiny wa}}$) at the time of manufacture for the conditions that are specified in the following sound test procedures:

- · "ISO 6395:1988"
- European Union "2000/14/EC" amended by "2005/ 88/EC"
- United Kingdom "2001 No. 1701" amended by "2005 No. 3525"

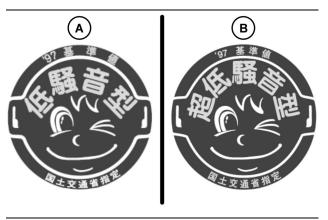


Illustration 146

g03105800

- (A) Low Noise Film
- (B) Super Low Noise Film

If equipped, these certification labels are used to verify the Japan Ministry of Land, Infrastructure, Transportation, and Tourism (MLIT) noise designation according to the Japan "Designation Rule of Low Noise Type Construction Machine".

Low Noise (A) – Verifies that the Japan "MLIT" designates the machine as a "Low Noise" type construction machine.

Super Low Noise (B) – Verifies that the Japan "MLIT" designates the machine as a "Super Low Noise" type construction machine.

i08085827

Emissions Certification Film

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000; 7405

Consult your Cat dealer for an Emission Control Warranty Statement.

The emission certification film is on the engine.

Product Information Section

Declaration of Conformity

Declaration of Conformity (European Union)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Table 19

114

An EU Declaration of Conformity document was provided with the machine if it was manufactured to comply with specific requirements for the European Union. In order to determine the details of the applicable Directives, review the complete EU Declaration of Conformity provided with the machine. The extract shown below from an EU Declaration of Conformity for machines that are declared compliant to "2006/42/EC" applies only to those machines originally "CE" marked by the manufacturer listed and which have not since been modified.

ORIGINAL EU DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Manufacturer: Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Street, Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA

Person authorized to compile the Technical File and to communicate relevant part (s) of the Technical File to the Authorities of European Union Member States on request:

Standards & Regulations Manager, Caterpillar France S.A.S

40 Avenue Leon-Blum 38000 Grenoble, France

, hereby certify that the construction equipment specified hereunder

Description: Generic Denomination: Earth-moving Equipment

> Function: Hydraulic Excavator

Model/Type: 336

Serial Number:

Commercial Name: Caterpillar

Fulfills all the relevant provisions of the following Directives

Directives	Notified Body	Document No.
2000/14/EC amended by 2005/88/EC, Note (1)		
2006/42/EC	N/A	
2014/30/EU	N/A	

Note (1)	Guaranteed Sound Power LeveldB (A) Annex VI
	Representative Equipment Type Sound Power LeveldB (A)
	[Engine Power per ISO 14396 kW, Rated engine speed rpm
	Technical Documentation accessible through person listed above authorized to compile the Technical File
	Harmonised standards taken into consideration: EN 474-1: 2006+A4: 2013+AC: 2014;
	EN 474-5: 2006+A3: 2013
	EN 13309: 2010

Done at:	Signature
Date:	Name/Position

Note: The above information was correct as of September 2018, but may be subject to change, please refer to the individual declaration of conformity issued with the machine for exact details.

Declaration of Conformity (Great Britain)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Table 20

A Declaration of Conformity document was provided with the machine if it was manufactured to comply with specific requirements for the Great Britain. In order to determine the details of the applicable legislation, review the complete Declaration of Conformity provided with the machine. The extract shown below from a Great Britain Declaration of Conformity for machines that are declared compliant to 2008 No. 1597 applies only to those machines originally "UKCA" marked by the manufacturer listed and which have not since been modified.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY							
Manufacturer: (Caterpillar Inc., 100 N.E. Adams Stre	et, Peoria, Illinois 61629, USA					
Person authoriz request:	zed to compile the Technical File a	nd to communicate relevant part (s) of the T	echnical File to the Authorities on				
		Standards & Regulations Manager Ca 40 Avenue Leon-Blum 38000 Grenoble	•				
l, the undersign	ed,, hereby certify that	the construction equipment specified herei	under				
Description:	Generic Denomination:	Earth - moving Equipment					
	Function:	Hydraulic Excavator					
	Model/Type:	336 GC					
	Serial Number:						
	Commercial Name:	Caterpillar					
Fulfills all the rele	evant provisions of these regulations Legislation	and/or other enactments as listed below: Approved Body	Document No.				
2008 No.	1597	N/A					
2016 No.		N/A					
2001 No.	1701 amended by 2005 No. 3525, N	ote (1) Note (2)					
Note	Engine Power per k\	ound Power LeveldB (A) Sound Power LeveldB (A) N Rated engine speed rpm sible through person listed above authorized to	compile the Technical File				
Note	(2) If applicable, information related	to Approved Body.					
Designated stan	dards taken into consideration: (for 2	008 No. 1597 and 2016 No. 1091 Regulation of	r enactments only)				
Done at:			Signature				
Date:			Name/Position				

Note: The above information was correct as of June 2021, but may be subject to change, please refer to the individual declaration of conformity issued with the machine for exact details.

116 M0110641-02

Operation Section

Before Operation

i07103304

Mounting and Dismounting

SMCS Code: 6700; 7000



Illustration 147

g06224270

Typical example

Mount the machine and dismount the machine only at locations that have steps and/or handholds. Before you mount the machine, clean the steps and the handholds. Inspect the steps and handholds. Make all necessary repairs.

Face the machine whenever you get on the machine and whenever you get off the machine.

Maintain a three-point contact with the steps and with the handholds.

Note: Three-point contact can be two feet and one hand. Three-point contact can also be one foot and two hands.

Do not mount a moving machine. Do not dismount a moving machine. Never jump off the machine. Do not carry tools or supplies when you try to mount the machine or when you try to dismount the machine. Use a hand line to pull equipment onto the platform. Do not use any controls as handholds when you enter the operator compartment or when you exit the operator compartment.

Machine Access System Specifications

The machine access system has been designed to meet the intent of the technical requirements in "ISO 2867 Earth-moving Machinery – Access Systems". The access system provides for operator access to the operator station and to conduct the maintenance procedures described in Maintenance section.

Alternate Exit

Machines that are equipped with cabs have alternate exits. For additional information, see Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Alternate Exit".

i07254776

Daily Inspection

SMCS Code: 1000; 6319; 6700; 7000

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

At operating temperature, the engine coolant is hot and under pressure.

Steam can cause personal injury.

Check the coolant level only after the engine has been stopped and the cooling system pressure cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

Remove the cooling system pressure cap slowly to relieve pressure.

Cooling system conditioner contains alkali. Avoid contact with the skin and eyes to prevent personal injury.

NOTICE

Accumulated grease and oil on a machine is a fire hazard. Remove this debris with steam cleaning or high pressure water, at least every 1000 hours or each time any significant quantity of oil is spilled on a machine.

For maximum service life of the machine, perform a thorough walk-around inspection before you mount the machine and before you start the engine.

First 50 Hours

Daily, perform the procedures that are applicable to your machine:

 Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate" Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Bucket Linkage - Lubricate"

Daily Basis

Daily, perform the procedures that are applicable to your machine:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Cooling System Coolant Level - Check"
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine Oil Level - Check"
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel System Water Separator Drain"
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain"
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check"
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Indicators and Gauges Test"
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Seat Belt -Inspect"
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Track Adjustment - Inspect"
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Travel Alarm - Test"
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Undercarriage - Check"

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Maintenance Interval Schedule" for all maintenance recommendations.

Note: Watch closely for leaks. If you observe a leak, find the source of the leak and correct the leak. If you suspect a leak or you observe a leak, check the fluid levels more frequently.

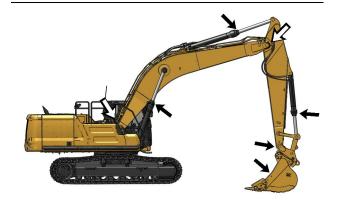


Illustration 148

g06267412

Inspect the attachment control linkage, attachment cylinders, and attachment for damage or excessive wear. Make any necessary repairs.

Inspect the lights for broken bulbs and for broken lenses. Replace any broken bulbs and any broken lenses.

Inspect the engine compartment for any trash buildup. Remove any trash buildup from the engine compartment.

Inspect the cooling system for any leaks, for faulty hoses and for any trash buildup. Correct any leaks. Remove any trash from the radiator.

Inspect all the belts for the engine attachments. Replace any belts that are worn, frayed, or broken.

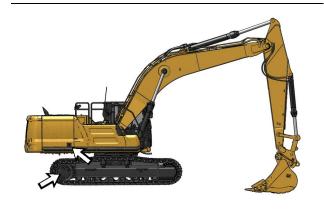


Illustration 149

g06267426

Inspect the hydraulic system for leaks. Inspect the tank, cylinder rod seals, hoses, tubes, plugs, connections, and fittings. Correct any leaks in the hydraulic system.

Inspect the tubes and hoses along the boom and stick for wear and leaks. Replace any hoses or tubes that are worn or leak.

Inspect the differential and the final drives for leaks. Make any necessary repairs.

Inspect the swing drive for leaks.

Make sure that all covers and guards are securely attached. Inspect the covers and the guards for damage.

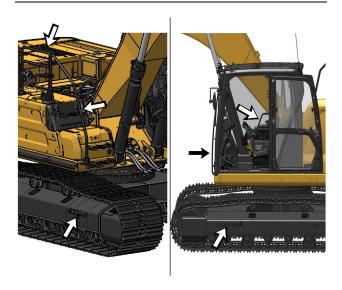


Illustration 150 g06267482

Inspect the steps, the walkways, and the handholds. Clean the steps, the walkways, and the handholds. Make any necessary repairs.

Inspect the operator compartment for trash buildup. Check for trash buildup under the floorplate and on the crankcase guard. Keep these areas clean.

Adjust the mirrors to achieve the best visibility.

Machine Operation

i06952448

Alternate Exit

SMCS Code: 7310

Rear Window with Ring Seal (If Equipped)

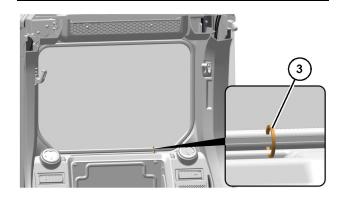


Illustration 151 g06187008



Alternate Exit – The rear window serves as an alternate exit.

To remove the rear window, pull ring (3) and completely remove the window seal, then push out the glass. Climb through the rear window opening to exit the cab.

Rear Window with Lever (If Equipped)

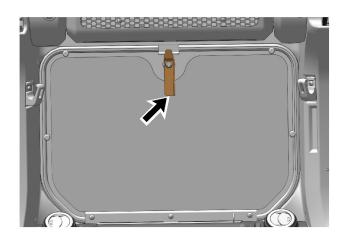


Illustration 152

g06213470

Inside lever in latched position



Alternate Exit – The rear window serves as an alternate exit.

To remove the rear window, rotate handle from its latched position, then push out the glass. Climb through the rear window opening to exit the cab.

i07868899



Illustration 153 g06213471

The window is also equipped with an outside handle. If the operator is unable, outside personnel can rotate the outside handle and pull the window out.

Seat

SMCS Code: 5258-025; 7312-025; 7324; 7327

Comfort Seat



Illustration 154

g06225151

- (1) Headrest
- (2) Backrest adjuster
- (3) Seat and console fore and aft adjuster
- (4) Indicator
- (5) Seat height adjustment lever
- (6) Seat fore and aft lever

The operator can adjust the height of headrest (1). To adjust the headrest, hold the headrest with both hands. Move the headrest up and down. Release the headrest when the desired position is attained. The headrest will remain in the desired position.

Pull up on backrest adjuster (2) to release the lock. Move the backrest to the desired position and then release the adjuster.

Lift up on fore and aft adjuster (3) to release the seat from the locked position. Adjust the seat and console forward or rearward to the desired position and then release the lever to lock the seat.

Use seat height adjustment lever (5) to adjust the seat for the operator's height and weight. Move the adjuster switch to the "+" symbol to raise the height. Ratchet the seat upward without sitting in the seat. Then sit in the seat to check the color of indicator (4). When the indicator is showing green, the seat is in the right range for the operator. Further adjustment can be made as long as the indicator stays green.

To lower the seat, move the adjust switch to the "-" symbol. Ratchet the adjuster downward without sitting in the seat. Then sit in the seat to check the color of indicator (4). When the indicator is showing green, the seat is in the right range for the operator. Further adjustment can be made as long as the indicator stays green.

Pull upward on seat fore and aft lever (6) to release the cushion lock. Adjust the seat cushion forward or backward to the desired position and then release the lock to lock the cushion in place.

i07092308

Seat Belt

SMCS Code: 7327

Note: This machine was equipped with a seat belt when the machine was shipped from Caterpillar. At the time of installation, the seat belt and the instructions for installation of the seat belt meet the SAE J386 and ISO 6683 standards. Consult your Cat dealer for all replacement parts.

Always check the condition of the seat belt and the condition of the mounting hardware before you operate the machine.

Seat Belt Adjustment for Retractable Seat Belts

Fastening The Seat Belt

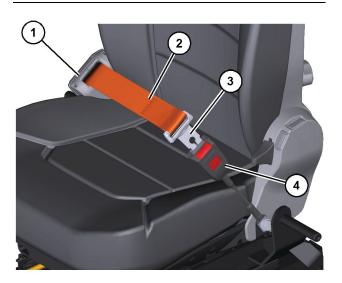


Illustration 155 g06223891

Pull seat belt (2) out of retractor (1) in a continuous motion.

Fasten seat belt catch (3) into buckle (4). Make sure that the seat belt is placed low across the lap of the operator.

The retractor will adjust the belt length and the retractor will lock in place. The comfort ride sleeve will allow the operator to have limited movement.

Releasing The Seat Belt



Illustration 156 g06223894

Push the release button on the buckle to release the seat belt. The seat belt will automatically retract into the retractor.

Extension of the Seat Belt

WARNING

When using retractable seat belts, do not use seat belt extensions, or personal injury or death can result.

The retractor system may or may not lock up depending on the length of the extension and the size of the person. If the retractor does not lock up, the seat belt will not retain the person.

Longer, non-retractable seat belts and extensions for the non-retractable seat belts are available.

Caterpillar requires only non-retractable seat belts to be used with a seat belt extension.

Consult your Cat dealer for longer seat belts and for information on extending the seat belts.

i08669256

Operator Controls

SMCS Code: 7300; 7301; 7451

Note: Your machine may not be equipped with all the controls that are described in this topic.

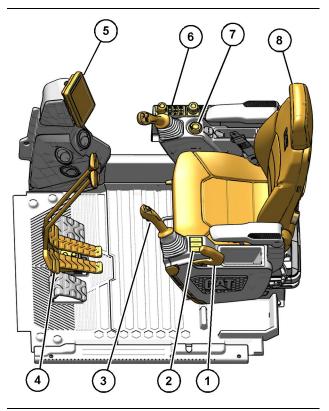


Illustration 157

g06471008

- (1) Hydraulic lockout control
- (2) Left side switch panel
- (3) Joystick controls
- (4) Travel controls
- (5) Monitor
- (6) Right side switch panel
- (7) Engine start switch
- (8) Operator seat

Hydraulic Lockout Control (1)

The lever for the hydraulic lockout control is at the left side of the left console.



Locked – Move the travel levers/pedals and move the joysticks to the HOLD (center) position. Move the lever for the

hydraulic lockout control backward to the LOCKED position. All the factory installed hydraulic controls will become inoperable.

Note: Make sure that the lever for the hydraulic lockout control is in the LOCKED position before attempting to start the engine. If the lever is in the UNLOCKED position, the engine start switch will not function.



Unlocked – Move the lever for the hydraulic lockout control forward to the UNLOCKED position. All the factory

installed hydraulic controls will become operable.



Tilt - For machines equipped with the tilt-up console, pull the lever to the rearmost position to release the console lock and tilt the console upward for easier exit and entry.

Left Side Switch Panel (2)



Illustration 158 q06219690

Beacon Light Switch (2A) (If equipped)

Beacon Light Switch - Push the top of the switch to turn on the beacon light. Push the bottom of the switch to turn off the beacon light.

Quick Coupler Control (2B) (If equipped)



If equipped, the switch for the quick coupler control is on the left console. The switch is equipped with a spring loaded lock button. To operate the switch, the lock button must be pushed forward to release the switch. With the lock held forward, press the rear of the switch downward to uncouple the bucket or work tool. Press the button again to attach the bucket or work tool.

Note: An alarm will sound whenever the switch has been activated to lock or unlock a work tool.

For further details, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Quick Coupler Operation".

Joystick Controls (3)

The joystick control is used to control the functions of the machine implements. For more information on the individual functions of the joysticks, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Joystick Controls".

Travel Control (4)



Illustration 159

q06178249

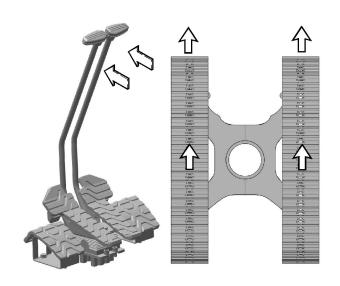
Position for normal travel

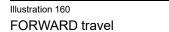
- (A) Rear of machine
- (B) Final drive
- (C) Idler

When you travel, make sure that final drive sprockets (B) are under the rear of the machine.

Stop – Release the travel levers/pedals to stop the machine. When you release the travel levers/pedals from any position, the travel levers/pedals will return to the CENTER position. The travel brakes will be applied.

Move both of the travel levers or both of the travel pedals equally in the same direction to travel straight.





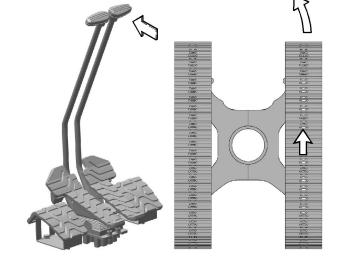


Illustration 162
Pivot left turn (FORWARD)

g06178288

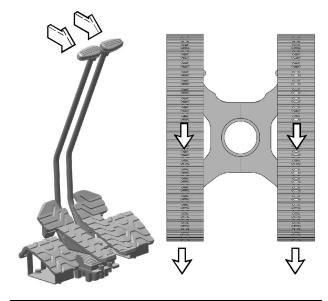


Illustration 161
REVERSE travel

g06178283

g06178269

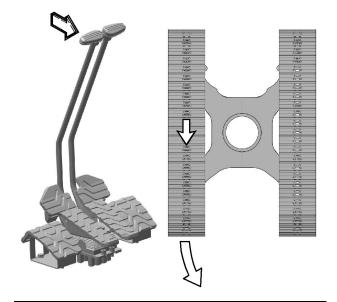


Illustration 163
Pivot Left Turn (REVERSE)

g06178294

M0110641-02

125

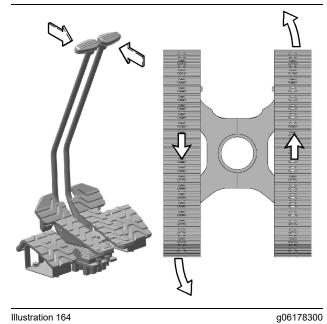
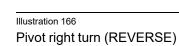


Illustration 164
Counterrotate turn (LEFT)



g06178308

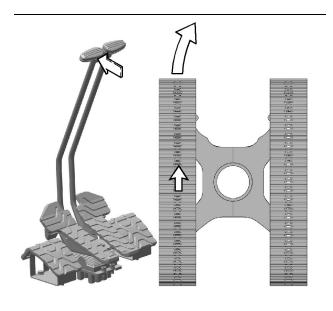
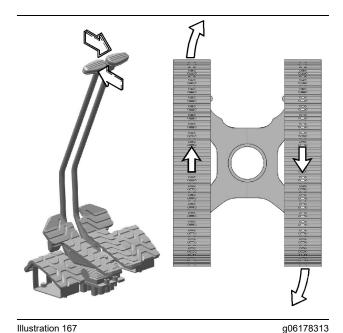


Illustration 165
Pivot right turn (FORWARD)

g06178305



Counterrotate turn (RIGHT)

Monitor (5)

The monitor is used to display various operating information of the machine. For more information on the operation of the monitor, refer to "Monitoring System".

Engine Start Switch (7)

NOTICE

The engine start switch must be in the ON position and the engine must be running in order to maintain electrical functions and hydraulic functions. This procedure must be followed in order to prevent serious machine damage.

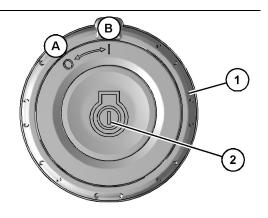


Illustration 168

g06180554

- (A) Off
- (B) On
- (1) Engine start ring
- (2) Start button



OFF - Turn the engine start ring (1) to the OFF position (A) to stop the engine.



ON - To activate the electrical circuits in the cab and enable engine starting, turn the engine start ring (1) clockwise to the ON position (B).



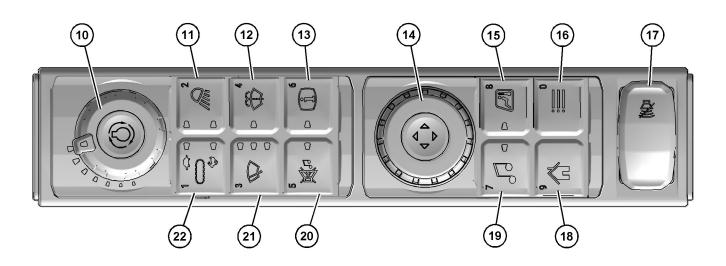
START - To start the engine, enter the code on the monitor. Press start button (2). After the engine starts, release the

Note: Pressing the start button with the engine on will also turn off the engine.

Operator's Seat (8)

There are different options for operators seats. Each operator seat and console have various adjustments to meet a wide range of operators. For more information, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Seat".

Right Side Switch Panel (6)



g06178333 Illustration 169

Right side switch panel

- (10) Engine speed / power mode control
- (11) Light switch
- (12) Window washer
- (13) Operator Information
- (14) Jog dial

- (15) Heating and air conditioning
- (16) Next menu
- (17) Travel alarm mute (If Equipped)
- (18) Home
- (19) Radio control

- (20) Radio mute switch
- (21) Window wiper
- (22) Travel speed control

Note: In addition to the intended functions, the buttons on the switch panel are numbered from 0-9. The numbered buttons can be used to enter numbers into the monitor for screens such as the passcode screen.

Engine Speed / Power Mode Control (10)

Engine Speed Control – Turn the dial to control the engine speed (engine rpm). Select the desired position from the seven available positions. Turn the dial counterclockwise to decrease the engine speed (engine rpm). Turn the dial clockwise to increase the engine speed (engine rpm).



Power Mode Control - Push in the dial to change the power mode settings. The **Power Mode Control allows the operator** to choose what power mode to operate the engine. The modes that can be selected are: "SMART" and "POWER".

Note: The default power mode setting can be set within the monitor. For more information, refer to "Monitoring System".

Light Switch (11)

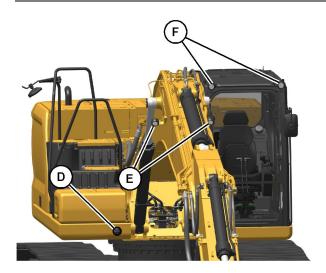


Illustration 170 g06178337



Light Switch - Push the switch to turn on the work lights.

Whenever you push the switch, you change the pattern of the work lights that are turned on. The indicator lights in the cab indicate the pattern of the work lights.

Pattern 1 – When you press the light switch once, the first indicator light turns on. When the first indicator light is on, the following work lights are turned on: work light (D), which is mounted on the chassis, and work lights (F), which are mounted on the cab.

Pattern 2 – When you press the light switch twice, the first indicator light and the second indicator light turn on. When the first indicator light and the second indicator lights are on, the following work lights are turned on: work light (D), which is mounted on the chassis, work lights (F), which are mounted on the cab, and work lights (E), which are mounted on the boom.

OFF - When both of the indicator lights are off, all the work lights are off.

Note: Your machine may be equipped with a premium surrounding lighting package with left side, right side and rear lights. Refer to "Monitoring System"Work Light Control for more information.

Note: Your machine may be equipped with a lighting system that has a time delay. When this system is installed, the exterior lights will not turn off for a predetermined amount of time after the engine start switch has been turned to the OFF position. Refer to "Monitoring System"Lighting Shutdown Timer for more information.

Window Washer (12)



Window Washer (12) - Push the switch to activate the window washer. While the switch is depressed, the indicator light

will come on and washer fluid will spray from the nozzle. The window wiper will also operate while the switch is depressed. After the switch is released for approximately 3 seconds, the window wiper will stop.

NOTICE

If the wiper does not operate with the switch in the ON position, turn the switch off immediately. Check the cause. If the switch remains on, motor failure can result.

NOTICE

If the washer is used continuously for more than 20 seconds or used when no washer solution comes out, motor failure can result.

Operator Information (13)



Help Button (13) - Press and hold this button to view the operator information screen. The indicator light will illuminate when the button is pressed.

Jog Dial (14)

The jog dial can be used to select items displayed on the monitor screen. The dial can be rotated 360 degrees. The dial can also be moved left, right, up, and down. The dial can be pushed in to make a selection.

Air Conditioning and Heating (15)



Air Conditioning and Heating (15) -Press this button to bring up the air conditioning and heating menu. The

indicator light will illuminate when the heating and cooling system is active. The jog dial (13) can be used to make selections. If equipped with a touch screen, the selections can be made by touching the monitor.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Air Conditioning and Heating Control for more information.

Next Menu (16)



Next Menu (16) - Press the next menu button to access the next higher menu. If there is not a menu above the current screen being viewed, the button will not do anything.

Refer to "Monitoring System" for more information.

Travel Alarm Mute Switch (17) (If Equipped)



Travel Alarm Mute Switch (17) - Press travel alarm mute switch (17) to mute the travel alarm.

Note: The travel alarm will sound when the travel levers or the travel pedals are activated.

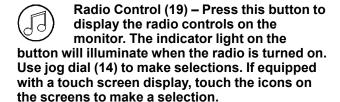
Home (18)



Home Key (18) - Press the home key to return to the default display at any time.

Refer to "Monitoring System" for more information.

Radio Control (19)



Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Radio for more information.

Radio Mute (20)



radio.

Radio Mute (20) - Press radio mute switch (20) to mute the radio. The indicator light will illuminate when mute is activated. Press the button again to unmute the

Window Wiper (21)



Window Wiper (21) – Push the switch to activate the window wiper. Whenever the switch is depressed, the mode of the window wiper will change according to the indicator light that is illuminated.

6 Second Delay – When the window wiper switch is depressed one time, the first indicator light will turn on. The window wiper will operate intermittently at six second intervals.

3 Second Delay – When the window wiper switch is depressed two times, the second indicator light will turn on. The window wiper will operate intermittently at three second intervals.

Continuous Operation – When the window wiper switch is depressed three times, the first indicator light and the second indicator light will turn on. The window wiper will operate continuously.

OFF – When the window wiper switch is depressed four times, the indicator lights will turn off. The window wiper stops.

Travel Speed Control (22)

WARNING

Do not change the setting of the travel speed control switch while you travel. Machine stability may be adversely affected.

Personal injury can result from sudden changes in machine stability.



Travel Speed Control Switch (22) -Press the travel speed control switch to select automatic travel speed or low

travel speed. When the engine start switch is on, the travel speed control switch is always set at the LOW SPEED position. Whenever the travel speed control switch is pressed, the travel speed changes. The indicator lights illuminate to show which speed selection is active.



LOW SPEED - Select the LOW SPEED position if you travel on rough surfaces or on soft surfaces or if you require a

great drawbar pull. Also, select the LOW SPEED position if you are loading a machine onto a trailer or you are unloading a machine from a trailer.



AUTOMATIC - If you travel on a hard, level surface at a fast speed, select the **AUTO** position.

Continuous driving at high speed should be limited to 2 hours. If you need to continue driving at high speed for more than 2 hours, stop the machine for 10 minutes. This process will cool down the travel drives before you resume driving.

USB/Aux Ports (23) (If Equipped)

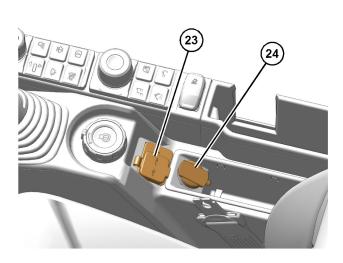


Illustration 171 (23) USB/AUX/MIC port g06204950

(24) 12V power receptacle



USB - The USB port is used to play music from a portable device. The USB symbol on the radio screen on the monitor must be selected.

AUX - The AUX port is used to play music from a portable device. AUX must be selected on the radio screen on the monitor.

12V Power Receptacle (24) & (25)

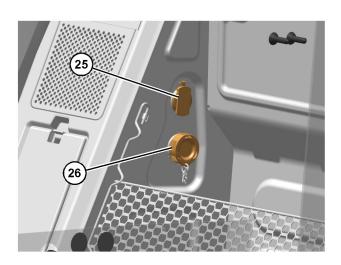


Illustration 172 g06178354

Electronic Technician service port



12V Power Receptacle - The power receptacles can be used to power automotive electrical equipment or accessories. The power receptacle only operates when the engine start switch is in the ON position.

Service Port (26)

An Electronic Technician (ET) service port is located inside the cab behind the seat. This service port allows service personnel to connect a laptop computer that is equipped with Electronic Technician. Service personnel can use electronic technician to diagnose machine and engine systems.

Consult your Cat [®] dealer for additional information.

Dome Light (27)

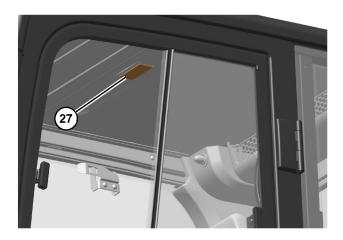


Illustration 173

The dome light has three different positions. When the dome light is in the center position (horizontal), the light will come on when the door is open and shut off when the door is closed.

When the left side of the light is pressed, the lamp will be inoperable.

When the right side of the light is pressed, the lamp will be illuminated until the lamp is switched to another position.

i07357258

Battery Disconnect Switch

SMCS Code: 1411-B11



Illustration 174 g06264946

The battery disconnect switch is on the left side of the machine behind the rear access door.

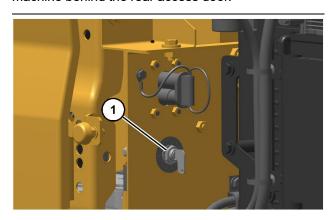


Illustration 175

g06264951

(1) Battery disconnect switch



turned.

Battery Disconnect Switch – The battery disconnect switch can be used to disconnect the battery from the machines electrical system. The key must be inserted into the battery disconnect switch before the battery disconnect switch can be

ON - To activate the electrical system, insert the disconnect switch key and turn the battery disconnect switch clockwise. The battery disconnect switch must be turned to the ON to enable battery power to start the engine.



OFF – To deactivate the electrical system, turn the battery disconnect switch counterclockwise to the OFF

position.

The battery disconnect switch and the engine start switch perform different functions. The entire electrical system is disabled when you turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. The battery remains connected to the electrical system when you turn the engine start switch to the OFF position.

Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position and remove the key when you service the electrical system or any other machine components. If installed with a cover lock, close the cover and install a padlock.

It is also good practice to use the disconnect switch after you operate the machine. This will prevent the battery from being discharged. The following problems can cause battery discharge:

- · short circuits
- · current draw via some components
- vandalism

i08001446

Product Link

SMCS Code: 7490; 7606

Note: Your machine may be equipped with the Cat [®] Product Link[™] system.

The Cat Product Link communication device utilizes cellular and/or satellite technology to communicate equipment information. This information is communicated to Caterpillar, Cat dealers, and Caterpillar customers. The Cat Product Link communication device uses Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite receivers.

The capability of two-way communication between the equipment and a remote user is available with the Cat Product Link communication device. The remote user can be a dealer or a customer.

Data Broadcasts

Data concerning this machine, the condition of the machine, and the operation of the machine is being transmitted by Cat Product Link to Caterpillar and/or Cat dealers. The data is used to serve the customer better and to improve upon Cat products and services. The information transmitted may include: machine serial number, machine location, and operational data, including but not limited to: fault codes, emissions data, fuel usage, service meter hours, software, and hardware version numbers and installed attachments.

Caterpillar and/or Cat dealers may use this information for various purposes. Refer to the following list for possible uses:

- Providing services to the customer and/or the machine
- Checking or maintaining Cat Product Link equipment
- Monitoring the health of the machine or performance
- Helping maintain the machine and/or improve the efficiency of the machine
- Evaluating or improving Cat products and services
- Complying with legal requirements and valid court orders
- Performing market research
- Offering the customer new products and services

Caterpillar may share some or all the collected information with Caterpillar affiliated companies, dealers, and authorized representatives. Caterpillar will not sell or rent collected information to any other third party and will exercise reasonable efforts to keep the information secure. Caterpillar recognizes and respects customer privacy. For more information, please contact your local Cat dealer.

Operation in a Blast Site for Product Link Radios

WARNING

This equipment is equipped with a Cat® Product Link communication device. When electric detonators are being used for blasting operations, radio frequency devices can cause interference with electric detonators for blasting operations which can result in serious injury or death. The Product Link communication device should be deactivated within the distance mandated under all applicable national or local regulatory requirements. In the absence of any regulatory requirements Caterpillar recommends the end user perform their own risk assessment to determine safe operating distance.

Refer to your products Operation and Maintenance Manual Supplement, "Regulatory Compliance Information" for more information.

For information regarding the methods to disable the Cat Product Link communication device, please refer to your specific Cat Product Link manual listed below:

 Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8142, " Product Link - PL121, PL321, PL522, and PL523" Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8832, " Product Link PLE702, PLE602, PLE601, PL641, PL631, PL542, PL240, PL241, PL243, PL141, PL131, PL161, PL083 and PL042 Systems"

Note: If no radio disable switch is installed and the equipment will be operating near a blast zone, a Product Link radio disable switch may be installed on the equipment. The switch will allow the Cat Product Link communication device to be shut off by the operator from the equipment control panel. For more details and installation procedures, refer to the following:

- Special Instruction, REHS7339, "Installation Procedure for Product Link PLE640 Systems"
- Special Instruction, REHS8850, "Installation Procedure for the Elite Product Link PLE601, PLE641, and PLE631 Systems"
- Special Instruction, SEHS0377, "Installation Procedure for the Product Link PL131, PL141, and PL161 Systems"
- Special Instruction, REHS9111, "Installation Procedure for the Pro Product Link PL641 and PL631 Systems"
- Special Instruction, M0098124, "Installation Procedure for Pro Product Link PL243 Systems"
- Special Instruction, M0109130, "Installation Procedure for Product Link PL683 and PL783 Systems"

i07785958

Machine Security System

SMCS Code: 7631

General Information

NOTICE

This machine may be equipped with a Cat [®] Machine Security System (MSS) and may not start under certain conditions.



Illustration 176

g06223917

Machines that are equipped with Cat MSS can be identified by a decal in the operator station Read the following information and know your machines settings. Your Cat dealer can identify your machine settings.

The Cat Machine Security System (MSS) discourages unwanted operation of a machine. When armed, the MSS requires operator login to start the engine. The following methods of operator login to disarm the security system are available:

- Cat Bluetooth® key fob
- · Cat App: Fleet Management
- Passcode

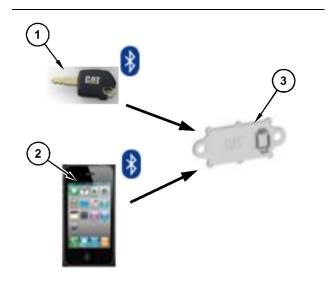


Illustration 177

g06212167

Bluetooth Connections

- (1) Cat Bluetooth key fob (CATBTFOB)
- (2) Cat App: Fleet Management mobile application
- (3) Cat Bluetooth transceiver (CATBTNT)

134

The Cat Bluetooth key fob (1) contains an electronic chip. The electronic chip has a unique identification number (ID). A Bluetooth transceiver is mounted in the cab to read the ID of the key. The Bluetooth transceiver module translates the information received from the key fob into a J1939 message. This message is sent to the Electronic Control Module (ECM) that is connected to the MSS. The ECM is typically the Machine ECM. The ECM is set up with the ID of the keys of the intended users.

When the MSS is armed, the ECM validates the ID of the key fob. If the key ID is on the list of authorized keys in the ECM and the key is valid, the machine will operate normally. If the key ID is not on the list of authorized keys in the ECM or is not valid, the MSS will keep the critical machine functions disabled.

Note: A Bluetooth enabled phone can disarm MSS if the phone is on the list. Operator Management System (OMS) is necessary to be able to add phones to the vehicle ID list. After the phone is added, OMS is no longer needed for the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application to function as a valid key.

If the MSS is not installed, the operator can skip the login and the machine will operate normally.

Components

The Machine Security System (MSS) consists of the following components:

- Electronic Control Module (ECM)
- Cat Bluetooth key fob (CATBTFOB)
- Machine display
- · Bluetooth transceiver module (CATBTNT)
- Engine start switch

System Overview

The Machine Security System (MSS) is designed to restrict operation of a machine. A list of the authorized electronic keys and passcodes for a machine is contained in the ECM for the MSS. A valid Bluetooth key fob, mobile application, or passcode can disarm the MSS. If the MSS is disabled or not installed, any operator may access critical machine functions.

The Cat [®] Electronic Technician (Cat ET) Service Tool can be used to program the ECM with the authorized keys and passcodes. Bluetooth devices and passcodes can be registered using the in-cab display if the operator is logged in to the system using a master access account.

When the engine start switch is turned to the ON position, the display boots up. If Bluetooth detection is enabled, the transceiver will receive a signal from any Bluetooth key that is present or from the mobile application. The ECM will then compare this ID to the list of authorized keys.

Note: If multiple devices are present, the first valid device detected by the transceiver will be read.

If the ID of the key matches an authorized key, the status indicator on the engine start switch will turn a green color and the MSS will disarm. This disarming will allow the operator access to critical functions of the machine.

If the ID of the key that is read does not match the list in the ECM, the status indicator will remain a red color. The MSS remains in the "armed" state and the machine will remain disabled.

If the MSS is disabled and the ID of the key matches an authorized key, the operator will be identified and allowed access to the critical machine functions. The operator will be able to save configurations and start the machine.

If the MSS is disabled and the ID of the key that is read does not match an authorized key, the operator must log in as a guest. The operator will not be able to save custom configurations but will have access to starting the engine.

Activating Bluetooth Functionality

For shipping purposes, Bluetooth functionality is deactivated. Ensure that Bluetooth functionality is active on your machine using the following procedure:

 Ensure that the function is active from the radio screen:

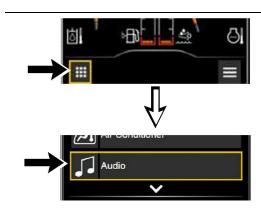


Illustration 178

g06319669

 a. From the home screen, press the navigation button in the lower left corner, then select "Audio".

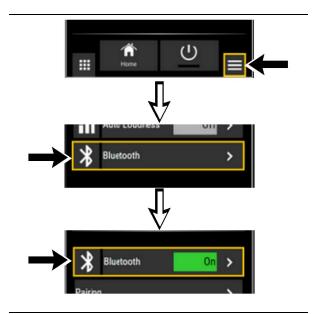


Illustration 179 g06319667

b. Press the radio function list menu button in the lower right corner, then select "Bluetooth". Ensure that "Bluetooth" is set to "ON".

Pairing Your Device to the Machine

Use to following procedure to pair your device to the machine:

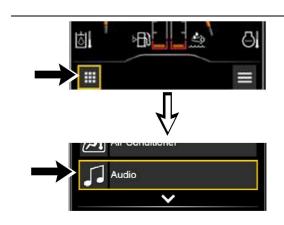


Illustration 180 g06319669

1. From the home screen, press the navigation button in the lower left corner, then select "Audio".

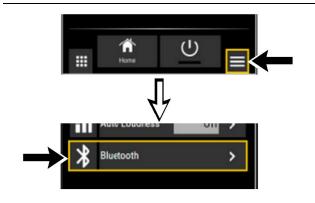


Illustration 181 g06319672

2. Press the radio function list menu button in the lower right corner, then select "Bluetooth".

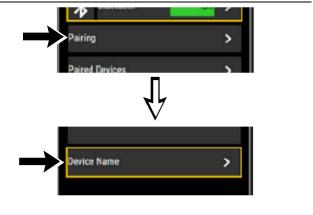


Illustration 182 g06319676

3. Select "Pairing", then "Device Name".

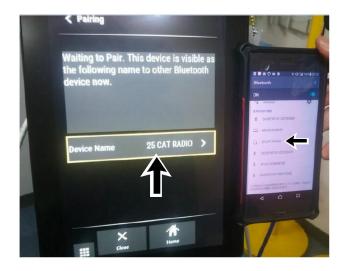


Illustration 183 q06319681

Machine name on monitoring system and operator device

4. Find your device on the list and pair the devices. Ensure that the devices are paired on your phone as well.

Note: The device name on your phone should be "## CAT RADIO", with the number being from "00" to "99".

Reading the ID of a Key

The Machine Security System (MSS) must identify a valid passcode, Bluetooth key fob ID, or Cat App: Fleet management mobile application ID.

When the engine start switch ring is turned to the ON position, the MSS will check the ID of any key fob or mobile application. If the ID matches a key ID stored in the machine ECM, the critical ECM functions are enabled. An enable message is also sent via the Cat [®] data link or J1939 data link to the other ECMs on the machine. The machine will operate normally.

Note: If the machine ECM has failed or has been removed, the critical machine operations controlled by the other electronic control modules will not operate.

Armed

When the MSS is armed, critical machine functions are disabled. The MSS disables the power that is supplied to each component that is powered by the output drivers. The machine will not be able to operate normally.

There are two states of operation within the "armed" mode:

Engine Start Switch Ring Position OFF – When no power is applied to the MSS, the MSS will default to "armed" state. When power is applied to the MSS and the grace period has expired, the MSS will return to the "MSS Armed".

Engine Start Ring Switch Position ON – When the engine start switch ring is first moved to the ON position, the display boots up and the system attempts to detect a Bluetooth key ID or mobile application ID. The ECM will continue reading until a valid key ID is read or a passcode is entered. If a valid key ID or passcode is not read, the MSS status indicator will remain red and the MSS remains armed.

Disarmed

When the MSS is disarmed, normal machine operation is allowed. A message is sent to the other machine ECMs over the Cat data link. or J1939 data link. The machine will be able to start. The green LED on the status indicator will illuminate.

There are multiple ways to disarm the machine:

- · Use a valid passcode
- Use a valid Bluetooth key fob
- Use the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application
- Use the Cat [®] Electronic Technician (Cat ET) Service Tool to configure the MSS bypass schedule to allow machine operations during scheduled periods of time during the week.

Grace Period

After a machine has been started successfully, the operator will have a grace period after the machine is turned off before the MSS is automatically armed. The operator is not required to arm the system manually.

During the grace period an operator can start the machine without a key ID or passcode. When the grace period expires, the MSS will rearm automatically.

If the MSS is unable to read a key ID, the system will remain armed. When the MSS identifies a key with an invalid key ID, the system will remain armed.

The grace period for a machine can be configured with Cat ET if a factory password or master level account is available.

Navigating the User Interface Touchscreen Display

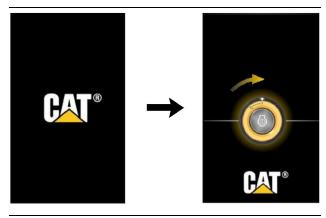


Illustration 184
Startup sequence screens

g06210561

The display will start up automatically after turning the battery disconnect switch to the ON position. The screen will prompt the operator to turn the engine start ring to the ON position. When the engine start ring is turned to the ON position, the display will navigate to the passcode entry screen.

If the operator has not turned the engine start ring to the ON position, the display will time out after 1 minute.

If the battery disconnect switch is already on and the display is off, the display will startup automatically after the engine start ring is powered on. The Cat screen will appear for a short time and then login keypad will appear.

Note: Avoid touching the screen with sharp objects.

The access level assigned to the operator can limit or expand the amount of freedom the user has to manage the system. The following paragraphs explain access levels.

There are three levels of operator access recognized by the touchscreen display. The following levels are available:

- Guest
- Standard
- Master

Guest – If an operator does not have an authenticated key or passcode, the user is able to bypass log in as a guest. Some menu features will not be available such as the options for saving

configurations and operator management. If the Machine Security System (MSS) is enabled, guest operators cannot start the machine.

Standard – A standard operator is a registered user of the machine. Operators with this access level can start the engine whether or not the MSS is installed. This user may save a control configuration for future application.

Master – Master accounts can perform operator management in addition to all standard level functions.

Any "Standard" or "Master" account may be created or removed by a "Master" level operator.

Table 21

Selections and Access for the Touchscreen Display					
Access Level	Operator Setting				
Guest	"Operator Input Configuration" "Response" "Change Operator"				
Standard	"Operator Input Configuration" "Response" "Controls Setup" "Change Operator"				
Master	"Operator Input Configuration" "Response" "Controls Setup" "Change Operator" "Manage Operator"				

Operation of Status Indicator



Illustration 185

g06215426

Engine start switch with integrated MSS indicator

Operation Section
Machine Security System

The Machine Security System (MSS) uses a status indicator that is integrated into the engine start switch in the cab. This indicator provides a visible alert for the security system.

The operator can use the status indicator to determine the status of the system or for troubleshooting.



Illustration 186

g06226442

Status indicator when the MSS is armed

When the MSS is armed, the status indicator will be red. The red light warns the operator that the machine is armed with the security system and that an operator login is required. The red LED will remain ON until a valid key is read while the key switch or engine start switch ring is in the ON position.



Illustration 187

g06226444

Status indicator when the MSS is disarmed or uninstalled

When the MSS is disarmed, the status indicator will be green. The green light notifies the operator that an operator is logged on the machine and the security system has been disarmed. The status indicator will be green if the MSS is not installed on the machine. Also, the green LED will remain ON after power down for the duration of the grace period. After the grace period, the MSS automatically returns to the "armed" mode.

For machines with a standard key switch, a separate status indicator will be available.

Operator Login

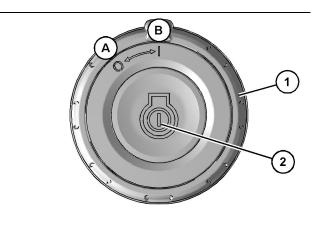
Any user may start the engine if the Machine Security System (MSS) is disabled.

If the MSS is active, only a "Standard" or "Master" account can start the machine engine. Before starting the machine engine, the security system must identify a registered operator. An operator can access the machine display using one of the following methods:

- Passcode
- Cat Bluetooth key
- Cat App: Fleet management mobile application

Passcode Entry

To log in using a passcode, refer to the following steps:



g06180554

Illustration 188

- (A) Off
- (B) On
- (1) Engine start switch ring
- (2) Engine start button
- **1.** Turn engine start switch (1) to the ON position (B).

M0110641-02



Illustration 189 g06209470

2. Enter a registered passcode using the monitor keypad and then press "Enter".

Note: The jog dial or the numbered buttons on the right-side switch panel can also be used to enter the code.



Illustration 190 g06211194

- 3. Select "Enter" to confirm the passcode. If a registered passcode is recognized, the operator information screen will appear on the display. If the MSS is not installed, the passcode screen will be bypassed automatically after 10 seconds. The operator will be logged in to the system as a guest. Refer to Illustration 190.
- **4.** Select "OK" to continue to the display homescreen.



Illustration 191 g06209482

5. After an operator logs in to the system successfully, an "Engine Start Allowed" message will appear across the top of the monitor. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Engine Starting for instructions on starting the engine.

Invalid Passcode



Illustration 192

g06209472

Invalid passcode screen

If a passcode is not recognized, the display will notify the user with an "Invalid code" message. Refer to Illustration 192. The operator has five tries to enter a valid passcode successfully. After a fifth unsuccessful attempt, a lockout screen will appear and remain on the display for a duration of 5 minutes.

Note: If the Machine Security System (MSS) is not active, the user can select the "Skip Login" button to avoid the lockout period. Refer to the "Bypass login" section for further information.

Bypass login

Operator login can be bypassed if the user selects the "Skip Login" button on the display. The operator will be logged in to the machine with "Guest" level access.

If the MSS is inactive, the operator will be able to start the engine as normal and view all display screens.

If the MSS is active on the machine, the operator is able to view all display screens but will not have access to starting the engine.

Bluetooth Entry

Alternatively, a Bluetooth Operator ID can be used to log in to the machine. For a Bluetooth key to be detected by the system, ensure that the following qualifications are met:

- The key must be registered with the machine
- · The key must be within the cab
- Bluetooth setting must be enabled on the display

Refer to the following steps when logging in to a machine using the Bluetooth key:

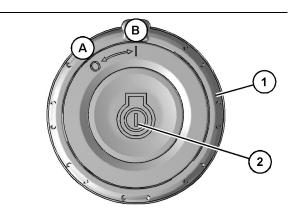


Illustration 193

g06180554

- (A) Off
- (B) On
- (1) Engine start switch ring
- (2) Engine start button
- 1. Turn engine start switch (1) to the ON position (B).

Wait several seconds for the system to detect the key when the passcode dialog appears. Once the key is detected, the "Operator Information" screen will display.



Illustration 194

Bluetooth operator information screen

3. Select the "OK" button if the proper operator has been displayed.

g06209615



Illustration 195 g06209482

4. After an operator logs in to the system successfully, an "Engine Start Allowed" message will appear across the top of the monitor. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Engine Starting for instructions on starting the engine.

NOTICE

The access level will change to a "Guest" account automatically if the key is removed from the cab at any time. If the MSS is enabled and the engine is on when the key is removed from the cab, the operator will not be able to start the engine if turned off. To turn on the engine again without the Bluetooth key, the operator will need to log in a registered account using either the smart phone application or passcode.

Note: If multiple Bluetooth devices are within the cab, the system will select the first device detected by the Bluetooth transceiver as the active operator.

Cat ®Fleet Management Mobile Application

Operators can also log in to a machine using the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application. For the application to be detected by the system, ensure that the following qualifications are met:

 The Mobile Device ID (MDID) of the mobile application must be assigned to the machine in the Operator Management System (OMS)

Note: It is not possible to assign mobile devices through the MSS interface.

The mobile device must be within the cab

Machine Security System

"Operator Management Bluetooth Device Enabled Status" is enabled (Cat ET Configuration)

Note: For adding an operator, adding MDID to the machine key list, and pushing the machine key list from the OMS to the machine refer to the OMS documentation at:

https://myoperators.cat.com/

Mobile Device / Operating Software Compatibility

Table 22

142

Mobile Device / Operating Software Compatibility							
Make	Model	Operating Software					
Android	Varies	Android 8.x Oreo and up (Preferably Android 9.x Pie)					
Apple	iPhone 6/ iPhone 6 Plus and up	iOS 11.0 and up (Preferably 12)					

Note: Android mobile hardware support for Bluetooth can vary, so it is possible that a mobile device running Android 8.x software or higher could have hardware that does not support Bluetooth 4.1.

Mobile Application Entry (Android Devices)

To log in using the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application, refer to the following steps:

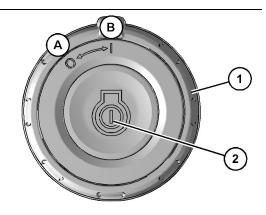


Illustration 196 g06180554

- (A) Off
- (B) On
- (1) Engine start switch ring
- (2) Engine start button
- 1. Turn engine start switch (1) to the ON position (B).



Illustration 197 q06400799

2. Open the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application on the mobile device.



Illustration 198 g06433500

3. Click "I Agree" to agree with the End-User License Agreement and sign in with Cat eCustomer account credentials.

Note: If you do not have a Cat eCustomer account, click "Get Started" to create one.

4. Select "Login".



Illustration 199
CWS login screen

5. Enter Cat eCustomer account credentials.



Allow **Cat** to access this device's location?

Deny Allow

q06214518

Illustration 200 g06400826

Click "Allow" to enable the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application to work as designed.

Note: Cat App: Fleet management requires access to the mobile device location to use Bluetooth radio to connect to Cat machines.

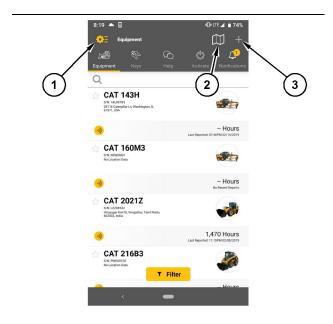


Illustration 201 g06433507

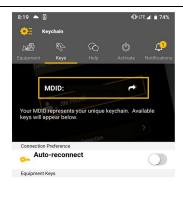
- (1) Menu Icon
- (2) Map Icon
- (3) Add Equipment Icon
- 7. Upon login, the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application will open onto the equipment tab.

Note: The "Equipment" tab will be empty on the first login.

The Menu Icon (1) includes "Preferences", "Notifications and Alerts", along with various documents covering the end-user license agreement, and privacy notice.

By tapping the Map Icon (2), the operator will be able to see the location of each vehicle on their "Equipment" tab on a map.

If a vehicle is not equipped with a telematics device, or the vehicle is a non-caterpillar machine it may be necessary to add it manually using the Add Equipment Icon (3).



No Keys Found



Illustration 202 g06433513

8. Go to the keys tab.

Keys are necessary to connect to vehicles. If no keys are given, the screen in Illustration 202 will be displayed. The MDID is necessary to assign keys to the user account. The MDID of Android devices is linked to the app.

Note: Uninstalling the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application will result in the MDID and keys being deleted. The Sim card of the phone contains the MDID information, damage to the Sim card may result in keys being lost, if the phone is replaced transfer the Sim card to avoid key loss.

9. Pull the "Equipment Keys" down to refresh the list once the Fleet/Key configuration process has finished. Wait up to 30 seconds until the keys populate. If the keys do not populate, check that the MDID is correct and that the list was pushed properly through OMS.



Illustration 203 g06433520

10. Ensure that the machine is ON to connect to a machine.

The machine display should prompt the operator for a password. In the "Keys" tab in the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application and tap the key that matches the machine. If a vehicle is OFF, currently occupied, or too far away the key will be grayed out and say "Out of range".

Note: If the machine has a user signed in that is not in the cab and it has become necessary for a different user to operate the machine, change the operator in operator setting.

145



Illustration 204 q06433521

11. Access the "Equipment" tab by tapping it. The machines associated with the keys should have populated. To learn more about a machine, tap it.



Illustration 205 g06433525

12. Press the "Disconnect" button if the user wishes to disconnect. If the user wants to switch machines, tap the arrow in the upper left then tap the machine the operator wants to be switched to.

Note: Disconnect from vehicles if the user is not going to be using a vehicle again within a short time.



Illustration 206 g06209482

13. After an operator logs in to the system successfully, an "Engine Start Allowed" message will appear across the top of the monitor. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Engine Starting for instructions on starting the engine.

Mobile Application Entry (iOS Devices)

To log in using the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application, refer to the following steps:

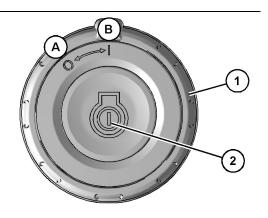


Illustration 207 g06180554

- (A) Off
- (B) On
- (1) Engine start switch ring
- (2) Engine start button
- 1. Turn engine start switch (1) to the ON position (B).
- **2.** Ensure that Bluetooth detection is enabled on the in-cab display.



Illustration 208 g06400799

Cat App: Fleet management mobile application icon

3. Open the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application on the mobile device.

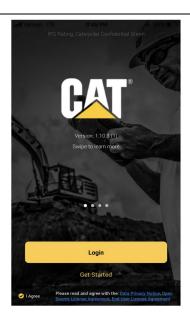


Illustration 209 g06433528

4. Click "I Agree" to agree with the End-User License Agreement and sign in with Cat eCustomer account credentials.

Note: If you do not have a Cat eCustomer account, click "Get Started" to create one.

5. Select "Login".



Illustration 210 g06214875

6. Enter eCustomer account credentials to log in.

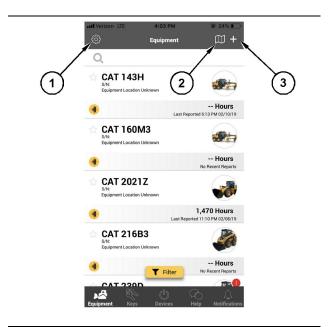


Illustration 211 g06433533

- (1) Menu Icon
- (2) Map Icon
- (3) Add Equipment Icon
- 7. Upon login the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application will open onto the equipment tab.

Note: The equipment tab will be empty on the first login.

The Menu Icon (1) includes "Preferences", "Notifications and Alerts", along with various documents covering the end-user license agreement, and privacy notice.

M0110641-02

By tapping the Map (2), the operator will be able to see the location of each vehicle on the equipment tab on a map.

When using this for the first time, the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application will ask if it can use the location feature. Allow the location feature to use the map.

If a vehicle is not equipped with a telematics device, or the vehicle is a non-caterpillar machine it may be necessary to add it manually using the add equipment button (3).

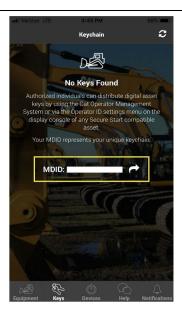


Illustration 212 q06433536

- 8. Access the "Keys" tab. Keys are necessary to connect to vehicles. If no keys are given, the screen in Illustration 212 will be displayed. The MDID is necessary to assign keys to the user account. The MDID of IOS devices is linked to the user account.
- 9. Once the Fleet/Key configuration process has finished, tap the refresh button in the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application top right. Wait up to 30 seconds until the keys populate. If the keys do not populate, check that the MDID is correct and that the list was pushed properly in OMS.

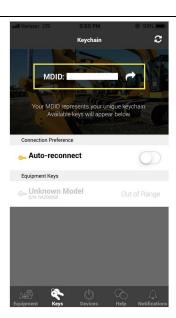


Illustration 213 g06433538

10. To connect to a machine, ensure that the machine is ON. The machine display should prompt the operator for a password. At this point on the Cat App: Fleet management mobile application go to the "Keys" tab and tap the key that matches the machine. If a vehicle is OFF, currently occupied, or too far away the key will be grayed out and say "Out of range".

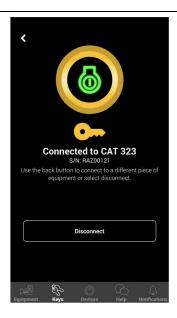


Illustration 214 g06433540

11. Press the disconnect button if the user wishes to disconnect. If the user wants to switch machines tap the arrow in the upper left, then tap the key of the machine to switch to. 148

Note: Disconnect from vehicle if the user will not be using the vehicle again within a short time.



Illustration 215 g06209482

12. After an operator logs in to the system successfully, an "Engine Start Allowed" message will appear across the top of the monitor. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Engine Starting for instructions on starting the engine.

Engine Start Switch Troubleshooting

Table 23

Switch Status	Possible Cause	Resolution	
	Engine start accessory power not on	Turn engine start switch ring to ON position	
Engine startswitch is not illuminated	Power management triggered	Cycle engine start switch ring and try to restart	
Engine start switch is green	Starting component failure Contact your Cat dealer		
	Machine interlock conditions not met	Hydraulic lock in LOCKED position	
	Engine shut down without cycling start switch ring	Cycle engine start switch ring and try restart	
		Add operator to machine authorized user list	
Engine start switch is red	Operator not authenticated (Passcode login)	Switch operator from guest mode using display	
	Operator not authenticated (Bluetooth key)	Add operator to machine authorized user list	
		Replace key fob battery	
		Ensure more than 4.5 m (15 ft) from other Bluetooth equipped machine	

(Table 23, contd)

Switch Status	Possible Cause	Resolution	
		Alternately login with display passcode or contact local Cat dealer	
	Operator not authenticated (Cat Fleet management app)	Add operator to machine authorized user list	
		Ensure more than 4.5 m (15 ft) from other Bluetooth equipped machine	
		Enable phone Bluetooth and connect Cat Fleet management app	
		Change Bluetooth system enable status to enabled (Cat dealer)	
		Contact local Cat dealer if unable to see ma- chine Bluetooth device	

i08606243

Monitoring System

SMCS Code: 7451; 7490

WARNING

Do not operate the machine if the monitor is not functioning (for example, monitor has a black screen or is not responding) when the key switch is in the ON position.

The monitor provides images from the camera system and other information for safe machine operation. Operating the machine without a properly functioning monitor may result in injury or death. If the monitor is not functioning, place the machine in a safe state by following the procedures for stopping and parking the machine. Determine the cause of the monitor malfunction and correct before returning the machine to service.

NOTICE

When the monitor provides a warning, immediately check the monitor and perform the required action or maintenance as indicated by the monitor.

The monitor indicator does not guarantee that the machine is in a good condition. Do not use the monitor panel as the only method of inspection. Maintenance and inspection of the machine must be performed on a regular basis. See the Maintenance Section of this Operation and Maintenance Manual.

General Information

Reference: For complete monitoring system information, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, "Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement".

The monitoring system is an input and an output of the Machine Control System. The monitor has a multi-touch 8 inch or 10 inch display. The Machine Control System communicates back and forth on the data link. The monitoring system consists of the following components:

- Display (with numerous screens and menus)
- Indicators
- Gauges
- · Soft Switch Panel
- Jog Dial

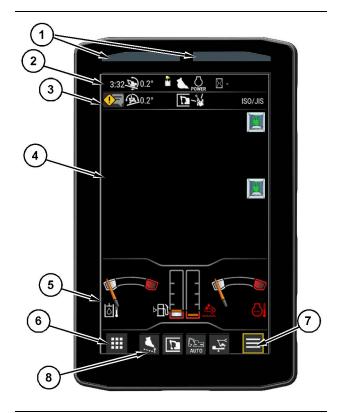


Illustration 216

g06720205

- (1) Action Lamps
- (2) Status Information Area
- (3) Notification Center Icon
- (4) Camera View Area
- (5) Gauge Area
- (6) Navigation Area
- (7) Function List
- (8) Shortcuts

The monitoring system displays various warnings and information about the condition of the machine, and the machines surrounding with various camera views. There are gauges and several alert indicators included on monitoring system display. Each gauge is dedicated to a parameter within a machine system. The monitoring system will allow the user to do the following:

- View Surroundings
- · Interpret status information
- Interpret parameters
- View Operation and Maintenance Manual (OMM)
- View service intervals
- · Perform calibrations
- · Troubleshoot machine systems

Action Lamps (1)

The action lamps illuminate to show that a problem has occurred with the machine.

Status Information Area (2)

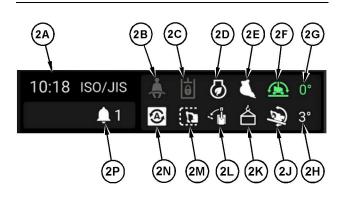


Illustration 217 g06720245

- (2A) Multi Status Information
- (2B) Seatbelt Switch Status (if equipped)
- (2C) Hydraulic Lockout Control
- (2D) Eco Mode
- (2E) Work Tool
- (2F) XX
- (2G) XX
- (2H) XX
- (2J) XX
- (2K) Heavy Lift / Cat ® Dig Boost (if equipped)
- (2L) XX
- (2M) XX
- (2N) XX
- (2P) XX

Reference: For complete status information, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, "Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement".

Notification Center Icon (3)



Illustration 218

a06720210

- (3A) Event Description
- (3B) Event Symbol
- (3C) Event ID

Event Description (3A) – This area will display the description of pop-up message of the impending problem.

- · Line 1: System
- Line 2: Condition
- Line 3: Action to be taken

Event Symbol (3B) - This area will display the symbol of the problem

Event ID (3C) – The identification number for the event will be shown here.

Camera View (4)

This area on the monitor displays the view of the cameras. A rear view camera mounted on top of the counterweight and an optional side view camera mounted in the side panel next to the hydraulic tank.

If both rear view camera and side view camera are equipped, the monitor screen can be toggled to show:

- Rear only
- Side only
- Split vertically

Split horizontally

The camera view can be toggled when the cursor is on the camera view area and the area is touched or the jog dial is turned.

Gauge Area (5)



Fuel Level – This gauge indicates the amount of fuel that is remaining in the fuel tank. When the fuel gauge is in the red range, add fuel immediately.



Hydraulic Oil Temperature - This gauge indicates the temperature of the hydraulic oil. The normal operating

range is the green range. If the gauge is in the white range, the engine and machine warm-up is required. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine and Machine Warm-up". If the gauge reaches the red range, reduce the load on the system. If the gauge stays in the red range, stop the machine and investigate the cause of the problem.



Engine Coolant Temperature - This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant. The normal operating

range is the green range. If the gauge is in the white range, the engine and machine warm-up is required. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine and Machine Warm-up". If the gauge reaches the red range, stop the machine and investigate the cause of the problem.



Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Gauge (If Equipped) - This gauge indicates the level of DEF fluid in the DEF tank. When

the DEF gauge is in the red range, add DEF immediately.

Navigation Bar (6)



Apps Key - Allows you to display different information in the gauge area related to operation. Also contains air

conditioner and audio controls. This key includes the settings screen allowing change of a multitude of parameters, some password protected.



Function List Key - Allows you to turn on and off various functions related to the active screen. This icon only

appears in certain screens where additional settings are necessary.

Shortcuts - Allows you to set certain shortcuts on the navigation bar.

Machine Warnings





Illustration 219

q06720213

Notification Center

- (1) Notification Center Icon
- (2) Notification Center Dashboard

The Monitor will display warnings, and log events for machine conditions that are not within normal operating parameters.

The event warnings are classified into three warning levels. Warning Level 1 represents the least severe problem and Warning Level 3 represents the most severe problem. The warning levels, monitor response, and the required operator actions are given below.

Warning Level 1 (Gray) – Requires operator awareness. The icon and pop-up message will both appear gray.

Warning Level 2 (Amber) – Requires a change in the operation of the machine or a change in the maintenance of the machine to correct the condition. The icon and pop-up message will both appear amber and the action lamp will blink.

Warning Level 3 (Red) – Requires immediate shutdown of the machine to prevent damage to the machine or personnel. The icon and pop-up message will both appear red, the action lamp will blink, and the buzzer will sound.

When multiple warnings are present in the system, the highest warning is shown first. Swipe the message up or down to view all the logged warnings.

Reference: For complete machine warning information, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, "Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement".

Logging In



Illustration 220

g06242074

There are different ways to access the monitor which include:

- Guest access
- · Passcode access
- Bluetooth access
- Cat [®] Fleet Management app

For more information on logging in, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Machine Security System - Operator Login.

Navigation

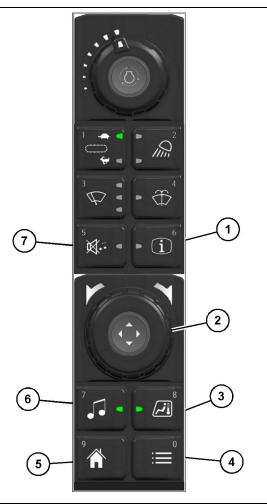


Illustration 221

g06464384

Right side switch panel

- (1) Operator information button
- (2) Jog dial
- (3) Air conditioner button
- (4) Next menu button
- (5) Home button
- (6) Audio button
- (7) Mute button

The monitor can be navigated by touch screen or the switch panel. Switch panel components can be used to interface with the monitor in the following ways:

Operator information button (1) – Press and hold this button to access the operator information screen. This screen shows information such as operator settings.

Jog dial (2) – Rotate the jog dial to highlight menu items in the monitor. Push the jog dial down to select the highlighted item.

Air conditioner button (3) – Press the button to access the air conditioner controls.

Next menu button (4) – This button is equivalent to the function list key on the monitor. This button can only be used on screens where the function list key is shown.

Home button (5) – Press this button to return to the main screen.

Audio button (6) – Press this button to access the audio controls.

Mute button (7) – Press this button to mute the audio. Press the button again to unmute the audio.

Each of the buttons is also assigned a number which is imprinted in the top corner of the button. These buttons can be used to enter the numerical passcodes used to log in to the monitor.

i07046279

Fuel Transfer Pump (Refueling)

(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1256

Use the following procedure to pump fuel and store the hose.

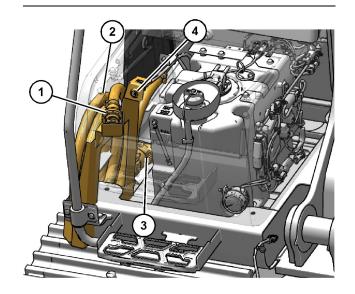


Illustration 222

g06208102

- (1) Suction valve
- (2) Suction hose
- (3) Electric refueling pump
- (4) ON/OFF switch



ON/OFF Switch – Push the ON/OFF switch to activate or deactivate the fuel transfer pump. A red indicator on the

switch will illuminate when the fuel transfer pump is activated.

If one of the following conditions occur, the fuel transfer pump will not activate and/or stop operating:

- · Battery disconnect switch is in the OFF position
- · Engine is operating
- Engine start switch is moved to the START position.
- Engine start switch is in the OFF position
- Hydraulic lockout control is not in the LOCKED position
- Fuel tank level is full
- Fuel is not detected at the suction valve.
- 30 seconds following a detection of no fuel at the suction valve.

Use the following procedure to pump fuel and store the hose.

- Park the machine on a level surface. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Stop the engine
- **2.** Turn the engine start switch to the ON position without starting the engine.
- 3. Remove the fuel tank cap from the fuel tank.
- **4.** Open the access that is on the right side of the machine.

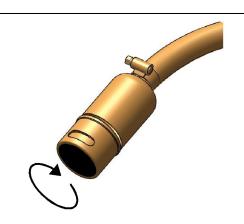


Illustration 223

the rad

g06180748

Suction valve (1) is at the end of hose (2).

Turn the end of the suction valve clockwise to open the valve

- **5.** Uncoil the hose and turn the end of the suction valve clockwise to open the suction valve.
- Properly insert the end of the suction valve into a container of fuel.
- 7. Push switch (4) to activate the fuel transfer pump and supply the fuel to the tank. A red indicator on the switch will illuminate when the fuel transfer pump is activated.

When the fuel tank is full, the fuel transfer pump will automatically stop.

When the fuel container is empty, push the switch again to stop refueling. If additional fuel is needed, wait 30 seconds and return to step 6.

Note: The red indicator on the switch will no longer illuminate when the fuel transfer pump has stopped refueling.

Note: The fuel transfer pump will not activate for 30 seconds following a detection of no fuel at the suction valve.

8. Push the switch at any time to deactivate the fuel transfer pump.

Note: The red indicator on the switch will no longer illuminate when the fuel transfer pump has stopped refueling.

- **9.** Drain excess fuel from the hose and turn the end of the suction valve counter-clockwise to close the suction valve.
- 10. Wind the hose and store in the hose container.

NOTICE

To prevent hose damage, do not coil the hose in a tight radius.

- 11. Close the access door.
- **12.** Install the fuel tank cap onto the fuel tank.
- **13.** Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position.

i07092848

Radio

SMCS Code: 7338

The radio is integrated into the monitoring system. All the radio controls are adjusted using the monitor. The actual radio is mounted in the right rear console behind the operator seat.

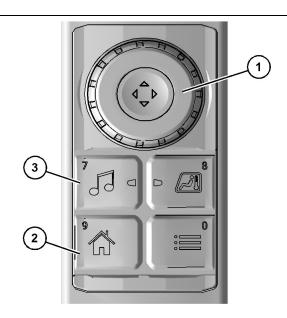


Illustration 224 g06213193

- (1) Jog dial
- (2) Home button
- (3) Radio button

The audio menu can be directly accessed by pressing radio button (3) on the right side switch panel. Input selections can be made using jog dial (1) or using the monitor touch screen. Home button (2) can be used to return to the main screen.



Illustration 225

g06213076

Press radio button (3) to go directly to the radio screen. To navigate to the radio screen from the main screen, press application menu button (4).



Illustration 226 g06213198

Use jog dial (1) to highlight "Audio" and then press the jog dial downward to select the entry. You may also access the screen by simply touching the "Audio" box on the touch screen.

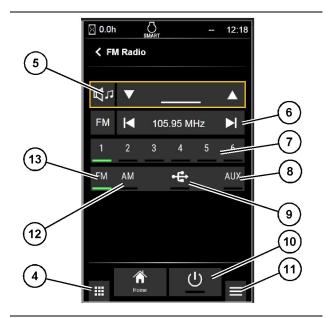


Illustration 227

g06213200

Radio screen

- (4) Application menu button
- (5) Volume control
- (6) Tuner
- (7) Preset stations
- (8) Auxiliary button
- (9) USB button
- (10) Power button
- (11) Radio Function List menu
- (12) AM button
- (13) FM button

Operation Section Radio

Application menu button (4) – Use this button to return to the application menu.

Volume control (5) – The volume control is used to raise or lower the audio volume.

Tuner (6) – The tuner is used to tune the radio to the desired station.

Preset stations (7) – The preset stations store favorite radio stations for the operator. To set a station, tune to the desired station. Press and hold the preset number you want to assign to that station. Once a beep is heard, release the button. The indicator light for the active preset station will illuminate.

Auxiliary button (8) – When a device is plugged into the auxiliary port, press the auxiliary button to connect the device to the radio. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

USB button (9) – When a device is plugged into the USB port, press the USB button to connect the device to the radio. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Power button (10) – Pressing this button turns the radio on and off. The indicator light on the monitor and on button (3) will illuminate when the power is on.

Radio function list menu button (11) – Pressing this button leads to the radio function list menu.

AM button (12) – Press this button to access AM radio. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

FM button (13) – Press this button to access FM radio. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Radio Function List

To access the radio function list, press the function list button (11) in the lower right corner of the radio screen.

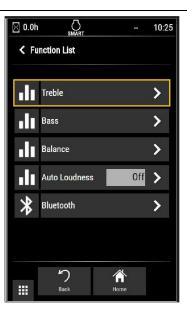


Illustration 228

g06223378

The function list menu consists of the following items:

Treble – Allows the user to adjust the treble.

Bass – Allows the user to adjust the bass.

Balance – Allows the user to adjust the balance between speakers.

Auto Loudness – When on, this feature automatically adjust treble and bass levels when reducing the volume setting. This effect allows the user to hear more clearly at a lower volume.

Bluetooth – Allows the user to pair a phone, view paired devices, and edit device names.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Monitoring System - Bluetooth for information on the Bluetooth screen.

Selection Method

All settings can be made using the touch screen or by using the jog dial. The method depends on the preference of the operator. When using the touch screen, simply touch the icon you want to select. When using the jog dial, rotate the dial to switch to different selections within the screen. Press the jog dial downward to choose a selection.

M0110641-02 157
Operation Section



Illustration 229 g06213233

When using the jog dial to set the volume or tuner, rotate the dial clockwise to increase and counter-clockwise to decrease. Press downward on the dial to enter the desired setting.

Radio Operation

- **1.** To operate the system, press power button (10).
- Select between the AM button for AM stations or select the FM button for FM stations.
- **3.** Use tuner (6) to adjust to the desired station. If presets stations (7) are set, press the desired preset station.
- **4.** Use volume control (5) to adjust the volume.

When the machine is in operation turn down the volume of the radio.

Radio

USB/AUX Operation

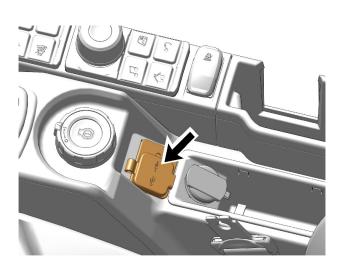


Illustration 230 g06213245

1. To play music from a device such as an MP3 player or a phone, connect the device using an auxiliary cable or a USB cable. Depending on the cable being used, plug the cable into the appropriate port on the console.

2. Select either USB or AUX depending on which type of cable was used. Play the music from the device. The music should be playing over the radio speakers if properly connected. Adjust the volume as necessary.



Note: If USB is selected, extra controls appear on the screen for playing music. They include the following:

- 14 Skip to the beginning of the track
- 15 Rewind the track
- 16 Pause/Play the track
- 17 Fast forward the track
- 18 Skip to the end of the track

i08031142

Air Conditioning and Heating Control

SMCS Code: 7304; 7320; 7337

Consult with your Cat dealer for periodic maintenance of the heating and air conditioning system.

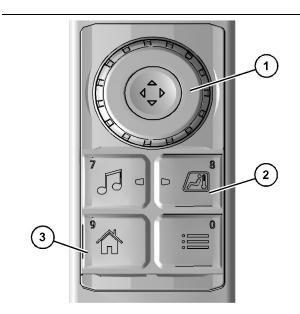


Illustration 232 g06178710

- (1) Jog dial
- (2) Heating and air conditioning button
- (3) Home button

Air conditioning and heating functions are controlled through the monitor. The heating and cooling menu can be directly accessed by pressing button (2) on the right side switch panel. Input selections can be made using jog dial (1) or using the monitor touch screen. Home button (3) can be used to return to the main screen.

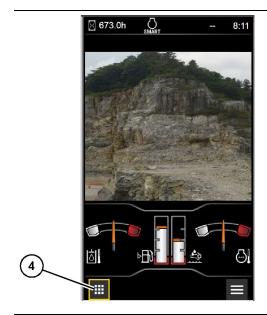


Illustration 233 g0621307

Press the Air Conditioning and Heating button (2) to go directly to the air conditioner screen. To navigate to the air conditioner screen from the main screen, press application menu button (4).



Illustration 234 g06213088

Use jog dial (1) to highlight "Air Conditioner" and then press the jog dial downward to select the entry. You may also access the screen by simply touching the "Air Conditioner" box on the touch screen.

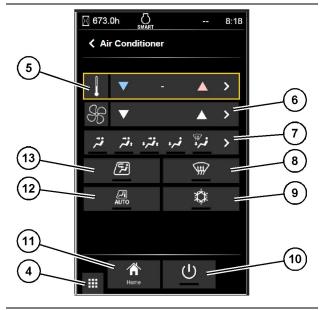


Illustration 235

g06213092

Air conditioner screen

- (4) Application menu button
- (5) Temperature control
- (6) Fan blower speed control
- (7) Air outlet settings
- (8) Defroster
- (9) Compressor ON/OFF
- (10) Power
- (11) Home button
- (12) Auto
- (13) Recirculation

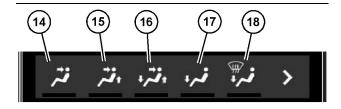


Illustration 236

g06213104

- (14) Front vents
- (15) Front and rear vents
- (16) Front, foot, and rear vents
- (17) Foot vents
- (18) Defrost and foot mode

Application menu button (4) – Use this button to return to the application menu.

Temperature control (5) – The temperature control is used to raise or lower the desired temperature.

Fan blower speed control (6) – The blower control is used to increase or decrease the desired blower speed.

Air outlet settings (7) – The desired air outlet setting can be chosen from this panel. The indicator light will illuminate to show the active setting.

Defroster (8) – Pressing this button activates and deactivates the defroster. Use the defroster to remove steam and frost from the windows. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Compressor ON/OFF (9) – Pressing this button activates and deactivates the air conditioner. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Power (10) – Pressing this button turns the heating and cooling system on and off. Push and hold the power button for 3 seconds to turn OFF the HVAC system. The indicator light on the monitor and on button (2) will turn green when power is on.

Home button (11) – Use this button to return to the main screen.

Auto (12) – Select this option to hold the system at the desired temperature. The system will modulate to keep the cab at the temperature that the system is set to. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Recirculation (13) – This option recirculates air from the cab instead of pulling air from the outside. This mode is more efficient because the system is recycling conditioned air from the cab. However, no fresh air is coming into the cab when in this mode. The indicator light will illuminate when this mode is active.

Front vents (14) – In this mode, air will only circulate from the front vents.

Front and rear vents (15) – In this mode, air will circulate from the front vents and rear vents.

Front, foot, and rear vents (16) – In this mode, air will circulate from the front vents, rear vents, and foot vents.

Foot vents (17) – In this mode, air will only circulate from the foot vents.

Defrost and foot mode (18) – In defrost mode, air will circulate from the defrost vents and foot vents.

Selection Method

All settings can be made using the touch screen or by using the jog dial. The method depends on the preference of the operator. When using the touch screen, simply touch the icon you want to select. When using the jog dial, rotate the dial to switch to different selections within the screen. Press the jog dial downward to choose a selection.



Illustration 237 g06213141

When using the jog dial to set the temperature or blower speed, rotate the dial clockwise to increase and counter-clockwise to decrease. Press downward on the dial to enter the desired setting.

Operation

- 1. To operate the system, press power button (10).
- 2. Use temperature control (5) to adjust to the desired temperature.
- 3. Select the desired mode and outlet vents.
- 4. Use fan blower speed control (6) to adjust the blower. If the system is in "Auto" mode, the blower fan speed and air outlet setting will automatically be adjusted. But recirculation air intake is not changed automatically.

Note: In cold ambient temperature condition, fan speed is stopped or restricted depend on coolant temperature.

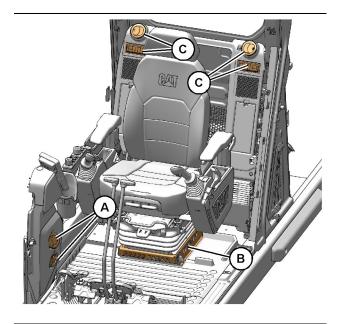


Illustration 238 g06178705

- (A) Defrost vent (front window)
- (B) Foot air vents
- (C) Rear air vents

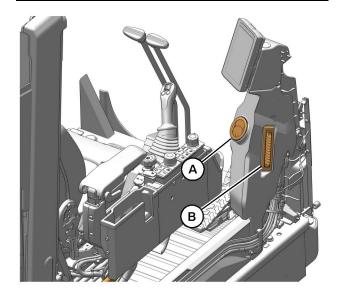


Illustration 239 g06287632

- (A) Front vent
- (B) Defrost vent (RH window)

M0110641-02 161
Operation Section

Redirect the louvers for air outlets (A) and (C) by hand to the desired direction. The louvers for air outlet (B) cannot be redirected.

i07311301

Mirror

SMCS Code: 7319

A WARNING

Adjust all mirrors as specified in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to heed this warning can lead to personal injury or death.

Note: Your machine may not be equipped with all the mirrors that are described in this topic.

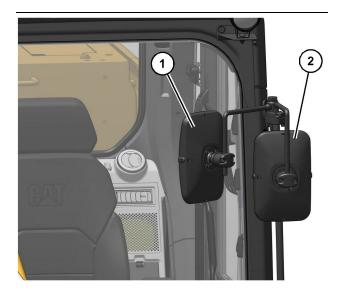


Illustration 240 g06220616

(1) Right Side View Mirror on the Cab

(2) Left Side View Mirror on the Cab

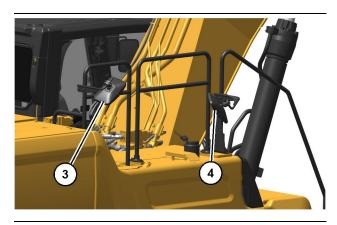


Illustration 241

g06279207

Mirror

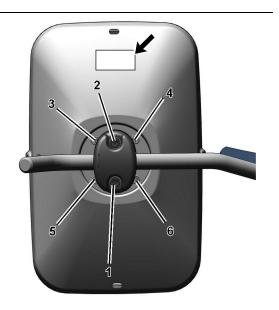
- (3) Rear tank mirror
- (4) Front tank mirror

Mirrors provide more visibility around your machine. Make sure that the mirrors are in proper working condition and that the mirrors are clean. Adjust all mirrors at the beginning of each work period and adjust the mirrors when you change operators.

Modified machines or machines that have more equipment or attachments may influence your visibility.

Mirror Adjustment

- Park the machine on a level surface.
- Lower the work tool to the ground.
- Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. For further details on this procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls".
- · Stop the engine.
- Adjust rear view mirrors to provide visibility behind the machine at a maximum distance of 30 m (98 ft) from the rear corners of the machine.



g06220634

Illustration 242

Tightening sequence

After adjustment of the mirror angle, make sure that the CAT logo is at the top.

It may be necessary to tighten the mirror mounting bolts periodically. If the bolts are loose, tighten the bolts in the sequence shown in Illustration 242 . Tighten bolts (1) and (2) to 11 \pm 2 N·m (8.1 \pm 1.5 lb ft).

Tighten the bolts (3) through (6) to 2 \pm 0.4 N·m (1.5 \pm 0.3 lb ft).

Right Side View Mirror on the Cab (1)



Illustration 243 g06223277

If equipped, adjust the right side view mirror on the cab (1) so the front of the right track can be seen from the operator seat. A view of at least 1 m (3.3 ft) from the right front of the machine should be seen from the operator seat.

163

Left Side View Mirror on the Cab (2)



Illustration 244 g06223279

If equipped, adjust the left side view mirror on the cab (4) so the left side of the cab, access door, and rear of left track can be seen from the operator seat. A view of at least 1 m (3.3 ft) from the side of the machine should be seen from the operator seat. Additionally, provide as much visibility to the rear as possible.

Rear Tank Mirror (3)

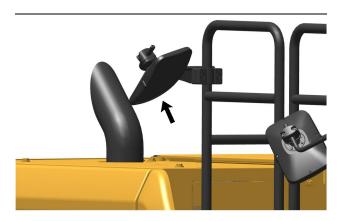


Illustration 245 g06279214

If equipped adjust the rear mirror on the tank so the right side of fuel tank and the hydraulic tank can be seen from the operator seat. A view of at least 1 m (3.3 ft) from the side of the machine should be seen from the operator seat.

Front Tank Mirror (4)

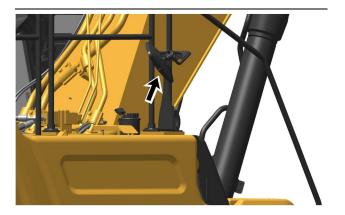


Illustration 246 g06279217

If equipped adjust the front mirror on the tank (2) so the right access door and the counterweight can be seen from the operator seat. A view of at least 1 m (3.3 ft) from the side of the machine should be seen from the operator seat. Additionally, provide as much visibility to the rear as possible.

i07899155

Camera

SMCS Code: 7347; 7348

Rear View Camera



Illustration 247 g06279174

The rear view camera system consists of a camera that is located in the middle of the top of the counterweight.

Operation Section Window (Front)

164

Note: The rear view camera system has been set up by the factory or by a Cat dealer to provide views which comply with specified guidelines. Consult your Cat dealer before any adjustments are made to the system.

For more information refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Monitoring System".

Right Side View Camera (If Equipped)

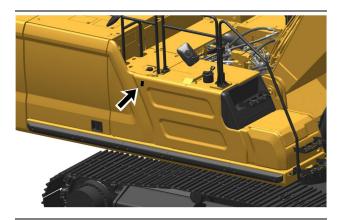


Illustration 248

g06279183

The side view camera system consists of a camera mounted on the panel next to the pump compartment.

Note: The side view camera system has been set up by the factory or by a Cat dealer to provide views which comply with specified machine side views. Consult your Cat dealer before any adjustments are made to the system.

For more information refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Monitoring System".

i07427990

Window (Front)

SMCS Code: 7310-FR

To provide full ventilation inside the cab, the upper window and the lower window can be fully opened.

WARNING

When opening or closing the windows, be extra careful to prevent any personal injury. The hydraulic lockout control must be in the LOCKED position in order to prevent any possibility of sudden movement of the machine due to inadvertent contact with the hydraulic control(s).

Do not change the position of the window until the following items have been done:

- · Park the machine on a level surface.
- Lower the work tool to the ground.
- Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
- Stop the engine.

Perform Step 1 through Step 3 to open the upper window.

Note: If equipped, the Cat Grade Control monitor may interfere with the window when opening. Ensure that the monitor is adjusted out of the way before opening the window.

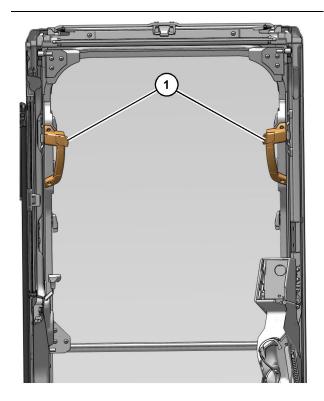


Illustration 249
(1) Release lever

g06185052

- **1.** Release the auto-lock latches by pressing release levers (1) on the window handles.
- **2.** Holding both handles on the window frame, pull the window upward.
- Hold both grips that are provided on the window frame and move the window into the storage position until the auto-lock latches near the ceiling are engaged.

Perform Steps 4 through 5 to close the upper window.

Note: If equipped, the Cat Grade Control monitor may interfere with the window when closing. Ensure that the monitor is adjusted out of the way before closing the window.

- **4.** Release the auto-lock latches by pressing release levers (1) on the window handles.
- Reverse Steps 1 through 3 to close the upper window.

Perform Steps 6 through 8 to open the lower window and close the lower window.

6. Raise the lower window out of the window frame.

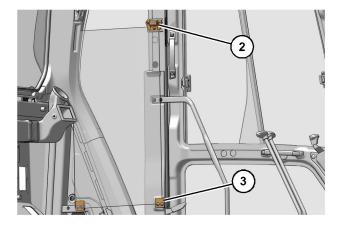


Illustration 250

- (2) Catch
- (3) Brackets
- 7. Store the lower window in the holder that is located in the rear of the left side cab frame. To store the lower window, locate one end of the lower window into brackets (3). Secure the opposite end of the lower window with catch (2).

a06185076

8. To close the lower window, reverse the procedure that is used for opening the lower window.

Note: The lower window is curved. The lower window can only be positioned one way in the holders.

Sun Screen

SMCS Code: 7165-ZZ

MARNING

When opening or closing the windows, be extra careful to prevent any personal injury. The hydraulic lockout control must be in the LOCKED position in order to prevent any possibility of sudden movement of the machine due to inadvertent contact with the hydraulic control(s).

NOTICE

Do not change the position of the sun screen without performing the following actions:

- · Park the machine on a level surface.
- · Lower the work tool to the ground.
- Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
- Stop the engine.



Illustration 251

g06179846

Pull sun screen (1) down from the ceiling. Hook the sun screen to the brackets (2) at both sides of the front window. The sun screen may be positioned at two different heights.

i07538807

Roof Hatch

SMCS Code: 7303

WARNING

When opening or closing the windows, be extra careful to prevent any personal injury. The hydraulic lockout control must be in the LOCKED position in order to prevent any possibility of sudden movement of the machine due to inadvertent contact with the hydraulic control(s).

NOTICE

Do not change the position of the roof hatch without performing the following actions:

- · Park the machine on a level surface.
- · Lower the work tool to the ground.
- Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
- · Stop the engine.

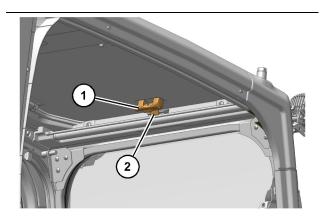


Illustration 252

g06179871

(1) Grip (2) Lock

To open the roof hatch, release lock (2). Hold grip (1) and push the roof hatch upward.

To close the roof hatch, hold grip (1) and pull the roof hatch downward. Engage lock (2) securely.

NOTICE

Do not stand or walk on the hatch or the roof of the cab. Serious damage may occur.

Cab Door

SMCS Code: 7308



Illustration 253 g06180275

To open the cab door from the outside of the cab, pull outward on the door handle.

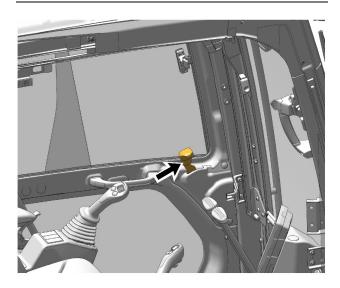


Illustration 254 g06179959

To open the cab door while inside the cab, push forward on the lever for the cab door latch.

For additional ventilation, open the cab door all the way to engage the catch on the exterior wall of the cab.

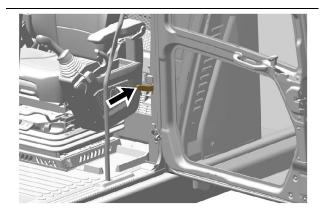


Illustration 255 g06180267

To release the cab door from the catch, pull downward on the cab door release lever.

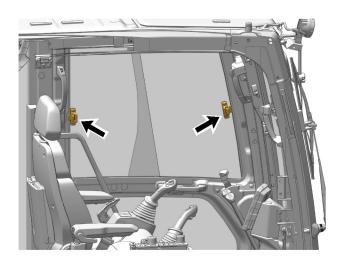


Illustration 256 g06179957

To open a window, release the window latch, and then slide the window to the desired position.

Travel Control (Straight Travel Pedal (If Equipped))

SMCS Code: 5462

WARNING

With certain attachment combinations, the third pedal can have different functions. Always check for third pedal function before using the third pedal. Improper operation of the third pedal could result in serious injury or death.



Illustration 257

g06178249

Position for normal travel

- (A) Rear of machine
- (B) Final drive
- (C) Idler

When you travel, make sure that final drive sprockets (B) are under the rear of the machine.

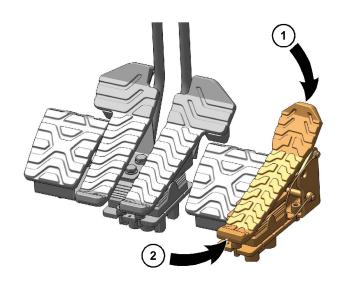


Illustration 258

g06178758

- (1) Forward Travel
- (2) Reverse Travel

The third pedal is to the right of the right travel pedal. The third pedal controls the forward and backward movement of the machine.

Note: If the third pedal is depressed and a travel pedal or a travel lever is operated, the machine will turn accordingly.

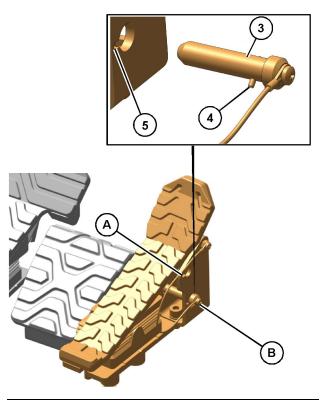


Illustration 259

g06178798

- (3) Lock pin
- (4) Pin
- (5) Notch
- (A) LOCKED position
- (B) UNLOCKED position

When the machine is not operated with the third pedal, install lock pin (3) at the LOCKED position to prevent accidental operation.

Note: To prevent lock pin (3) from being pulled out, insert pin (4) through notch (5) and turn lock pin (3) counterclockwise by 1/4 turn.

Joystick Controls

SMCS Code: 5705

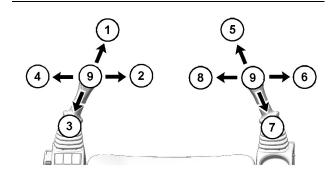


Illustration 260

g06180324

- (1) STICK OUT
- (2) SWING RIGHT
- (3) STICK IN
- (4) SWING LEFT
- (5) BOOM LOWER
- (6) BUCKET DUMP
- (7) BOOM RAISE
- (8) BUCKET CLOSE
- (9) HOLD

WARNING

The joystick and controls on the joystick can be configured with different functions. Always make sure to check the joystick configuration on the monitor before using the machine to avoid unexpected machine movement. These unexpected machine movements could cause a hazard resulting in serious injury or death.

WARNING

The Fine Swing Control delays the engagement of the swing parking brake.

If the machine is operating on a slope with the Fine Swing Control in the ON position, the swing motion may become uncontrollable which could result in property damage, personal injury or death.

Turn the Fine Swing Control to the OFF position when the machine is operating on a slope.

When you release the joysticks from any position, the joysticks will return to HOLD position (9). Movement of the upper structure will stop unless the fine swing control (if equipped) is ON. When the fine swing control is ON, the swing parking brake will not activate until 6.5 seconds after the joystick control for the swing function returns to the HOLD position.

Two functions may be performed at the same time by moving a joystick diagonally.

The machine control pattern is initially set at the factory to the SAE system, as shown. The pattern on the left pertains to the left joystick and the pattern on the right pertains to the right joystick.

The machine control pattern can be varied. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns" for more information.

Manual Low Idle – Activate the manual low idle to reduce the engine speed to approximately 1000 rpm. Pressing the switch again will allow the engine speed to return to the original setting of the engine speed dial.

The manual low idle allows the operator to reduce the rpm without touching the engine speed dial. Manual low idle is useful when the operator wants to reduce the engine speed to talk to someone or while the operator is waiting for a truck.

3 Button Joystick Controls

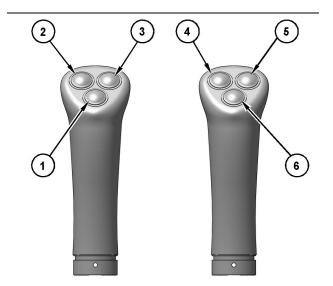


Illustration 261

g06223512

3 Button Joystick Controls

- (1) Left joystick switch 1
- (2) Left joystick switch 2
- (3) Left joystick switch 3
- (4) Right joystick switch 2
- (5) Right joystick switch 3
- (6) Right joystick switch 1

Table 24

Joystick Configurations		
Switch Location	3 Button Joystick	
1	Horn	
2	Configurable	
3	Configurable	
4	Configurable	
5	Configurable	
6	Configurable	

Vertical Slider Joystick Controls (If Equipped)

Note: The following functions can be assigned to the configurable buttons: radio mute, one-touch low idle, work tool select, and HVAC.

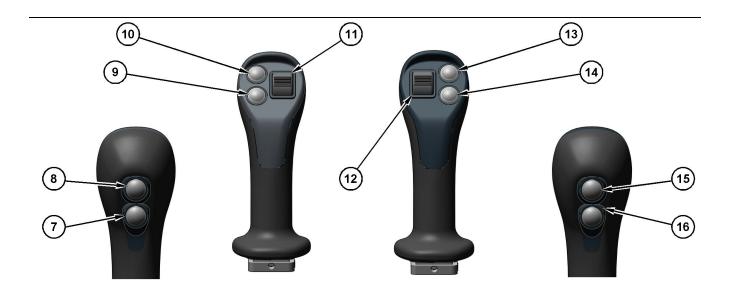


Illustration 262 g06225116

Vertical Slider Joystick Controls

- (7) Left joystick switch 3(8) Left joystick switch 4(9) Left joystick switch 1
- (10) Left joystick switch 2

- (11) Left joystick thumbwheel
- (12) Right joystick thumbwheel (13) Right joystick switch 2
- (14) Right joystick switch 1

(continued)

- (15) Right joystick switch 4
- (16) Right joystick switch 3

Table 25

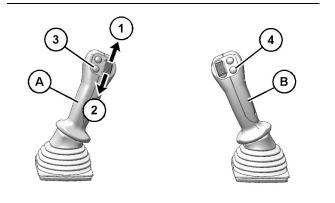
Joystick Configurations		
Switch Location	Joystick With Tool Con- trol Sliders	
7(1)	Hammer	
8	Configurable	
9	Horn	
10	Configurable	
11(1)	Work Tool Rotation	
12(1)	Work Tool Open / Close	
13	Configurable	
14	Configurable	
15	Configurable	
16	Configurable	

(Table 25, contd)

(1) Button is configurable on machines without tool control.

Medium Pressure (If Equipped)

Rotating Tool Control



- Illustration 263
- (A) Left joystick
- (A) Lett Joystick
 (B) Right joystick
 (1) Thumb wheel (Clockwise)
 (2) Thumb wheel (Counterclockwise)
 (3) Horn switch
 (4) AEC switch

g06260903



(1) ROTATE CLOCKWISE - Move the thumb wheel upward to rotate the work tool clockwise.



(2) ROTATE COUNTERCLOCKWISE -Move the thumb wheel downward to rotate the work tool counterclockwise.



(3) HORN - Press the horn switch on the left joystick to activate the horn.



(4) AEC SWITCH - Press the AEC switch on the right joystick to activate low engine speed. Press the switch again to activate high engine speed.

i08607060

Joystick Controls

(Joystick Steering)

SMCS Code: 5705

⚠ WARNING

Verify the joystick control pattern before operating the machine.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Failure to understand control functions could result in injury or death.

Ensure that the joystick control film on the cab window matches the control functions of your machine. Consult your Cat ® dealer for additional information regarding the joystick control film.

Become familiar with the joystick controls before operating the machine.

Note: Joystick steering cannot be used with shovel crane mode.

Joystick Steering

Enable the joystick steering function using the monitor screen. Once the function is enabled, joystick will be activated by pressing the configured joystick button. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, "Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement" for more information.

The following three modes are available in joystick steering function:

- Joystick steering mode
- Cruise control mode
- Blade control mode (normal and float)

Left Joystick Control Patterns

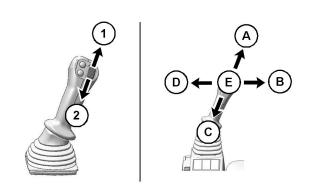


Illustration 264 Left Joystick g06720799

Table 26

lavatiale	Left Joystick Patterns			
Joystick Control	Standard Mode (ISO)	Joystick Steer Mode	Cruise Con- trol Mode	
E	Hold			
Α	Stick Out	Travel Forward	Cancel Cruise	
В	Right Swing	Turn Right	Turn Right	
С	Stick In	Travel Backward	Cancel Cruise	
D	Left Swing Turn Left		Turn Left	
1(1)	Right Swing			
2 (1)	Left Swing			

⁽¹⁾ Thumb wheel is configured with swing or stick operation only when the joystick steer mode is on.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, "Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement" for more information.

Right Joystick Control Patterns

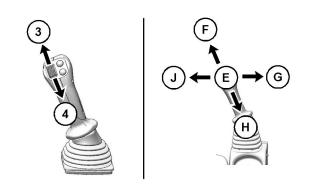


Illustration 265
Right Joystick

g06720802

Table 27

	Right Joystick Patterns			
Joystick Control	Standard Mode (ISO)	Joystick Steer Mode	Cruise Control Mode	Blade Mode
Е	Hold		Hold	
F	Boom Down			Blade Down
G	Bucket Dump		Bucket Dump	
Н	Boom Up			Blade Up
J	Bucket Close		Bucket Close	
3(1)	Stick Out			
4 (1)	Stick In			

⁽¹⁾ Thumb wheel is configured with swing or stick operation only when the joystick steer mode is on.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, M0109053, "Next Generation Hydraulic Excavator Monitoring System Supplement" for more information.

i06951419

SmartBoom Control

(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 5461-ZS; 7332

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from not following the proper procedures.

To avoid the possibility of injury or death, follow the established procedure.

WARNING

Activating the SmartBoom function and using the work tool joystick control while the front of the machine is elevated could result in unexpected machine motion. Unexpected machine motion could result in serious injury or death. Do not activate the SmartBoom function if the front of the machine is elevated by the front linkage.

A WARNING

Do not elevate or lower the track when in the SmartBoom mode. Follow the operation procedures for the SmartBoom in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow these instructions can result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

Always make sure that the boom control joystick is in the NEUTRAL position before activating the SmartBoom control. Activating the SmartBoom control with the joystick out of the neutral position could resulted in unexpected machine motion which could result in serious injury or death.

⚠ WARNING

Do not select any SmartBoom mode, using the SmartBoom selector switch located on the console, while the tracks are elevated. Selecting the SmartBoom mode with the tracks elevated could result in a sudden drop of the machine which could result in serious injury or death.

A WARNING

If any SmartBoom mode is active and the boom control joystick is in the BOOM DOWN position (forward) with a bucket or a work tool on the ground, pressing the disable button that is located on the front of the right hand joystick could cause a sudden boom down motion. This control function could lift the machine upward, with unexpected machine movement that could result in serious injury or death. Do not press the disable button while the SmartBoom mode is active and the boom control joystick is in the BOOM DOWN position (forward) with a bucket or a work tool on the ground.

WARNING

Do not attempt to lift the tracks of the machine by using the disable button and applying downward force with the boom lowering control while the machine is in any SmartBoom mode. Releasing the disable button will immediately return the machine to the active SmartBoom mode. This action could cause the machine to drop down abruptly which could result in serious injury or death.



Illustration 266 q06210059

From the home screen, press the function list button.

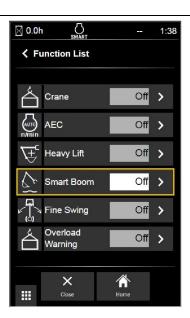


Illustration 267

g06210090

Tap the smart boom option, or if using the jog dial, select the smart boom option and press down on the dial.



Illustration 268

g06210095

Select either "Up & Down" or "Down Only" from the list. The two options work as follows:

"Up & Down" mode: When the joystick is moved to the BOOM DOWN position, the boom will lower by the weight of the boom. The boom can move upward freely.

"Down Only" mode: The boom will lower by the weight of the boom when the control lever is moved to the BOOM LOWER position. This mode prevents the boom from moving upward. To move the boom upward, the operator must use the boom control joystick to activate the BOOM UP mode.

Press the home button when finished.

During operation of the SmartBoom function, the operator may wish to apply downward force to the boom. The operator can disable the SmartBoom function temporarily with the SmartBoom disable switch. While the trigger switch is pressed, BOOM RAISE and BOOM LOWER will operate in the normal modes. The SmartBoom disable switch is a configurable switch.

i08222281

Work Tool Control (One-Way Flow)

(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 6700

The following information pertains to work tools that require hydraulic oil flow in one direction. Hydraulic hammers are an example of work tools that require hydraulic oil flow in one direction.

Note: For information that pertains to work tools that require hydraulic oil flow in two directions, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Work Tool Control (Two-Way Flow)".

Joystick

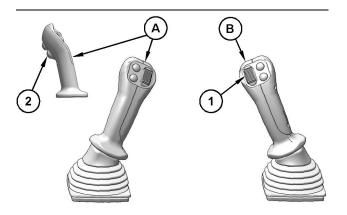


Illustration 269 g06588792

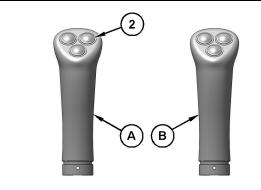


Illustration 270

(A) Left joystick

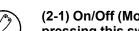
(B) Right joystick

(1) Variable Speed – Move the thumb wheel downward to activate the work tool. Move the thumb wheel further to increase the speed of the work tool.

(2-1) On/Off (Momentary) - While pressing this switch, the work tool will remain activate at a constant rate. Release the switch to turn off the work tool.

g06588793







(2-2) On/Off (Toggled) – Press the switch once to activate the work tool. Press the switch again to turn off the work tool.

Work Tool Pedal

WARNING

With certain attachment combinations, the work tool pedal can have different functions. Always check for work tool pedal function before using the work tool pedal. Improper operation of the work tool pedal could result in serious injury or death.

The work tool pedal can be installed on either side of the travel pedals. The work tool pedal allows the operator to modulate the speed of the work tool.

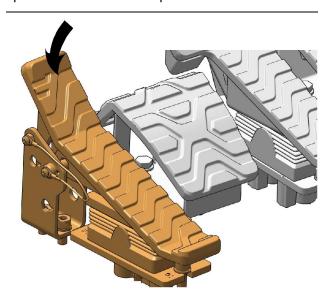


Illustration 271 g06180447

Variable Speed – Push down on the front of the pedal to activate the work tool. Move the pedal further to increase the speed of the work tool. Release the pedal to turn off the work tool.

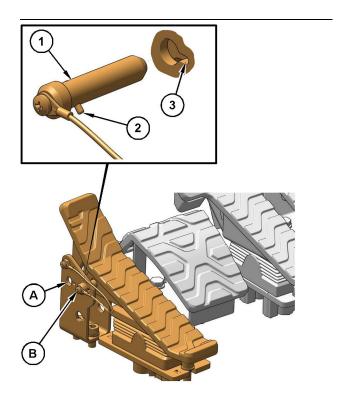


Illustration 272

g06591307

- (1) Lock pin
- (2) Pin
- (3) Notch
- (A) UNLOCKED position
- (B) LOCKED position

When you are not using the work tool, put the lock pin (1) in LOCKED position (B). This will lock the work tool pedal to prevent any unexpected operation of the work tool.

Note: To prevent lock pin (1) from being accidentally pulled out, insert pin (2) through notch (3) and turn lock pin (1) counterclockwise by 1/4 turn.

i07243676

Work Tool Control (Two-Way Flow)

(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 6700

MARNING

The joystick and controls on the joystick can be configured with different functions. Always make sure to check the joystick configuration on the monitor before using the machine to avoid unexpected machine movement. These unexpected machine movements could cause a hazard resulting in serious injury or death.

The following information pertains to work tools that require hydraulic oil flow in two directions. These work tools can also be equipped with a rotate circuit. Hydraulic shears, pulverizers, crushers, and grapples are examples of work tools that require hydraulic oil flow in two directions.

Note: For information that pertains to hydraulic hammers, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Work Tool Control (One-Way)".

Joystick

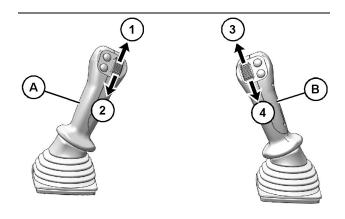


Illustration 273

g06180488

(A) Left joystick (B) Right joystick



(1) ROTATE CLOCKWISE – Move the thumb wheel upward to rotate the work tool clockwise.



(2) ROTATE COUNTERCLOCKWISE – Move the thumb wheel downward to rotate the work tool counterclockwise.



(3) CLOSE – Move the thumb wheel upward to close the work tool.



(4) OPEN – Move the thumb wheel downward to open the work tool.

Work Tool Pedal

WARNING

With certain attachment combinations, the work tool pedal can have different functions. Always check for work tool pedal function before using the work tool pedal. Improper operation of the work tool pedal could result in serious injury or death.

The work tool pedal can be installed on either side of the travel pedals. The work tool pedal allows the operator to vary the speed of the work tool.

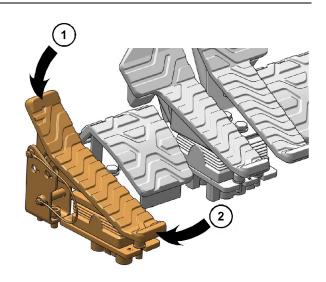


Illustration 274

g06180510



(1) CLOSE – Push down on the front of the pedal to close the work tool.



(2) OPEN – Push down on the rear of the pedal to open the work tool.

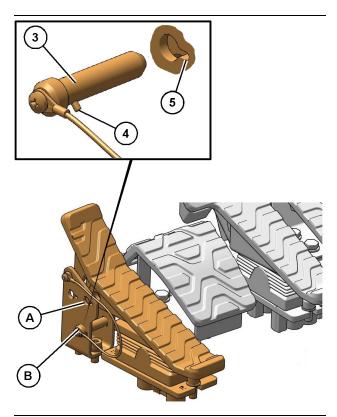


Illustration 275

g06180514

- (3) Lock pin
- (4) Pin
- (5) Notch
- (A) LOCKED position
- (B) UNLOCKED position

When you are not using the work tool, put the lock pin (3) in LOCKED position (A). This will lock the work tool pedal to prevent any unexpected operation of the work tool.

Note: To prevent lock pin (3) from being accidentally pulled out, insert pin (4) through notch (5) and turn lock pin (3) by 1/4 turn.

i08209549

Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns

SMCS Code: 5059; 5137

Changing Machine Control Pattern (If Equipped)

WARNING

Whenever a change is made to the machine control pattern, also exchange the pattern card in the cab to match the new pattern.

Check the machine control pattern for conformance to the pattern on the card in the cab. If the pattern does not match, change the card to match the machine control pattern before you operate the machine. Failure to do so could result in personal injury.

The machine control pattern can be changed to the ISO/JIS pattern, BHL pattern, MHI pattern, KOBE pattern, or the former SCM pattern. To change the joystick controls between the patterns, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Monitoring System for more information.

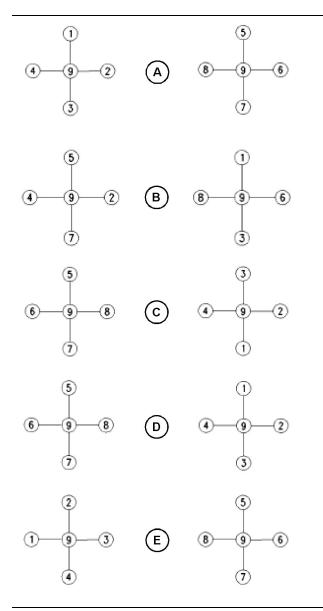


Illustration 276 g06136699

- (A) ISO/JIS machine control pattern
- (B) BHL machine control pattern
- (C) MHI machine control pattern
- (D) KOBE machine control pattern
- (E) Former SCM machine control pattern

The patterns on the left side of the Illustration show the possible configurations for the left control lever. The patterns on the right side of the Illustration show the possible configurations for the right control lever.



STICK OUT (1) – Move the control lever to this position to move the stick outward.



SWING RIGHT (2) – Move the control lever to this position to swing the upper structure to the right.



STICK IN (3) – Move the control lever to this position to move the stick inward.



SWING LEFT (4) – Move the control lever to this position to swing the upper structure to the left.



BOOM LOWER (5) – Move the control lever to this position to lower the boom.



BUCKET DUMP (6) – Move the control lever to this position to dump the bucket.



BOOM RAISE (7) – Move the control lever to this position to raise the boom.



BUCKET CLOSE (8) – Move the control lever to this position to close the bucket.

HOLD (9) – When the control lever is released from any position, the control lever will return to the HOLD position. Movement of the upper structure will stop.

Two functions may be performed at the same time by moving a control lever diagonally.

If the machine is equipped with a hydraulic hammer, the function of position (6) and of position (8) is different.

HYDRAULIC HAMMER RAISE (6) – Move the control lever to this position to raise the hydraulic hammer.

HYDRAULIC HAMMER LOWER (8) – Move the control lever to this position to lower the hydraulic hammer.

If the machine is equipped with a grapple, the function of position (6) and of position (8) is different.

GRAPPLE OPEN (6) – Move the control lever to this position to open the grapple arms.

GRAPPLE CLOSE (8) – Move the control lever to this position to close the grapple arms.

If the machine is equipped with a clamshell, the function of position (6) and of position (8) is different when in "Clamshell" mode.

Note: When in "Clamshell" mode, the work tool can only be operated if Work Tool Select also has clamshell selected.

CLAMSHELL OPEN (6) – Move the control lever to this position to open the clamshell.

CLAMSHELL CLOSE (8) – Move the control lever to this position to close the clamshell.

Work Tool Flow Control

SMCS Code: 7007-WTL

Many hydraulic attachment circuits are adaptable on this machine. Various types of work tools can be installed. Select a suitable arrangement of the hydraulic circuit in order to provide the requirements for flow and the requirements for action for the work tool that is used.

One-way flow is available for work tools such as hydraulic hammers.

Two-way flow is available for work tools such as hydraulic shears.

A manually controlled ball valve is provided in the return line.

Before attachment hydraulic circuits are serviced, place the machine in the servicing position. Stop the engine.

Place the ball valve in the correct position. To determine the correct position, refer to the requirements for the work tool on Illustrations 277, 278, and 279.

Use the manual lever to turn the ball valve. Make sure that you fully turn the ball valve until the ball valve stops.

Never use the manual lever as a step when the manual lever is attached to the ball valve. Remove the manual lever from the valve after the valve is adjusted.

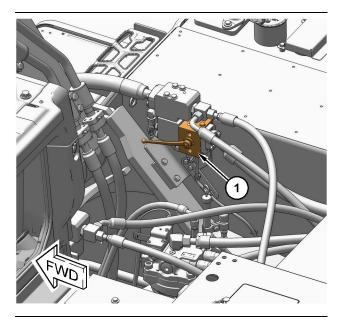


Illustration 277
Ball valve location
(1) Ball valve

g06296401

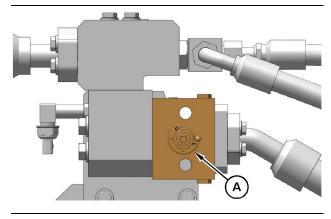


Illustration 278

g06296404

Ball valve (one-way flow position)

(A) Ball valve open

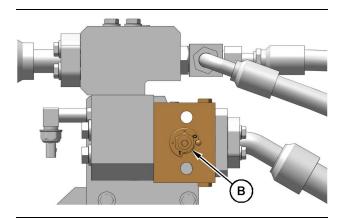


Illustration 279

g06296406

Ball valve (two-way flow position)

(B) Ball valve closed

i07046867

Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control

SMCS Code: 1273

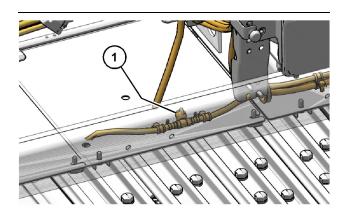


Illustration 280

g06208630

Fuel tank drain valve

Fuel Tank Drain Valve (1) – The drain valve for the fuel tank is located behind the right side access door. To drain the water and sediment from the fuel tank, turn the fuel drain valve counterclockwise. To close the fuel tank drain valve, turn the drain valve clockwise.

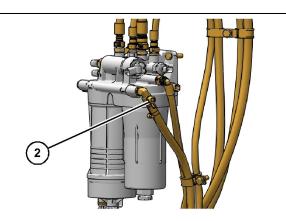


Illustration 281

Fuel shutoff valve

g06208640

Fuel Shutoff Valve (2) – The fuel shutoff valve is on the fuel system water separator. To shut off the fuel supply, turn the fuel shutoff valve clockwise. To turn on the fuel supply, turn the fuel shutoff valve counterclockwise.

Note: For more detailed information that pertains to draining the water and sediment from the fuel tank, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain".

Engine Starting

i08185791

Engine Starting

SMCS Code: 1000; 1090; 1456; 7000

NOTICE

This machine is equipped with a Cat [®] Machine Security System (MSS) and may not start under certain conditions.

NOTICE

The engine start switch must be in the ON position and the engine must be running in order to maintain electrical functions and hydraulic functions. This procedure must be followed in order to prevent serious machine damage.

Note: The engine can start in areas that have temperatures as low as -18°C (0°F). For areas that are colder, a starting kit for cold weather is available.

1. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

This machine is equipped with an engine neutral start system. The system only allows the engine to start when the lever for the hydraulic lockout control is in the LOCKED position.

2. Ensure that the joysticks and travel controls are in the HOLD position.



Illustration 282 g06209482

3. The operator passcode, Bluetooth key or Cat App: Fleet management app must be authenticated before starting the engine. Once authenticated, an "Engine Start Allowed" message will appear across the top of the monitor and the start switch LED will turn green.

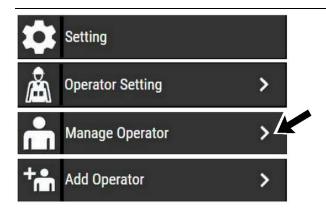


Illustration 283 g06579150

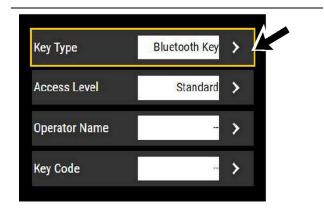


Illustration 284 g06579155

4. Bluetooth devices and passcodes can be registered using the in-cab display if the operator is logged in to the system using a master access account. Contact your Cat dealer for additional information.

Reference: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Machine Security System, Operator Login for instructions.

5. Before you start the engine, check for the presence of bystanders or maintenance personnel. Ensure that all personnel are clear of the machine. Briefly sound the horn before you start the engine.

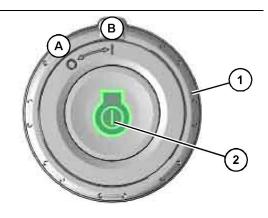


Illustration 285 g06226447

- (A) Off
- (B) On
- (1) Engine start ring
- (2) Engine start button
- 6. Turn the engine start ring(1) to the ON position, then press and hold start button (2) to start the engine. Release the button after the engine has started.

If the engine is having trouble starting, do not crank the engine for more than 30 seconds. Cranking the engine for more than 30 seconds can damage starting system components.

i07549789

Engine and Machine Warm-Up

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

NOTICE

Keep engine speed low and do not operate until the message 'Warm-Up Mode Power Derate" on the monitor goes out. If it does not go out within thirty seconds, stop the engine and investigate the cause before starting again. Failure to do so, can cause engine damage.

NOTICE

Always run the engine at low idle for at least ten minutes before performing any other operations in cold conditions or each time the engine oil and oil filter are changed in order to protect your engine and hydraulic components.

184

NOTICE

Depending on the ambient temperature, in order to prevent the machine operation with high speed without sufficient lubrication at the turbo bearing, the engine speed may be set to low speed and the hydraulic power minimized for a pre-determined time after the engine starts. Refer to turbo protection feature.

The engine may automatically change speeds when the machine is stationary and idling in cold ambient temperature for an extended time. This is to:

- Maintain desired coolant temperature.
- Maintain desired operation of engine systems.

During extended idling in cold ambient conditions, engine speed may operate between 900 rpm and 1000 rpm. Operation at 1000 rpm is minimal and will only last for up to 20 minutes.

Hydraulic System

WARNING

When you cycle the machine controls, the machine can move suddenly. Contact between the machine and external objects or ground personnel can result in serious injury or death. Before you cycle the machine controls, the machine should be located in an unobstructed, hazard-free work area that is away from external objects and ground personnel.

1. Make sure that the area is clear of personnel and equipment.

Note: The hydraulic lockout control must be in the UNLOCKED position before the hydraulic controls will function.

2. Allow the engine to warm up at low idle for at least 5 minutes. Engage the work tool controls and disengage the work tool controls. This will speed up the warm-up of the hydraulic components.

When you idle the machine for warm-up, observe the following recommendations:

- If the temperature is greater than 0°C (32°F), warm up the engine for approximately 15 minutes.
- If the temperature is less than 0°C (32°F), warm up the engine for approximately 30 minutes.
- If the temperature is less than 18°C (0°F) or if hydraulic functions are sluggish, additional time may be required.

NOTICE

The hydraulic oil temperature should be higher than 25 °C (77 °F) before performing work with the machine. Make sure that the warm-up procedure is performed.

If the hydraulic oil temperature is less than 25 °C (77 °F) and the machine is operated abruptly, serious damage to the hydraulic components may occur.

Note: The recommended operating temperature of the hydraulic fluid for this machine is 55 °C (131 °F).

3. To warm up the hydraulic oil, turn the engine speed dial to the medium engine speed. Run the engine for approximately 5 minutes and move the joystick intermittently from the BUCKET DUMP position to the HOLD position. Do not hold the joystick in the BUCKET DUMP position with the bucket cylinder fully extended for more than 10 seconds.

This allows the oil to attain relief pressure, which causes the oil to warm up more rapidly.

- **4.** Turn the engine speed dial to the maximum engine speed and repeat Step 3.
- 5. Cycle all controls to circulate warm oil through all hydraulic cylinders and all hydraulic lines, and through the swing motor and travel motors.
- **6.** Observe the gauges and the indicators frequently during the operation.



Turbo Protection Power Derate – After an engine start, the engine speed will be set to low speed and the hydraulic

power limited for a time period. During this period, the monitor displays the message "Warm -Up Mode Power Derate". (Maximum is around 30 seconds). After the turbo bearing lubrication is sufficient, the engine speed goes to the setting dial speed and the monitor stops to display the message.

Improve Cold-Weather Performance

Covers installed over the vents in the radiator compartment door will help to control overcooling in ambient temperatures below -15° C (5° F).

The materials used for the covers and the method used to install the covers is at the installers discretion.

Install the covers if overcooling is observed while the machine is idling in ambient temperatures below -15° C (5° F).

Stop the machine, and remove the covers under the following conditions:

- The ambient temperature is above −15° C (5° F).
- The engine temperature gauge indicates overheating.
- The hydraulic oil temperature gauge indicates overheating.

Recommendation for Crankcase Breather Protection (Machines with C4.4 and C7.1)

Crankcase ventilation gases contain a large quantity of water vapor. This water vapor can freeze in cold ambient conditions and can plug or damage the crankcase ventilation system. If the engine is operated in temperatures below -25° C (-13° F), measures must be taken to prevent freezing and plugging of the breather system. Insulated hoses and a heated canister assembly should be installed.

Consult with your Cat dealer for the recommended breather components for operation from -25° to -40° C (-13° to -40° F).

Installation



Illustration 286 g06181368

Vent locations on the radiator compartment door

- **1.** Clean the surface of the radiator compartment door.
- Install the covers in the locations shown in Illustration 286. The covers should fully cover the door vents.

Operation

i08484651

Operation Information

SMCS Code: 7000

Note: Operating Temperature Range for the Machine The machine must function satisfactorily in the anticipated ambient temperature limits that are encountered during operation. The standard machine configuration is intended for use within an ambient temperature range of -18 °C (0 °F) to 43 °C (109 °F). Special configurations for different ambient temperatures may be available. Consult your Cat ® dealer for additional information on special configurations of your machine.

Make sure that no personnel are on the machine or near the machine to prevent any personal injury. Keep the machine under control always to prevent injury.

Sound the horn and allow adequate time for bystanders to clear the area before moving the machine into a restricted visibility area. Follow local practices for your machine application. For more information refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Restricted Visibility".

Reduce the engine speed when you maneuver the machine in tight quarters and when you drive over an incline.

Select the necessary travel speed range before you drive downgrade. Do not change the travel speed range while you drive downhill.

Use the same travel speed on a downgrade and on an upgrade.

When you travel for any distance, keep the stick inward and carry the boom in a low position.

When you drive up a steep grade, keep the boom as close to the ground as possible.

When you travel uphill or you travel downhill, keep the boom on the uphill side of the machine.

- Adjust the operator seat. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual. "Seat" for more information.
- **2.** Fasten the seat belt. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Seat Belt" for more information.

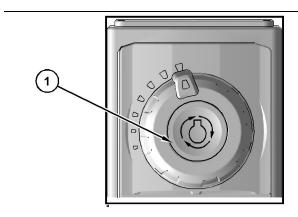


Illustration 287

q06685022

- (1) Engine speed dial
- Turn the engine speed dial (1) to the desired operating range. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls" for more information.
- 4. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the UNLOCKED position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls" for more information.

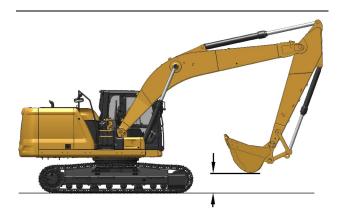


Illustration 288

g06181525

Typical example

5. Raise the boom enough to provide sufficient ground clearance.

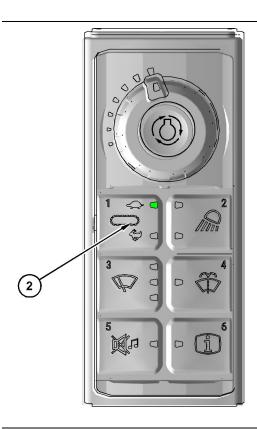


Illustration 289

(2) Travel speed control switch

- 6. Select the desired travel speed by operating the travel speed control switch (2). The indicator will light to display the active mode. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls" for more information.
- 7. Make sure that the position of the upper structure and of the undercarriage is known before you move the machine. The drive sprockets should be at the rear of the machine.

Note: The directional steering controls will operate normally if the drive sprockets are at the rear of the machine and the idlers are at the front of the machine and under the cab. When the sprockets are under the cab, the travel controls will operate backward.

- **8.** Turn the engine speed dial to increase the engine speed (rpm) to the desired speed.
- 9. Push both travel levers forward at the same time to travel forward. If both travel levers are pushed farther, the travel speed at the selected engine speed (rpm) will be faster.

Note: If the machine does not operate or if the machine does not travel in a straight line, consult your Cat [®] dealer.

- 10. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls" for information about spot turning and about pivot turns.
- **11.** When you make turns in soft material, travel in a forward direction occasionally to clear the tracks.
- 12. Slowly move both of the travel levers or both of the travel pedals to the CENTER position to stop the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls" for more information

Lifting Objects

Regional regulations may require the use of an overload warning device and boom and stick lowering control valves when used to lift objects.

The overload warning device (if equipped) must be adjusted for the bucket linkage and bucket size that is installed on the machine. Adjust the overload warning device for proper operation.

The setting for the overload warning device (if equipped) should be checked by an authorized dealer.

Contact your Cat [®] dealer for additional information.

i07311368

Frozen Ground Conditions

SMCS Code: 7000

q06685024

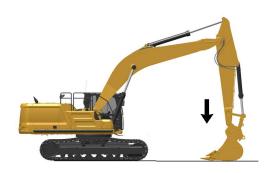


Illustration 290

g06279284

To free the tracks from frozen ground, swing the boom to the front of the machine. Use boom down pressure to free the idler end of the machine.

Swing the boom to the rear of the machine. Use boom down pressure to free the sprocket end of the machine.

i07311402

Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped

SMCS Code: 7000

To lower the boom, place the hydraulic lockout control in the UNLOCKED position. Move the joystick to the BOOM LOWER position. If the accumulator is still charged, the boom will lower.

If the boom does not lower, the accumulator is empty. Use one of the following procedures to lower the boom.

Machines Equipped with Boom Lowering Control Valves

WARNING

Boom load may cause cylinder oil pressure to reach relief pressure of the boom lowering control device when the boom is supported by one cylinder. Boom can lower suddenly, causing possible injury or death.

To avoid possible injury or death, be sure no one is under or near the work tool before manually lowering the boom.

Keep all personnel away from the boom drop area when lowering the boom with the engine stopped.

The boom lowering control valve is at the back of the base of the boom. The boom lowering control valve allows the operator to manually lower the boom if the engine is stopped.

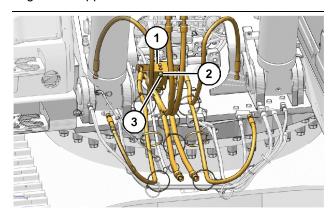


Illustration 291

g06209514

- (1) Boom lowering control valve
- (2) Locknut
- (3) Check valve

- Release the pressure in the hydraulic system. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, System Pressure Release for instructions.
- 2. Loosen locknut (2) on the boom lowering control valve (1).
- Slowly turn check valve (3) counterclockwise until the check valve stops. The boom will lower to the ground.
- 4. Make sure that the work tool is resting on the ground. Tighten check valve to 2.25 ± 0.25 N⋅m (20 ± 3 lb in).
- 5. Tighten the locknut (2) to $4 \pm 0.5 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ (35 ± 4 lb in).
- **6.** Before operating the machine, make any necessary repairs.

For additional information, consult your Caterpillar dealer.

Machines without a Boom Lowering Control Valve

WARNING

Be sure no one is under or near the work tools before manually lowering the boom. Keep all personnel away from the boom drop area when lowering the boom with the engine stopped in order to avoid possible personal injury.

Use the following procedure to manually lower the boom due to an engine malfunction.

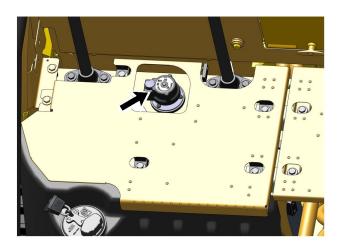


Illustration 292 g06184080

WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off. Relieve pressure by slowly turning the cap until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

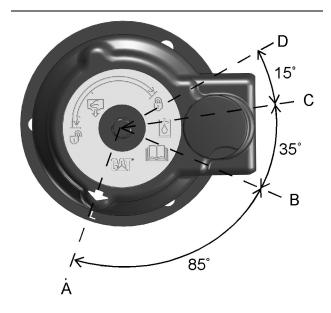


Illustration 293

g06184990

Filler cap

- (A) LOCK position
- (B) PRESSURE RELEASE START position
- (C) PRESSURE RELEASE END position
- (D) OPEN position
- Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 293 for filler cap positions.
 - a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).
 - Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).
 - c. Move the arrow from position (C) to position
 - d. After the tank pressure is relieved, remove the filler cap.

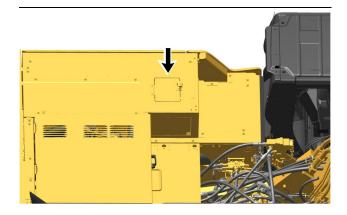


Illustration 294

g06279315

2. Open the access cover.

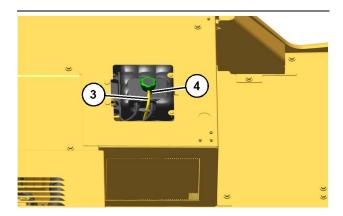


Illustration 295

g06279321

- (3) Hose
- (4) Clamp
- Loosen clamp (4) and disconnect hose (3) from the reservoir. Remove the clamps and the cable straps that secure the hose to the machine.

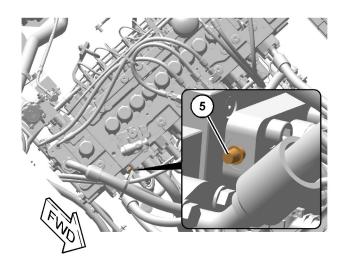


Illustration 296
Main control valve

(5) Screw

4. Connect one end of the radiator hose to screw (5). Put the other end of the hose into the hydraulic tank opening. The screw is at the front, right side of the main control valve.

q06205184

- **5.** Slowly loosen screw (5) by a maximum of 1/2 turn. This allows the hydraulic oil in the boom circuit to drain into the hydraulic tank. The boom will now start to lower.
- 6. Make sure that the work tool has lowered all the way to the ground. Tighten screw (5) to 13 ± 2 N⋅m (9 ± 1 lb ft).
- 7. Disconnect the hose from the screw. Do not allow the oil that is contained in the hose to spill. Drain the oil into a suitable container.
- **8.** Connect the hose to the original position on the radiator and install the hydraulic tank filler cap.
- 9. Close the access cover.

After completion of the manual boom lowering, make necessary repairs before you operate the machine again.

Pressure Release of Auxiliary Lines

MARNING

Personal injury can result from hot oil spray and raised work tools.

Make sure all the work tools have been lowered, the oil is cool and the pressure has been released from the hydraulic system before removing any components or lines.

Do not allow hot oil or components to contact skin.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

Refer to the procedure below before any of the following conditions.

- · The work tool is changed.
- · The position of the ball valve is changed.
- **1.** Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position.
- **2.** Place the hydraulic lockout lever in the UNLOCKED position.
- Release the pressure in the auxiliary lines by pressing the auxiliary control buttons or the auxiliary control pedal three times.
- **4.** Place the hydraulic lockout lever in the LOCKED position.
- 5. Change the work tool.

Note: There should be movement in the auxiliary hydraulic lines as the pressure is released. If there is no movement in the auxiliary hydraulic lines, start the engine and run the engine for 20 seconds. Repeat steps 1 to 5.

For additional information, consult your Cat dealer.

Operating Techniques

i07887891

Operating Technique Information

SMCS Code: 7000

A WARNING

Know the maximum height and the maximum reach of your machine. Serious injury or death by electrocution can occur if the machine or the work tools are not kept a safe distance from electrical power lines. Keep a distance of at least 3000 mm (118 inch) plus an additional 10 mm (0.4 inch) for each 1000 volts over 50000 volts.

For safety, one of the following may require a greater distance:

- Local codes
- State codes
- · Requirements of the job site

NOTICE

When swinging into a ditch, do not use the ditch to stop the swinging motion. Inspect the machine for damage if the boom is swung into a bank or an object.

Repeated stopping by an object can cause structural damage if the boom is swung into a bank or an object.

With certain boom-stick-bucket combinations, the bucket or worktool can hit the cab and/or the front structure of the machine. Always check for interference when first operating a new bucket or a new work tool. Keep the bucket or work tool away from the cab and away from the front structure during operation.

Whenever the tracks of the machine raise off the ground while digging, lower the machine back to the ground smoothly. DO NOT DROP OR CATCH IT WITH THE HYDRAULICS. Damage to the machine can result.

With certain combinations of work tools, the third pedal can have different functions. Always check the function of the third pedal before you use the third pedal.

Know the location of any buried cables. Mark the locations clearly before you dig.

Consult your Cat dealer for special work tool tips that are available for use in severe applications.

Move the machine whenever the position for operating the machine is not efficient. The machine can be moved forward or backward during the operating cycle.

When you operate the machine in close places, utilize the bucket or the other work tool to perform the following functions:

- · Pushing the machine
- Pulling the machine
- Lifting the tracks

Use a comfortable travel speed while you operate the machine.

Operating efficiency can be increased by using more than one machine control to perform a task.

Never swing a load over a truck cab or workers.

Position the truck so that material can be loaded from the rear of the truck or from the side of the truck. Load the truck evenly so that the rear axles are not overloaded.

An oversize bucket or a bucket that is equipped with side cutters should not be used in rocky material. These types of buckets slow down the cycle. Damage to the bucket and to other machine components could result.

Coaching Tips





Illustration 297

g06223763

Digging with a stable machine increases productivity. Create a stable work platform.

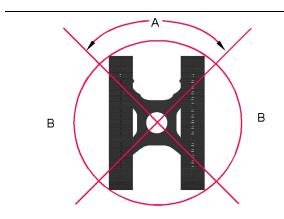


Illustration 298

g06210141

(A) Most stable dig

(B) Dump

For improved stability: Do not dig over the drives or perpendicular to the tracks.

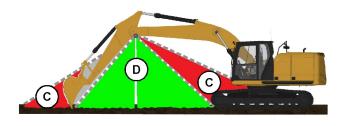


Illustration 299

g06212328

- (C) Weak crowd force
- (D) Ideal crowd force

Dig from the top down in layers. Try to have a full bucket by the time the stick is vertical, but do not reach too far with the stick. The most crowd force is generated with the stick +/- 30 degrees from vertical.

Minimize unneeded movement. Only curl/dump the bucket as much as required to hold/dump material.

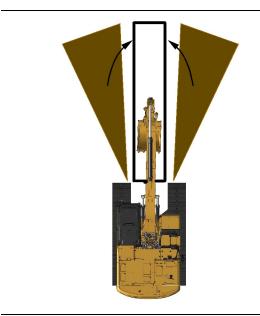


Illustration 300

g06210334

Minimize unneeded movement. During backfilling, start with the material closest to the trench.

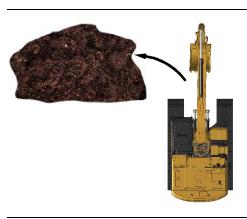


Illustration 301

g06210343

Watch your surroundings. Swing left to dump material for better visibility.

Watch the bucket. The bucket can contact the tracks or the cab.

Concentrate on being smooth, speed will come with practice.

M0110641-02 193

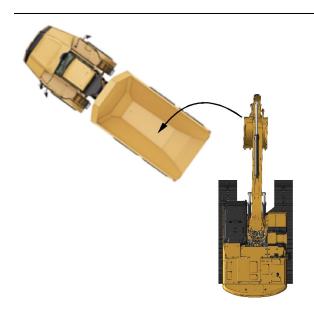


Illustration 302 g06212604

Truck placement will affect efficiency: 45 degree truck loading is more efficient than 90 degree. Spotting the truck too far from the excavator causes excessive motion.

Load from a bench when possible. Bench loading is more efficient.

Restricted Operation



Illustration 303

Do not use the swing force to perform the following operations:

g06222487

- Soil compaction
- Ground breaking
- Demolition

Do not swing the machine while the bucket tips are in the soil.

These operations will damage the boom, the stick, and the work tool and the operations will reduce the life of the equipment.



Illustration 304

Do not use the dropping force of the bucket or work tool as a hammer. Using the bucket or work tool as a hammer will bring excessive force on the rear of the machine. Possible damage to the machine could result.

q06212594



Illustration 305 g06222492

If the cylinder is operated at the end of the stroke during operations, excessive force will occur on the stopper on the inside of the cylinder. This will reduce the life of the cylinder and structures. To avoid this problem, always leave a small margin of play when the cylinder is operated.

194

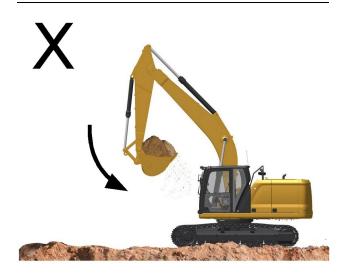




Illustration 306 g06222498

If the stick IN function is operated at full speed with a fully loaded bucket or heavy work tool attachment to the end of the cylinder stroke, excessive force will occur inside the stick cylinder. This action will reduce the life of the stick cylinder. To avoid this problem, always operate a stick IN function with moderate speed towards the end of cylinder stroke.



Illustration 307 g06222500

While the bucket is in the ground, do not use the travel force for any excavation. This operation will cause excessive force on the rear of the machine.

Illustration 308 g06222505

Do not use the dropping force of the rear of the machine for excavation. This operation will damage the machine.

Operating Precaution



Illustration 309 g06222507

NOTICE

Do not allow the machine to swing from the force of traveling when you use the bucket, the stick, or the boom to assist in travel. If the force from traveling causes the machine to swing, damage may occur to the swing motor and to the swing drive.

Do not use the force of the bucket, the stick, or the boom to assist in turning the machine while the machine is traveling. This technique is referred to as "jump steering". This technique will damage the swing motor and the swing brake.



Illustration 310 g06222509

When deep holes are dug, do not lower the boom so that the bottom side of the boom touches the ground.

When deep holes are dug, do not allow the boom to interfere with the tracks.

i07058371

Travel in Water and Mud

SMCS Code: 7000-V6

NOTICE

When working in or around any body of water, around a stream or river, or in conditions of heavy mud, be careful that the swing bearing, the swing drive gear, and the swivel joint do not dip into water, mud, sand, or gravel. If the swing bearing dips into water, mud, sand, or gravel, immediately grease the swing bearing until the used grease leaks from the outer circle of the swing bearing. Failure to carry out this procedure may cause premature wear in the swing bearing.



Illustration 311 a06223764

Depth of water to the center of the track carrier roller.

The following guidelines pertain to travel across water and travel through mud, sand, or gravel.

The machine can travel across a river only under the following conditions:

- The bed of the river is flat.
- The flow of the river is slow.
- The machine dips into the water only to the center of the track carrier roller (dimension A).

NOTICE

Do not allow the fan on the engine to contact the water while the machine travels through the water. Do not allow the fan on the engine to contact the water during a swing while the machine is in the water. Damage to the fan may occur if the fan contacts the water.

While you cross the river, carefully confirm the depth of the water with the bucket. Do not move the machine into an area that has a water depth that is greater than Dimension A.

The machine may sink gradually on soft ground. Therefore, you should frequently check the height of the undercarriage from ground level and the depth of water on the ground.

Check the swing gear by looking through the port for inspection that is on the upper frame. If there is water in the swing gear, contact your Cat dealer for the required maintenance on the swing gear.

After you travel through water, carefully clean the machine to remove any salt, sand, or other foreign matter

Procedure for Removing the Machine from Water or Mud

NOTICE

Do not allow the machine to swing from the force of traveling when you use the bucket , the stick, or the boom to assist in travel. If the force from traveling causes the machine to swing, damage may occur to the swing motor and to the swing drive.

196



Illustration 312 g06222519

1. You may not be able to move the machine by using the travel controls only. In this case use both the travel control levers/pedals and the stick to pull the machine out of the water or ground.



Illustration 313 g06222525

2. The machine may slip because of a steep slope. The procedure in Step 1 may not work. In this case, first rotate the upper structure by 180°. Then use both the travel control levers/pedals and the stick to move the machine up the slope.



Illustration 314 g06212337

3. It may be impossible to travel because the bottom of the frame comes into contact with the ground or the undercarriage is clogged with mud or gravel. In this case, operate the boom and the stick together. Raise the track and rotate the track forward and backward to remove the mud and the gravel.

i08485621

Boom, Stick and Bucket Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Digging



Illustration 315 g06212506

1. Position the stick at a 70 degree angle to the ground.

M0110641-02 197



Illustration 316 g06212513

2. Position the bucket cutting edge at a 120 degree angle to the ground. Maximum breakout force can now be exerted with the bucket.



Illustration 317 g06222533

3. Move the stick toward the cab and keep the bucket parallel to the ground.



Illustration 318 g06222535

4. If the stick stops due to the load, raise the boom and/or perform a curl to adjust the depth of the cut.

- **5.** To apply the greatest force at the cutting edge, decrease the down pressure as you move the stick toward the cab.
- **6.** Maintain a bucket attitude that ensures a continuous flow of material into the bucket.
- **7.** Continue the pass in a horizontal direction so that material peels into the bucket.



Illustration 319 g06222538

8. Close the bucket and raise the boom when the pass has been completed.



Illustration 320 g06223077

Engage the swing control when the bucket is clear of the excavation. 198



Illustration 321 g06223078

10. To dump a load, move the stick outward and open the bucket in a smooth motion.

Lifting Objects

WARNING

To prevent injury, do not exceed the rated load capacity of the machine. If the machine is not on level ground, load capacities will vary.

NOTICE

Damage to bucket cylinder, bucket or linkage could result if slings are placed incorrectly.

There may be local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of machines which lift heavy objects. Obey all local and government regulations.

Regional regulations may require the use of an overload warning device and boom and stick lowering control valves when used to lift objects.

If this machine is used to lift objects within Japan, Japanese regulations require the machine to be equipped with a shovel crane configuration.

Contact your Cat [®] dealer for additional information.

Short slings will prevent excessive load swing.



Illustration 322 g06212526

Use the lifting eye that is provided on the linkage to lift objects.

If the lifting eye is used, the connection must be made with a sling or with a shackle.



Illustration 323 q06212532

An unstable condition can exist if a load exceeds the machine load rating or if a heavy load is swung over an end or over a side.



Illustration 324 g06212530

The most stable lifting position is over a corner of the machine.



Illustration 325 g06212535

For the best stability, carry a load close to the machine and to the ground.

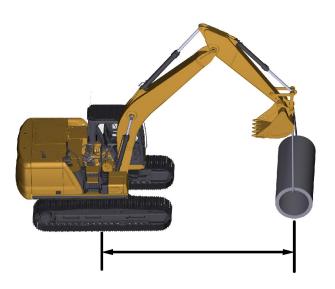


Illustration 326 g06212539

Lift capacity decreases as the distance from the swing centerline is increased.

Machines that are Equipped with a Long Reach Configuration

Machines with a long reach configuration require larger swing drift than standard machines when stopping, because inertial force in time of swing is large. So adjustments are made in timing for applying the swing brakes and speed of swinging.

Machines with a long reach configuration could be damaged and stability of the machine would be adversely affected if a control was suddenly operated, because inertial force of work tool is large.

i03875131

SmartBoom Operation

(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 5461-ZS; 7332



Personal injury or death can result from not following the proper procedures.

To avoid the possibility of injury or death, follow the established procedure.

WARNING

Activating the SmartBoom function and using the work tool joystick control while the front of the machine is elevated could result in unexpected machine motion. Unexpected machine motion could result in serious injury or death. Do not activate the SmartBoom function if the front of the machine is elevated by the front linkage.

WARNING

Do not elevate or lower the track when in the SmartBoom mode. Follow the operation procedures for the SmartBoom in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow these instructions can result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

Always make sure that the boom control joystick is in the NEUTRAL position before activating the SmartBoom control. Activating the SmartBoom control with the joystick out of the neutral position could resulted in unexpected machine motion which could result in serious injury or death.

WARNING

Do not select any SmartBoom mode, using the SmartBoom selector switch located on the console, while the tracks are elevated. Selecting the SmartBoom mode with the tracks elevated could result in a sudden drop of the machine which could result in serious injury or death.

A WARNING

If any SmartBoom mode is active and the boom control joystick is in the BOOM DOWN position (forward) with a bucket or a work tool on the ground, pressing the disable button that is located on the front of the right hand joystick could cause a sudden boom down motion. This control function could lift the machine upward, with unexpected machine movement that could result in serious injury or death. Do not press the disable button while the SmartBoom mode is active and the boom control joystick is in the BOOM DOWN position (forward) with a bucket or a work tool on the ground.

WARNING

Do not attempt to lift the tracks of the machine by using the disable button and applying downward force with the boom lowering control while the machine is in any SmartBoom mode. Releasing the disable button will immediately return the machine to the active SmartBoom mode. This action could cause the machine to drop down abruptly which could result in serious injury or death.

The Caterpillar SmartBoom provides significant advantages in the following operations:

Excavation and Loading

The operator should select the SmartBoom UP AND DOWN mode for excavating operations and for loading operations. This mode is effective during the return cycle. The BOOM DOWN movement is assisted by gravity, and the pump flow that is normally required for the boom circuit is available for faster STICK OUT and SWING functions. More work is performed for the amount of hydraulic oil flow that is provided by the pumps. This results in faster cycle times and improved fuel efficiency.

When the SmartBoom UP AND DOWN mode is active, no downward hydraulic force is applied to the boom. The operator can intermittently apply downward hydraulic force when the force is required for bucket penetration. A button on the right joystick enables the operator to override the SmartBoom mode.

Hammering

The operator should select the SmartBoom DOWN mode for hammering operations. In the SmartBoom DOWN mode, the weight of the hammer plus the boom and the stick provides sufficient downward force for effective hammering. This mode prevents the hammer from rebounding. The boom follows the hammer downward freely as the tool penetrates the rock. This mode also reduces strain on the machine structures.

Advantages

In hammering, the SmartBoom provides the following advantages:

- The mode reduces shock in the cab.
- The mode reduces strain on machine structures.
- · The mode prevents blank shots.
- · The mode maintains optimum frequency.

In rock cleaning, the SmartBoom provides the following advantages:

• The mode reduces strain on machine structures.

- The mode reduces wear on the bucket and the teeth.
- · The mode maintains optimum frequency.

In a leveling operation, the SmartBoom eases the operation. Only STICK IN actuation and bucket actuation are required to level the surface.

In material handling, the SmartBoom reduces the chance of damage below the material.

i06978374

Bucket - Remove and Install

SMCS Code: 6001; 6001-011; 6001-012; 6101; 6102; 6523

Removal Procedure

A WARNING

Failure to follow the instruction below for the installation of a work tool may result in personal injury or death. Special care must be taken if more than one person is installing the work tool.

- Confirm the verbal communication and the hand signals that will be used during the installation.
- Be alert for sudden movement of the front linkage and the work tool.
- Do not insert fingers into the bores of the support pins when the support pins and the bores are being aligned.

NOTICE

To facilitate removal of the bucket pins without causing damage to the pins, the bearings, and/or the Oring seals put the bucket on the floor and the stick in a vertical position, as shown.



Illustration 327

q06181120

 Start the engine. Park the machine on a hard, level surface. Position the bucket, the stick, and the bucket control linkage, as shown. Shut off the engine.

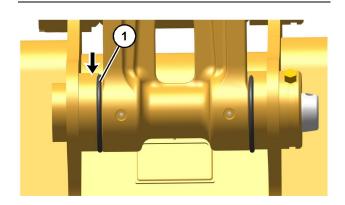


Illustration 328

g06192508

2. Slide O-ring seals (1) off the pin joints and onto the flanges of the bucket.

WARNING

When the pin assembly is removed, the linkage assembly may swing out of the bucket. To prevent possible personal injury, do not stand in front of the linkage assembly when the pin assembly is being removed.

Note: Removing the support pin may be difficult due to excessive pressure on the support pin. Remove the pressure on the support pin by adjusting the front linkage.

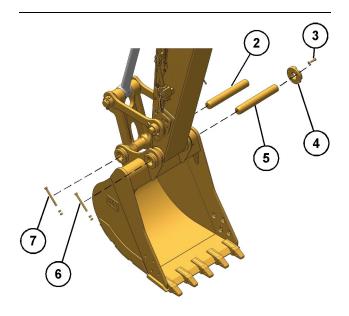


Illustration 329 g06186090

- **3.** Remove nuts and retaining bolt (7) from support pin (2). Remove the support pin .
- **4.** Remove bolts (3) and adapter plate (4). Remove the shims.
- **5.** Remove nuts and retaining bolt (6) from support pin (5). Remove the support pin.
- **6.** Start the engine and raise the stick out of the bucket.
- **7.** Remove the O-ring seals (1) from the flanges on the bucket.

Note: After the support pins have been removed, make sure that the support pins do not become contaminated with sand or dirt. Make sure that the seals on the end of the stick and the seals on the end of the link do not become damaged.

Installation Procedure

1. Clean each pin and each pin bore. Lubricate each pin bore with molybdenum grease.

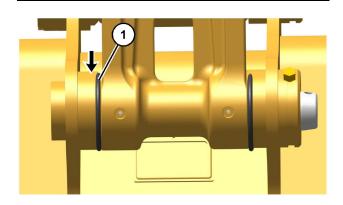


Illustration 330 g06192508

- Position the O-ring seals (1) onto the flanges of the bucket.
- **3.** Start the engine and lower the stick into the bucket until the pin bores are in alignment with each other. Stop the engine.

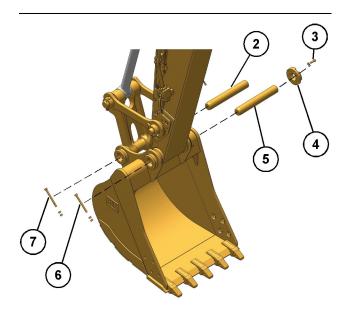


Illustration 331 g06186090

- **4.** Install support pin (5). Align the retaining bolt hole in the support pin with the retaining bolt hole in the bucket.
- **5.** Install the retaining bolt and nuts (6). Install adapter plate (4) without the shims, and without bolts (3) that hold the adapter plate.
- **6.** Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Bucket Linkage - Inspect/Adjust" to adjust the bucket clearance.
- **7.** Slide O-ring seals (1) in position over the pin joints between the bucket and the stick.

- **8.** Start the engine and position the bucket linkage into the bucket until the pin bores are in alignment with each other. Stop the engine.
- Install support pin (2). Align the retaining bolt hole in the bucket pin with the retaining bolt hole in the bucket.
- 10. Install retaining bolt and nuts (7).
- **11.** Slide the O-ring seals (1) over the pin joints between the bucket and the link assembly.

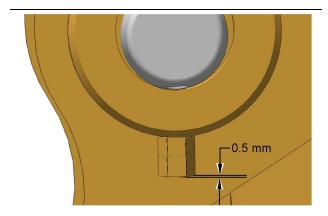


Illustration 332

g06192530

- **12.** Tighten retaining nuts (6) and (7). Position the outside nut even with the end of the retaining bolt or 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) beyond the end of the retaining bolt. Tighten the inside nut against the outside nut.
- Lubricate the bucket pins. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Bucket Linkage -Lubricate".

i08365084

Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW Coupler Hold to Run (If Equipped))

SMCS Code: 6129; 6522; 7000

General Operation

Note: If the machine is configured to sound a buzzer while operating the CW coupler, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW Coupler with Alarm).

Note: Machine can be configured with different quick coupler settings in Electronic Technician (ET). With Accelerator or without Accelerator function. And "Hold to Run" or "Alarm" or "Hydraulic Pin Grabber" For activation and deactivation consult your CAT dealer.

Note: If machine is equipped with Tilt Rotator, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Tilt Rotator and consult your CAT Dealer.

This procedure describes the use of the hydraulic circuit with a Cat dedicated quick coupler. If a different quick coupler is used, contact your Cat dealer for pressure adjustment and consult the documentation for the quick coupler for proper operation.

- The engine start switch is on.
- · The engine is running.
- The hydraulic lockout control must be in the UNLOCKED position to operate the quick coupler controls.

When the above conditions are achieved, the system will perform the desired operation.

The quick coupler is used to change work tools while the operator remains in the cab. The quick coupler can be used with a broad range of buckets and work tools. Each work tool must have a set of pins in order for the quick coupler to work properly.

The work tools are held onto the quick coupler by hydraulic pressure. If pressure is lost, a locking bar keeps the work tool locked with the force of built-in springs. Ensure that the hydraulic system and the blocking bar are working properly before using the quick coupler.

A lifting eye is included on the quick coupler. Release the work tool from the quick coupler to use the lifting eye to pick up loads. To lift a load with the lifting eye, extend the bucket cylinder until the quick coupler is in a VERTICAL position. Do not exceed the rated load for the machine.

NOTICE

Once the work tool has been properly attached to the coupler, no loosening of the work tool should occur. Refer to the "Quick Coupler Installation and Removal" section of the quick coupler Operation and Maintenance Manual for additional information. If at any point after the proper attachment and back drag testing of the work tool, should the work tool then become loose or if the rear pin of the work tool detaches from the movable hook, stop work immediately and safely ground and detach the work tool. Consult your Cat dealer to inspect the coupler prior to putting the coupler back into service. This situation could indicate potential coupler damage that may not be readily visible to the customer or operator of the machine and coupler.

Electric Switch Operation



Illustration 333 g06382398

Quick coupler switch (1) is located inside the cab on the switch panel to the left of the operator's seat. The electric switch has only one position for coupling the work tool and uncoupling the work tool. The switch is equipped with a safety lock (2). The locking tab must be pushed backward before the switch can be pressed.

Coupling the Work Tool

WARNING

Inspect the coupler wedge engagement before you operate the excavator.

Serious injury or death may result from an improperly engaged coupler.

Inspect coupler wedge engagement from the cab by rotating the bucket or the work tool inward. Extend the bucket cylinder to bring the coupler actuator into view and bring the stick in until the wedges are visible.

WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before engaging the quick coupler. Ensure that the work tool or bucket is not carrying a load.

Serious injury or death may result from engaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

WARNING

The buzzer will not sound when the switch is in the lock position. The position of the switch does not confirm the coupler pins are engaged. A physical test is required by dragging the attachment on the ground to confirm the coupler pins are engaged.

Note: With certain work tool combinations, including quick couplers, the work tool can hit the cab or the front of the machine. Always check for interference when first operating a new work tool.

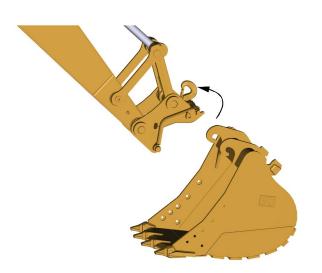


Illustration 334 g06220881

- **1.** Position the work tool on a level surface.
- 2. Retract the bucket cylinder. Position the quick coupler in alignment between the hinges of the work tool.

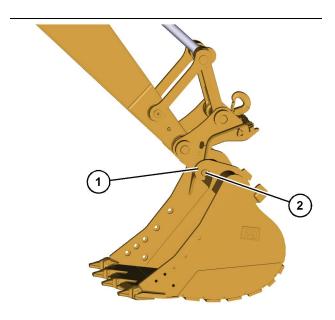


Illustration 335 g06220883

- (1) Hinges
- (2) Lower bosses
- **3.** Move the stick forward and raise the stick until the lower bosses (2) engage the hinges (1) of the work tool.



Illustration 336 g06642184

4. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and hold. The monitor will display "quick coupler unlocking requested".



Illustration 337 g06642183

5. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize, while the coupler switch remains pushed and held, until the wedge is fully extended. The monitor will display "quick coupler unlocked". If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction), while the coupler switch remains pushed and held, until the wedge is fully extended. The monitor will display "quick coupler unlocked".

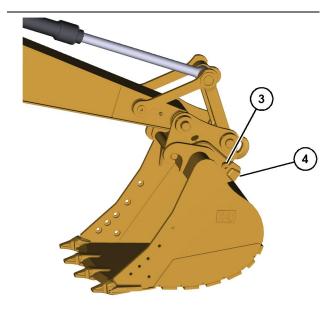


Illustration 338 g06220887

- (3) Center bosses
- (4) Locking area
- **6.** Extend the bucket cylinder to rotate the quick coupler toward the work tool.

Center bosses (3) must engage with the cutout of the hinge.



Illustration 339 g06642184

Release coupler switch (1). The monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locking".



Illustration 340 g06642185

8. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully retracted. The monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked" when the coupler is locked.

If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully retracted and the monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked", when the coupler is locked.

A WARNING

Crush injury. Could cause serious injury or death. Always confirm that the quick coupler is engaged onto the pins. Read the Operator's Manual.

WARNING

Inspect the quick coupler engagement before operating the machine.

Verify that the quick coupler is engaged per the procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Verify prior to operating the machine, after every engine start, and after an extended time of inactivity.

Serious injury or death may result from improperly engaged coupler.

- **9.** Verify that the quick coupler and the work tool are locked together.
 - a. Retract the bucket cylinder and place the work tool on the ground.
 - b. Apply pressure to the work tool against the ground.
 - c. Drag the work tool backward.

NOTICE

Back drag the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked.

Do Not strike the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked. Striking the work tool on the ground will result in damage to the coupler cylinder.

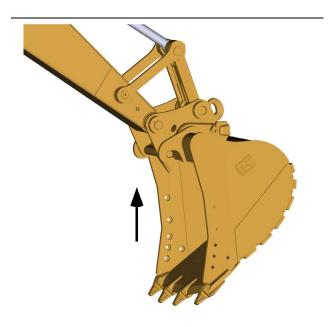


Illustration 341 g06220888

10. Raise the boom or raise the stick. Retract the bucket cylinder to confirm that the wedge is fully engaged. If the wedge is fully engaged, the work tool is locked in place. The work tool is ready to use.

Uncoupling the Work Tool

WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before disengaging the coupler. Disengaging the coupler will release the work tool or bucket from control of the operator.

Serious injury or death may result from disengaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.



M0110641-02

Illustration 342 g06220889

1. Level the bucket or level the work tool on the ground.



Illustration 343 g06642184

Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and hold. The monitor will display "quick coupler unlocking requested".



Illustration 344 g06642183

3. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize, while the coupler switch remains pushed and held, until the wedge is fully extended and the monitor will display "quick coupler unlocked". If machine is set without accelerator. Ooperate a hydraulic function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction), while the coupler switch remains pushed and held, until the wedge is fully extended. The monitor will display "quick coupler unlocked".

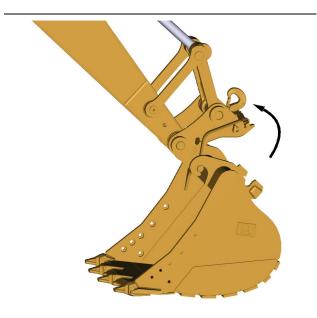


Illustration 345 g06220891

4. Retract the bucket cylinder to move the quick coupler toward the machine while the coupler switch is being pushed and held.



Illustration 346 g06642184

Release coupler switch (1). The monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locking".



Illustration 347 q06642185

6. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully retracted. The monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked" when the coupler is locked.

If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully retracted and the monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked", when the coupler is locked.

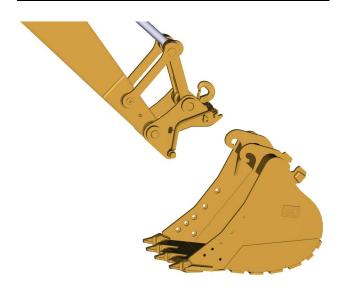


Illustration 348 g06220892

7. Lower the stick and move the stick toward the machine to disengage the quick coupler.

i08365111

Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW Coupler with Alarm (If Equipped))

SMCS Code: 6129; 6522; 7000

General Operation

Note: If the machine is configured to sound a buzzer while operating the CW coupler, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW Coupler with Alarm).

Note: Machine can be configured with different quick coupler settings in Electronic Technician (ET). With Accelerator or without Accelerator function. And "Hold to Run" or "Alarm" or "Hydraulic Pin Grabber" For activation and deactivation consult your CAT dealer.

Note: If machine is equipped with Tilt Rotator, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Tilt Rotator and consult your CAT Dealer.

This procedure describes the use of the hydraulic circuit with a Cat dedicated quick coupler. If a different quick coupler is used, contact your Cat dealer for pressure adjustment and consult the documentation for the quick coupler for proper operation.

- The engine start switch is on.
- The engine is running.
- The hydraulic lockout control must be in the UNLOCKED position to operate the quick coupler controls.

When the above conditions are achieved, the system will perform the desired operation.

The quick coupler is used to change work tools while the operator remains in the cab. The quick coupler can be used with a broad range of buckets and work tools. Each work tool must have a set of pins in order for the quick coupler to work properly.

The work tools are held onto the quick coupler by hydraulic pressure. If pressure is lost, a locking bar keeps the work tool locked with the force of built-in springs. Ensure that the hydraulic system and the blocking bar are working properly before using the quick coupler.

A lifting eye is included on the quick coupler. Release the work tool from the quick coupler to use the lifting eye to pick up loads. To lift a load with the lifting eye, extend the bucket cylinder until the quick coupler is in a VERTICAL position. Do not exceed the rated load for the machine.

NOTICE

Once the work tool has been properly attached to the coupler, no loosening of the work tool should occur. Refer to the "Quick Coupler Installation and Removal" section of the quick coupler Operation and Maintenance Manual for additional information. If at any point after the proper attachment and back drag testing of the work tool, should the work tool then become loose or if the rear pin of the work tool detaches from the movable hook, stop work immediately and safely ground and detach the work tool. Consult your Cat dealer to inspect the coupler prior to putting the coupler back into service. This situation could indicate potential coupler damage that may not be readily visible to the customer or operator of the machine and coupler.

Electric Switch Operation



Illustration 349

g06382398

Quick coupler switch (1) is located inside the cab on the switch panel to the left of the operator's seat. The electric switch has only one position for coupling the work tool and uncoupling the work tool. The switch is equipped with a safety lock (2). The locking tab must be pushed backward before the switch can be pressed.

Coupling the Work Tool

WARNING

Inspect the coupler wedge engagement before you operate the excavator.

Serious injury or death may result from an improperly engaged coupler.

Inspect coupler wedge engagement from the cab by rotating the bucket or the work tool inward. Extend the bucket cylinder to bring the coupler actuator into view and bring the stick in until the wedges are visible.

WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before engaging the quick coupler. Ensure that the work tool or bucket is not carrying a load.

Serious injury or death may result from engaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

WARNING

The buzzer will not sound when the switch is in the lock position. The position of the switch does not confirm the coupler pins are engaged. A physical test is required by dragging the attachment on the ground to confirm the coupler pins are engaged.

Note: With certain work tool combinations, including quick couplers, the work tool can hit the cab or the front of the machine. Always check for interference when first operating a new work tool.

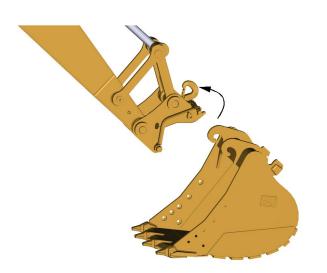


Illustration 350 g06220881

- 1. Position the work tool on a level surface.
- Retract the bucket cylinder. Position the quick coupler in alignment between the hinges of the work tool.

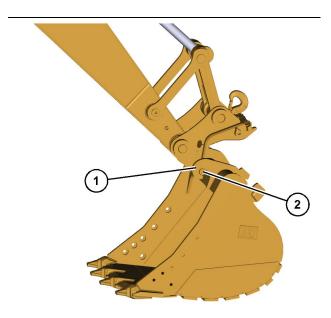


Illustration 351

q06220883

- (1) Hinges
- (2) Lower bosses
- Move the stick forward and raise the stick until the lower bosses (2) engage the hinges (1) of the work tool.



Illustration 352

q06642184

4. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and hold. The monitor will display "quick coupler unlocking requested".



Illustration 353

g06642183

5. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully extended. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display "quick coupler unlocked".

If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully extended. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display "quick coupler unlocked".

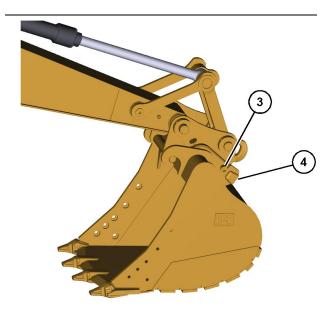


Illustration 354

g06220887

- (3) Center bosses
- (4) Locking area
- **6.** Extend the bucket cylinder to rotate the quick coupler toward the work tool.

Center bosses (3) must engage with the cutout of the hinge.



Illustration 355

g06642184

7. Release coupler switch (1). The monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locking".



Illustration 356

g06642185

8. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully retracted. The buzzer will stop and the monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked" when the coupler is locked.

If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully retracted. The buzzer will stop and the monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked" when the coupler is locked.

WARNING

Crush injury. Could cause serious injury or death. Always confirm that the quick coupler is engaged onto the pins. Read the Operator's Manual.

WARNING

Inspect the quick coupler engagement before operating the machine.

Verify that the quick coupler is engaged per the procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Verify prior to operating the machine, after every engine start, and after an extended time of inactivity.

Serious injury or death may result from improperly engaged coupler.

- **9.** Verify that the quick coupler and the work tool are locked together.
 - a. Retract the bucket cylinder and place the work tool on the ground.
 - b. Apply pressure to the work tool against the ground.
 - c. Drag the work tool backward.

212 M0110641-02

Operation Section
Circuit for CW Coupler with Alarm (If Equipped)

NOTICE

Back drag the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked.

Do Not strike the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked. Striking the work tool on the ground will result in damage to the coupler cylinder.

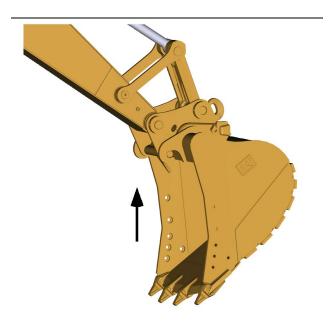


Illustration 357 g06220888

10. Raise the boom or raise the stick. Retract the bucket cylinder to confirm that the wedge is fully engaged. If the wedge is fully engaged, the work tool is locked in place. The work tool is ready to use.

Uncoupling the Work Tool

WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before disengaging the coupler. Disengaging the coupler will release the work tool or bucket from control of the operator.

Serious injury or death may result from disengaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

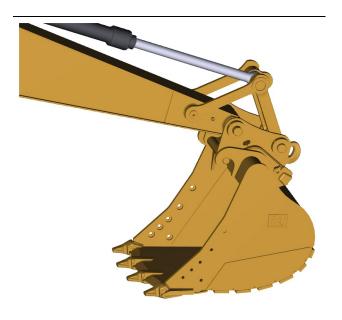


Illustration 358 g06220889

1. Level the bucket or level the work tool on the ground.



Illustration 359 g06642184

2. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and hold. The monitor will display "quick coupler unlocking requested".



Illustration 360 g06642183

3. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully extended. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display "quick coupler unlocked".

If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully extended. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display "quick coupler unlocked".

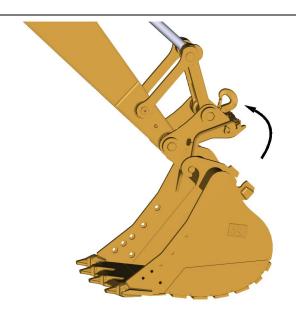


Illustration 361 g06220891

4. Retract the bucket cylinder to move the quick coupler toward the machine while the coupler switch is being pushed and held.



Illustration 362 g06642184

5. Release coupler switch (1). The monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locking".



Illustration 363 g06642185

6. If machine is set with accelerator, the system will automatically pressurize until the wedge is fully retracted. The buzzer will stop and the monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked" when the coupler is locked.

If machine is set without accelerator. Operate a hydraulic system function (for example, hold the control lever of the bucket cylinder in the retract direction) until the wedge is fully retracted. The buzzer will stop and the monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked" when the coupler is locked.

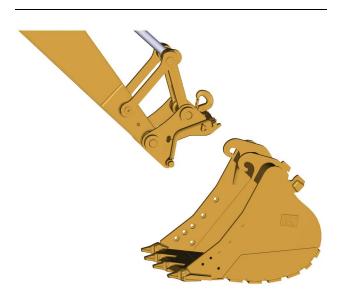


Illustration 364 q06220892

7. Lower the stick and move the stick toward the machine to disengage the quick coupler.

i08368222

Quick Coupler Operation (Hydraulic Pin Grabber Quick Coupler (If Equipped))

SMCS Code: 6129; 6522; 7000

General Operation

NOTICE

The Cat Quick Coupler (Hydraulic Pin Grabber) is not designed to be used in applications where there is long exposure to excessive vibration. The vibration caused by extensive use of a hydraulic hammer as well as the added weight of certain demolition tools such as shears, crushers, and pulverizers may cause premature wear and decreased service life of the coupler.

Be sure to carefully inspect the coupler daily for cracks, bent components, wear, distressed welds, etc. when operating with any of the above work tools.

Note: Machine can be configured with different quick coupler settings in Electronic Technician (ET). With Accelerator or without Accelerator function. And "Hold to Run" or "Alarm" or "Hydraulic Pin Grabber" For activation and deactivation consult your CAT dealer.

Note: If machine is equipped with Tilt Rotator, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Tilt Rotator and consult your CAT Dealer.

The quick coupler is used to change work tools while the operator remains in the cab. The quick coupler can be used with a broad range of buckets and work tools. Each work tool must have a set of pins in order for the quick coupler to work properly.

The work tools are held onto the quick coupler by hydraulic pressure. If pressure is lost, a check valve in the hydraulic cylinder traps oil in the cylinder. Ensure that the hydraulic system is working properly before using the quick coupler.

A lifting eye is included on the quick coupler. Release the work tool from the quick coupler to use the lifting eye to pick up loads. To lift a load with the lifting eye, extend the bucket cylinder until the quick coupler is in a VERTICAL position. Do not exceed the rated load for the machine.

NOTICE

Once the work tool has been properly attached to the coupler, no loosening of the work tool should occur. Refer to the "Quick Coupler Installation and Removal" section of the quick coupler Operation and Maintenance Manual for additional information. If at any point after the proper attachment and back drag testing of the work tool, should the work tool then become loose or if the rear pin of the work tool detaches from the movable hook, stop work immediately and safely ground and detach the work tool. Consult your Cat dealer to inspect the coupler prior to putting the coupler back into service. This situation could indicate potential coupler damage that may not be readily visible to the customer or operator of the machine and coupler.

Quick Coupler Operation

Electric Switch Operation



Illustration 365 g06382398

Quick coupler switch (1) is located inside the cab on the switch panel to the left of the operator's seat. The electric switch has only one position for coupling the work tool and uncoupling the work tool. The switch is equipped with a safety lock (2). The locking tab must be pushed backward before the switch can be pressed.

NOTICE

Once the work tool has been properly attached to the coupler, no loosening of the work tool should occur. Refer to the quick coupler Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Quick Coupler Installation and Removal" for additional information. If at any point after the proper attachment and back drag testing of the work tool, should the work tool then become loose or if the rear pin of the work tool detaches from the movable hook, stop work immediately and safely ground and detach the work tool. Consult your Cat dealer to inspect the coupler prior to putting the coupler back into service. This situation could indicate potential coupler damage that may not be readily visible to the customer or operator of the machine and coupler.

NOTICE

Inspection of the Center-Lock coupler is required after a failure of the primary engaging system or a miscoupling of the tool, causing the work tool to swing by the secondary lock. Contact your Cat dealer.

Refer to Special Instruction, REHS5676, "The Inspection Procedure for the Center-Lock Coupler" for the proper procedure.

Note: For machines operating hydromechanical work tools equipped with a Center-Lock Pin Grabber Coupler, the addition of a Hydromechanical Conversion Kit may also be required. Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual for the quick coupler for more information or consult your Cat dealer.

Coupling the Work Tool

A WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before engaging the quick coupler. Ensure that the work tool or bucket is not carrying a load.

Serious injury or death may result from engaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

WARNING

Inspect the quick coupler engagement before operating the machine.

Serious injury or death may result from improperly engaged coupler.

216 M0110641-02

WARNING

Crush injury. Could cause serious injury or death. Always confirm that the quick coupler is engaged onto the pins. Read the Operator's Manual.

WARNING

The alarm will go off when the coupler is locked and the monitor will display a message. These assurances do not confirm that the coupler pins are engaged. A physical test is required by dragging the attachment on the ground to confirm the coupler pins are engaged.

NOTICE

With certain work tool combinations, including quick couplers, the work tool can hit the cab or the front of the machine. Always check for interference when first operating a new work tool.

- Position the bucket or the work tool on a level surface.
- Make sure that the pins are in the bucket or the work tool. Make sure that the pin keepers are installed correctly.



Illustration 366 g06187057

3. Extend the stick cylinder and fully extend the bucket cylinder until the quick coupler is curled past a vertical position. This action must be performed before pressing the switch.



Illustration 367

g06642184



Illustration 368

g01231447

4. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and release. The buzzer will sound and the monitor will display "quick coupler unlocking requested".



Illustration 369

g06642183

5. Hold the control lever for the bucket cylinder in the EXTEND position until the hook is fully unlocked. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display "quick coupler unlocked".



Illustration 370 g06187063

6. Align the quick coupler with the work tool.

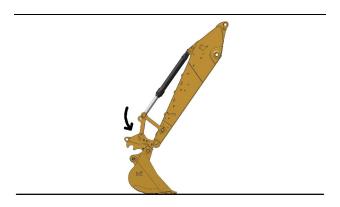


Illustration 371 g06187068

7. Rotate the quick coupler to grab the top pin.

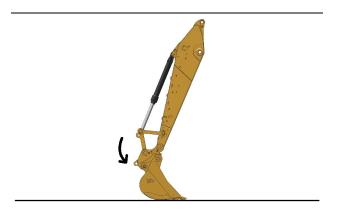


Illustration 372 g06187086

8. Rotate the quick coupler downward to grab the bottom pin.

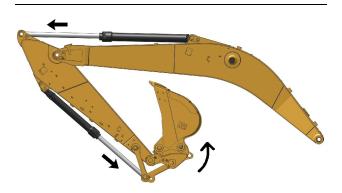


Illustration 373 g06187108

9. Extend the stick cylinder and extend the bucket cylinder until the work tool is curled past a vertical position.

This action must be performed before you push the coupler switch to lock the coupler.



Illustration 374 g06642184



Illustration 375 g01231447

10. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and release. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display "quick coupler locking".



Illustration 376 g06642185

NOTICE

Hold the bucket cylinder control lever in the EXTEND position while the quick coupler is locking. Failure to do so may result in unwanted movement of the work tool.

11. Hold the control lever for the bucket cylinder in the EXTEND position until the hook is fully locked. The buzzer will stop to sound and the monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked" when the coupler is locked. 218 M0110641-02

g06187115

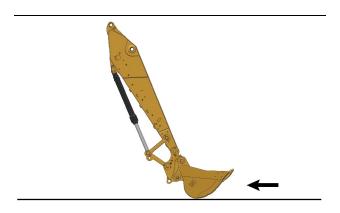


Illustration 377

⚠ WARNING

Crush injury. Could cause serious injury or death. Always confirm that the quick coupler is engaged onto the pins. Read the Operator's Manual.

WARNING

Inspect the quick coupler engagement before operating the machine.

Verify that the quick coupler is engaged per the procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Verify prior to operating the machine, after every engine start, and after an extended time of inactivity.

Serious injury or death may result from improperly engaged coupler.

- **12.** Verify that the quick coupler and the work tool are locked together.
 - a. Retract the bucket cylinder and place the work tool on the ground.
 - Apply pressure to the work tool against the ground.
 - c. Drag the work tool backward.

NOTICE

Back drag the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked.

Do Not strike the work tool on the ground to ensure the quick coupler is properly locked. Striking the work tool on the ground will result in damage to the coupler cylinder.

Uncoupling the Work Tool

WARNING

Place the work tool or bucket in a safe position before disengaging the coupler. Disengaging the coupler will release the work tool or bucket from control of the operator.

Serious injury or death may result from disengaging the work tool or bucket when it is in an unstable position or carrying a load.

NOTICE

Auxiliary hoses for work tools must be disconnected before the Hydraulic Quick Coupler is disengaged.

Pulling the work tool with the auxiliary hoses could result in damage to the host machine or the work tool.

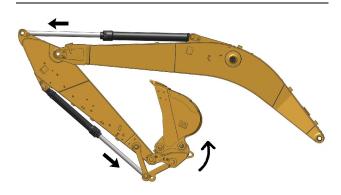


Illustration 378 g06187108

 Extend the stick cylinder and fully extend the bucket cylinder until the work tool is curled past a vertical position. This action must be performed before pressing the switch.



Illustration 379 g06642184

2. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and release. The buzzer will sound and the monitor will display "quick coupler unlocking requested".

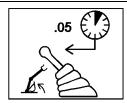


Illustration 380 g01231447



Illustration 381 g06642183

3. Hold the control lever for the bucket cylinder in the EXTEND position until the hook is fully unlocked. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display "quick coupler unlocked".

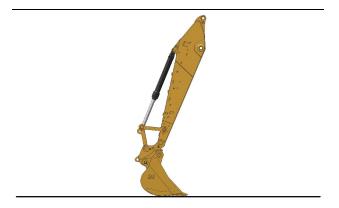


Illustration 382 g06187142

4. Move the boom and the stick until the tool or the bucket is in the storage position. Keep the tool close to the ground.

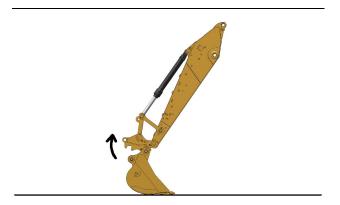


Illustration 383 g06187151

5. Rotate the quick coupler upward to release the bottom pin.

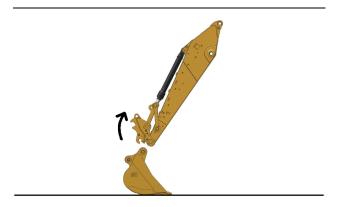


Illustration 384 g06187156

- **6.** Continue to rotate the quick coupler upward to release the top pin and completely release the work tool from the quick coupler.
- **7.** Move the stick to a position that is clear of the work tool.

220 M0110641-02

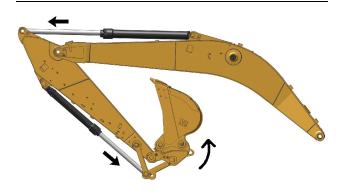


Illustration 385 g06187108

8. Extend the stick cylinder and extend the bucket cylinder until the work tool is curled past a vertical position. This action must be performed before you push the coupler switch to lock the coupler.



Illustration 386 g06642184

9. Push the locking tab on the switch backward and then push the switch and release. The buzzer will continue to sound and the monitor will display "quick coupler locking".

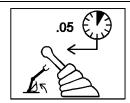


Illustration 387 g01231447



Illustration 388 g06642185

- 10. Hold the control lever for the bucket cylinder in the EXTEND position until the hook is fully locked. The buzzer will stop to sound and the monitor will display "Quick Coupler Locked - Verify Tool Locked" when the coupler is locked.
- **11.** To lift objects with the lifting eye of the quick coupler, refer to "Coupler Lifting Eye Operation without Bucket" later in this chapter.

Coupling a Bucket that is Reversed



Illustration 389 g06187159

- When you use a hydraulic pin grabber quick coupler, you can connect to a bucket that is in a reversed position. Refer to Illustration 389 for an example of connecting to a bucket that is in a reversed position.
- 2. Follow the same steps for coupling the work tool to couple the host machine to a bucket that is reversed. Refer to "Coupling the Work Tool" for the proper procedure.

q06384615

NOTICE

When some Caterpillar buckets are used in the reverse position, it can be more difficult to couple the bucket and uncouple the bucket than in the normal position.

Care must be taken to ensure that the position of the boom, stick, and bucket are aligned to ensure smooth coupling. The coupler must be in position between the bucket bosses.

If the bucket is not fully engaged in the jaw of the coupler, the quick coupler can become snagged on the bucket bosses. The full weight of the bucket is then carried by the quick coupler sideplates, which can cause damage to the quick coupler.

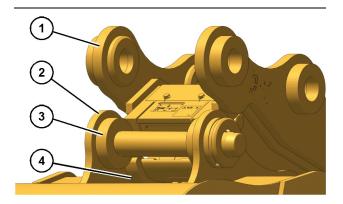


Illustration 390

g06187418

- (1) Quick coupler
- (2) Bucket
- (3) Boss (4) Hook

Coupler Lifting Eye Operation without Bucket

A lifting eye is included on the quick coupler. Release the work tool from the quick coupler to use the lifting eye to pick up loads. To lift a load with the lifting eye, extend the bucket cylinder until the quick coupler is in a VERTICAL position. Do not exceed the rated load for the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, Lifting capacities for more information.

1. Remove the work tool. Refer to "Uncoupling the Work Tool" for the proper procedure.



Illustration 391

2. Use the lifting eye of the quick coupler, as needed.

3. To reinstall the bucket or the work tool, refer to "Coupling the Work Tool" for the proper procedure.

i07349163

Work Tool Operation (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 6700; 7000

Hammer Operation (If Equipped)



Illustration 392

g06222793

NOTICE

Use only a hydraulic hammer that is recommended by Caterpillar.

The use of a hydraulic hammer that is not recommended by Caterpillar could result in structural damage to the host machine.

Consult your Cat dealer for information on recommended hydraulic hammers.

Only use the hydraulic hammer to break rocks, concrete, and other hard objects. Before you start hydraulic hammer operation, place the machine on a level, stable surface.

Before you start hydraulic hammer operation, close the front window. Caterpillar recommends the installation of a window guard on the front window for protection from flying debris.

NOTICE

In order to avoid structural damage to the host machine or the hydraulic hammer, comply with the following:

Do not attempt to break rocks or concrete by burying the hammer tool completely into the rocks or concrete.

Do not apply a prying force to the hammer tool in order to remove the hammer tool from the material.

Do not allow the hydraulic hammer to operate at one location and for more than 15 seconds. Change the location of the hydraulic hammer and repeat the procedure. Failure to change the location of the hydraulic hammer could cause the hydraulic oil to overheat. Overheated hydraulic oil could damage the accumulator.

Stop the hydraulic hammer immediately if the jumper lines are pulsating violently. This indicates that the accumulator nitrogen charge is lost. Consult your Cat dealer for the necessary repair.

NOTICE

Do not use the dropping force of the hydraulic hammer to break rocks or other hard objects. This could cause structural damage to the machine.

Do not use the sides or back of the hydraulic hammer to move rocks or other hard objects. Doing this could cause damage not only to the hammer but to stick or boom cylinder.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer with any of the cylinders fully retracted or extended. Doing this could cause structural damage to the machine, resulting in reduced machine life.

Do not use the hydraulic hammer to lift an object.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer while the stick is vertical to the ground. This could allow the stick cylinder to vibrate excessively.

Operate the attachment control levers carefully to keep the hydraulic hammer tool from hitting the boom.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer under water unless the hydraulic hammer is properly equipped. Operating the hydraulic hammer under water could damage the machine hydraulic system. Consult your Cat dealer for information on underwater operation.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer with the upper structure sideways to the undercarriage. Before you start hydraulic hammer operation, place the upper structure in the recommended positions that are shown in illustration 393. Any other operating positions could make the machine unstable. Any other operating positions could place excessive loads on the undercarriage.

Refer to the following for any additional questions about the operation and care of your Cat hydraulic hammer:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU7346, "Hydraulic Hammers"
- The Operation and Maintenance Manual specific to your machine

An operation and maintenance decal, SMEU7397, is available for all hydraulic hammers. The decal provides procedures for operation and maintenance of the hydraulic hammers. The decal can be placed on the machine or the hammer. The decal can be obtained through the normal literature ordering channels.

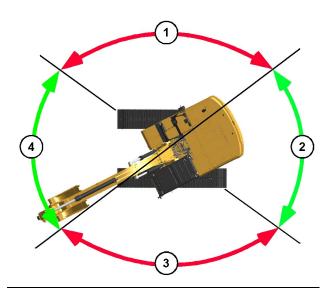


Illustration 393 g06192837

- (1) Incorrect working position
 (2) Correct working position
 (3) Incorrect working position
 (4) Correct working position

Shear Operation (If Equipped)



Illustration 394 g06222798

WARNING

Do not operate or work on this work tool unless you have read and understand the instructions and warnings in the Operation And Maintenance Manual for both the work tool and the host machine.

Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in injury or death.

Contact your Caterpillar dealer for replacement manuals. Proper care is your responsibility.

NOTICE

Selection of a hydraulic shear must be done with extra care.

Use of a hydraulic shear not recommended by Caterpillar could result in structural damage to the host machine.

Consult your Cat dealer for hydraulic shear information.

MARNING

Serious injury or death could occur from the demolition of pipes, vessels, tanks or other containers that may contain gas, flammable materials or hazardous chemicals.

Do not perform any demolition work on these items until all of their contents have been removed.

Follow all regulations for the removal and disposal of these materials.

NOTICE

Using the demolition tool to level the work site or push over standing structures may damage the machine or the demolition tool. Use appropriate equipment to do site preparation or maintenance operations.

NOTICE

To avoid structural damage to the machine, do not break road surfaces by placing the cutting edge of the hydraulic shear on the ground and moving the machine.

Be sure that no one is near the work tool to prevent injury. Keep the work tool under control at all times to prevent injury. When a demolition tool is used, all personnel must maintain a minimum distance of 10 m (33 ft).

Close all windows. Make sure that all required guards are in place. Wear all required protective equipment. Follow the instructions in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for the work tool.

Crusher Operation (If Equipped)

MARNING

Improper operation and maintenance of the crusher could cause personal injury or death. Observe the following procedures for safe operation of the crusher.

Consult your Cat dealer for more information on the operation and maintenance of the crusher.

Do not operate the host machine with the work tool unless you have read and understood the instructions and warnings in the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Failure to follow the instructions or heed the warnings could result in machine or work tool damage, and/or serious injury or death. Contact your Cat dealer for a replacement manual, if needed.

When the crusher is installed on the host machine, always make sure that the protective guarding is in place.

Using the crusher in an incorrect manner can damage the machine and/or cause personal injury or death.

Always ensure that the work area is clear of ground personnel, due to the potential crush hazards with falling debris and machine movement.

Resting or placing your foot on the work tool pedal could result in unexpected movement of the machine / work tool which could result in personal injury or death. Always lock the crusher when not in use.

NOTICE

Selection of a hydraulic crusher must be done with extra care.

Use of a hydraulic crusher not recommended by Caterpillar could result in structural damage to the host machine.

Consult your Cat dealer for hydraulic crusher information.

Close all windows. Make sure that all required guards are in place. Wear all required protective equipment. Follow the instructions in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for the work tool.



Illustration 395

g06222800

Demolition work on the roof of a building could lead to serious personal injury if the building were to collapse and the excavator turned over or fell off the roof. The demolition work must be started ONLY AFTER surveying the building for its structural integrity.





Illustration 396

g06222803

Crushing work above your head must be avoided because objects can fall and damage the machine.

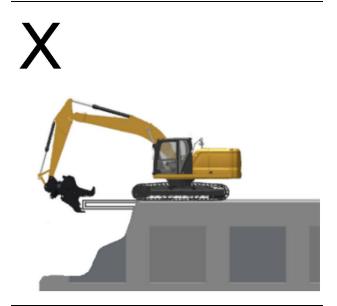


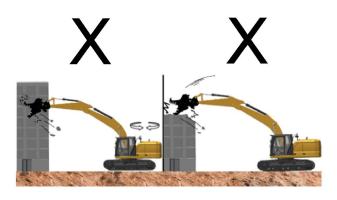
Illustration 397 g06222806

Do not perform demolition work at the base of the machine, because the ground could be unstable and cause the machine to fall.



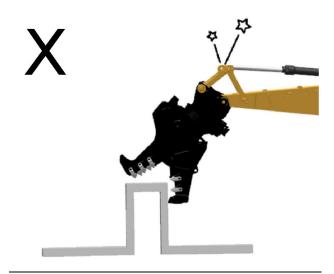
Illustration 398 g06222809

Do not suddenly lower or stop the work tool, otherwise the excavator could turn over.



g06222813 Illustration 399

Crushing work using impact, swing, or dropping forces of the excavator could cause damages to the machine and also could lead to personal injury. As such, NEVER perform such an operation.



g06222817 Illustration 400

Crushing work with hydraulic cylinder at stroke end position could damage the excavator, resulting in shortening of lifespan. Also, as it could lead to unexpected personal injury due to breakage of the machine, do not perform any work at stroke end.

M0110641-02

227



Illustration 401 g06222821

When performing work at elevated positions, always use care for the surroundings as well as for falling objects to avoid personal injury. Use guide personnel and signs as required.

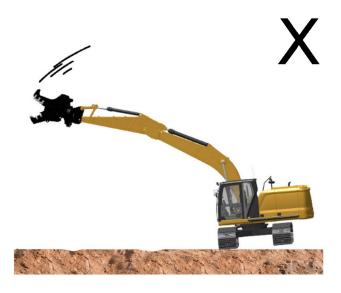


Illustration 402 g06222829

When working sideways, the track can lift. Avoid abrupt operation and operate slowly.



Illustration 403 g06222831

Crushers could interfere with the boom and the cab depending on the type and method of usage. Know the working range of the crusher being used.

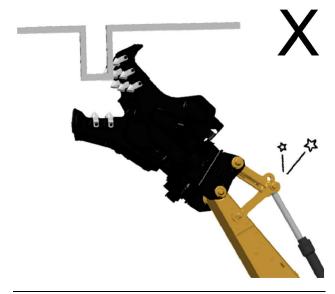


Illustration 404 g06222833

If the tooth of the crusher engages an object at a slant, excessive forces could be applied to the front regions. As such move the crusher to the front.

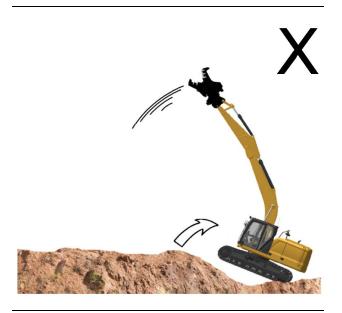


Illustration 405 g06222836

Never extend the boom cylinder suddenly. Sudden extension of the boom could cause tip backwards.



Illustration 406 g06222831

Sudden extension of the bucket cylinder, or sudden extension of the stick cylinder could cause damages at the stroke end position, resulting in personal injury. Operations that cause sudden extension of the cylinders is PROHIBITED!

Parking

i07868085

Stopping the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

WARNING

Leaving the machine unattended when the engine is running may result in personal injury or death. Before leaving the machine operator station, neutralize the travel controls, lower the work tools to the ground and deactivate all work tools, and place the lever for the hydraulic lockout control in the LOCKED position.

Note: There may be regulations that define the requirements for the operator and/or support personnel to be present when the engine is running.

Park on a level surface. If the machine must be parked on a grade, chock the tracks securely.

Note: The swing parking brake is automatically applied when the machine is stopped. The swing parking brake is released when the engine is running and the joystick is activated.

1. Turn the engine speed dial counterclockwise to reduce engine speed.

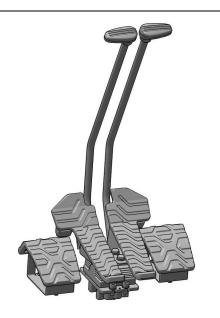


Illustration 407 g06181402

2. Release the travel levers/pedals to stop the machine.

- **3.** Lower the work tool to the ground. Apply a slight downward pressure.
- **4.** Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

i07088536

Freezing Conditions

SMCS Code: 7000

If freezing temperatures are expected, remove the mud and the dirt from each track roller frame. Park the machine on wood planks. Use the following procedure to clean each track roller frame.

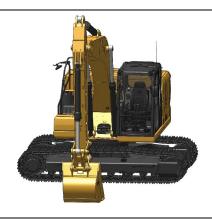


Illustration 408

g06188791

- 1. Position the boom over one side of the machine.
- 2. Use boom down pressure to lift the track on one side off the ground. Operate the track in the forward direction. Then operate the track in reverse. Continue this procedure until the maximum amount of material is thrown off the track.
- 3. Lower the track onto the wood planks.
- **4.** Repeat the procedure for the other track.
- Clean the area around the carrier rollers and around the track rollers.
- **6.** Lower the work tool onto a wood plank to prevent the work tool from touching the ground.

q06181487

i07915139

Stopping the Engine

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

NOTICE

Stopping the engine immediately after it has been working under load can result in overheating and accelerated wear of engine components.

Refer to the following procedure to allow the engine to cool and to prevent excessive temperatures in the turbocharger housing, which could cause oil coking problems.

NOTICE

Never turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position while the engine is running. Serious damage to the electrical system may result.

- Park the machine on level ground. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Stopping the Machine" for the recommended procedure.
- 2. While the machine is stopped, run the engine for 5 minutes at low idle. Idling the engine allows hot areas of the engine to cool gradually.
- **3.** Turn the engine start ring to the OFF position or press button to stop the engine.

Note: If the "Regen Active" indicator is illuminated, do not shut off the engine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Monitoring System" for more information on indicators.

Engine Shutdown Switch

NOTICE

Perform a walk around inspection after actuation of a shutdown device.

Take necessary corrective action to resolve the cause of the shutdown.

Ensure that no additional damage has been done or could occur before returning to operation.

Turn the engine start ring to the OFF position or press button to stop the engine. If the engine does not stop, perform the following procedure.

Note: Always use the engine start switch to stop the engine. Use the secondary engine stop control as an alternate method to stop the engine if the start switch fails.

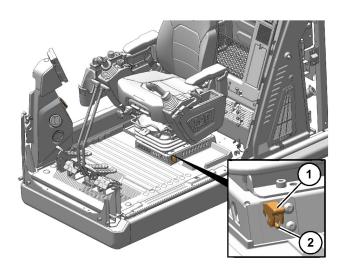


Illustration 409

- **1.** The switch is located below the left side of the operator seat.
- 2. Lift cover (1).
- **3.** Push switch (2) upward. This should stop the engine and prevent the engine from being started again.
- **4.** Return the switch to the original position. The engine will be enabled to start.

Note: Do not operate the machine again until the malfunction has been corrected.

5. Use the method that follows if the previous steps do not stop the engine.

Stop the Engine if an Electrical Malfunction Occurs

Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position. If the engine does not stop, perform the following procedure. M0110641-02 231

Operation Section Leaving the Machine

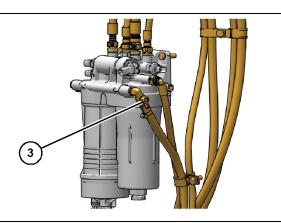


Illustration 410 g06209639

The fuel shutoff valve is on the fuel system water separator.

Shut off the fuel supply by turning the fuel shutoff valve (3) clockwise. The engine will stop after consuming the fuel in the fuel line. The engine may continue to run for a few minutes.

Repair the engine before you restart the engine. The fuel system may need to be primed. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel System - Prime" for instructions.

i07103299

Leaving the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000



Illustration 411 g06224270

1. Use the steps and the hand holds when you dismount. When you dismount, face the machine and use both hands.

- **2.** Inspect the engine compartment for debris. Clean out any debris to avoid a fire hazard.
- Remove all flammable debris from the front bottom guard through the access doors to reduce a fire hazard. Discard the debris properly.
- **4.** Always turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position before leaving the machine.
- If the machine will not be operated for a month or more, remove the battery disconnect switch key.
- **6.** Lock all compartments and all vandalism covers (if equipped).

i07735116

Machine Storage and Specified Storage Period

SMCS Code: 7000

Machine Storage

The Safety Section of this Operation and Maintenance Manual contains storage information for fuels, lubricants, and ether (if equipped).

The Operation Section of this Operation and Maintenance Manual contains information for short-term storage of this machine, including engine shutdown, parking, and instructions for leaving the machine.

For detailed steps on long-term storage refer to Special Instruction, SEHS9031, "Storage Procedure for Caterpillar Products".

Specified Storage Period

The specified storage period of this machine is 1 year.

After the specified storage period has expired, consult your Cat dealer for inspect, repair, rebuild, install remanufactured, or install new components, and disposal options, and to establish a new specified storage period.

If a decision is made to remove the machine from service, refer to Decommissioning and Disposal for further information.

Transportation Information

i08163556

Shipping the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000; 7500

WARNING

Automatic Engine Speed Control (AEC) will increase engine speed automatically when you operate the control levers and/or travel pedals with AEC switch on.

When loading and unloading the machine from the truck or working in close quarters always turn AEC switch off to prevent any possibility of sudden movement of machine, which could result in serious injury or death.

Set the travel speed control switch to LOW before loading the machine. Never operate this switch when loading the machine on a trailer.

Investigate the travel route for overpass clearances. Make sure that there will be adequate clearance for the machine.

Remove ice, snow, or other slippery material from the loading dock and from the truck bed before you load the machine onto the transport machine. Removing ice, snow, or other slippery material will help to prevent the machine from slipping in transit.

Note: Obey all laws that govern the characteristics of a load (height, weight, width, and length). Observe all regulations that govern wide loads. Certain regions may require the removal of door hooks and cab bumpers, if equipped. Consult all local and regional regulations

Choose the flattest ground when you load the machine or when you unload the machine.

- **1.** Before you load the machine, chock the trailer wheels or the rail car wheels.
- When you use loading ramps, make sure that the loading ramps have adequate length, adequate width, adequate strength, and an adequate slope.
- **3.** Maintain the slope of the loading ramps within 15 degrees of the ground.
- 4. Position the machine so that the machine can drive straight up the loading ramps. The final drives should be toward the rear of the machine. Do not operate the control levers while the machine is on the loading ramps.
- **5.** When you drive over the loading ramp joint areas, maintain the balance point of the machine.

- **6.** Lower the work tool to the bed or to the floor of the transport machine.
- 7. To prevent rolling of the machine or sudden movement of the machine, perform the following items:
 - Chock both tracks.
 - Install sufficient tie-downs at several locations.
 - · Fasten wire cables.
- **8.** If equipped, remove door hooks, cab bumpers, and fuel tank step as necessary. Refer to local regulations.

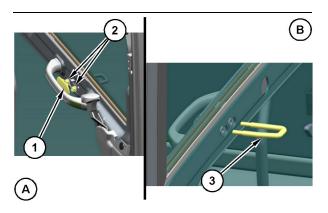


Illustration 412

g06516462

Typical example of door hook

- (A) Inside
- (B) Outside
- (1) Cover
- (2) Nuts
- (3) Door Hook
- a. Remove cover (1) and nuts (2) to remove door hook (3).

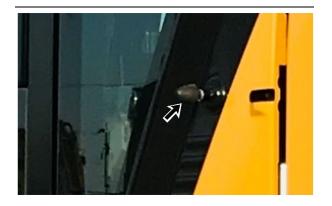


Illustration 413

g06516469

Typical example of cab bumper

b. Remove any bumpers on your cab.

NOTICE

Do not allow the chrome surface of the bucket cylinder rod to touch any part of the trailer. Damage to the rod can occur from impact with the trailer during transport.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Specifications".

Shipping a Machine that is not Completely Assembled

If the machine must be shipped when the boom, stick, or counterweight is not assembled on the machine, follow the instructions in Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operation".

WARNING

The ROPS structural certification depends on the support of the boom, stick, and counterweight in the event of a machine tip over or a machine roll-over incident.

When the machine needs to be moved without the boom, stick, or counterweight being installed, avoid any machine operations which could affect machine stability as a machine tip over or a machine rollover incident could result in serious injury or death.

The machine should be operated slowly on flat, stable ground or pavement by qualified operators.

i07539618

Securing the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

A WARNING

Do not transport the machine if there is a malfunction of the swing parking brake system.

The machine may swing during transportation if the swing parking brake system is not functioning properly which could result in injury or death.

Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Comply with any laws that govern the characteristics of a load (length, width, height, and weight).

- **1.** Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
- **2.** Turn the engine start ring to the OFF position or press button to stop engine.

- **3.** Turn the battery disconnect switch to OFF and remove the disconnect switch key.
- 4. Remove the ether starting aid cylinder. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace" for the removal procedure.
- Lock the door and the access covers. Attach any vandalism protection.

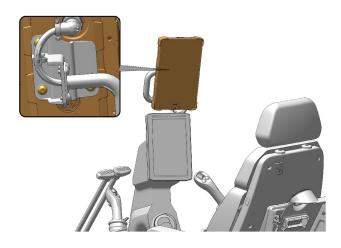


Illustration 414

g06181075

Note: Caterpillar strongly recommends removing the Cat Grade Control monitor (if equipped) before transporting the machine to protect the monitor from damage or theft.

- 6. Disconnect the wiring harness from the Cat Grade Control monitor. Remove the three screws that secure the monitor to the mounting bracket and remove the monitor. Remove the monitor from the cab and store in the monitor carrying case.
- 7. Cover the exhaust opening.

NOTICE

Do not allow the turbocharger to rotate while the engine is not operating. Damage to the turbocharger can result.

Note: Before you unload the excavator from the transport machine, remove the protective covering from the exhaust opening.

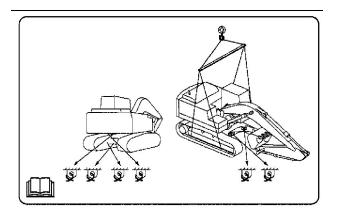


Illustration 415 g06289667

Chock the tracks and secure the machine with tiedowns. Make sure that you use the proper rated wire cable.

Use the front towing eyes on the lower frame, the rear towing eyes on the lower frame, and the rear towing eye that is on the upper frame.

Securely fasten all loose parts and all removed parts to the trailer or to the rail car.

When the engine is stopped, the swing parking brake is automatically applied. The swing brake prevents the upper structure from rotating.

NOTICE

In freezing weather, protect the cooling system with antifreeze, to the lowest outside expected temperature on the travel route. Or, drain the cooling system completely.

i07519776

Counterweight Removal and Installation

SMCS Code: 7056

Counterweight Removal

A WARNING

Unexpected machine movement can cause injury or death.

In order to avoid possible machine movement, move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position and attach a Special Instruction, SEHS7332, "Do Not Operate" or similar warning tag to the hydraulic lockout control.

WARNING

Personal injury or death can occur from a counterweight falling during removal or installation.

Do not allow personnel under or around the counterweight during removal or installation.

Make sure that the lifting device is in good condition and is capable of handling the weight of the counterweight.

MARNING

Make certain personnel are clear of cable when there is a load on it. Cable can break and cause personal injury.

1. Position the machine on a surface that is hard and level. Lower the work tool to the ground.



Illustration 416 g06284701

Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

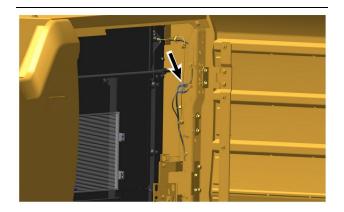


Illustration 417 g06341797

3. Before you remove the counterweight, disconnect the wiring for the rear view camera.

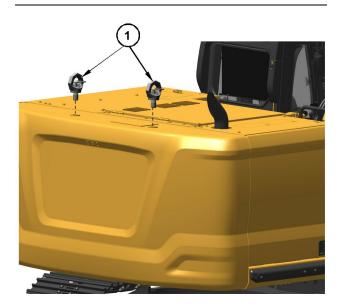


Illustration 418 g06341813

4. Insert and tighten eyebolts (1).



Illustration 419 g06341822

5. Fasten a proper rated cable with shackles to the links. Use an appropriate lifting device to tension the cable.

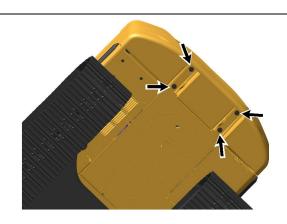


Illustration 420 g06341824

6. The counterweight mounting bolts are on the bottom of the counterweight. Remove the four counterweight mounting bolts and four washers.

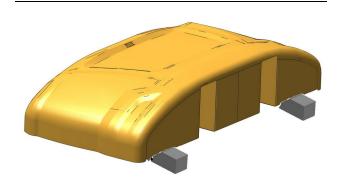


Illustration 421 g06341838

7. Separate the counterweight from the machine. Lower the counterweight onto suitable supports.

Counterweight Installation

Perform the installation procedure in reverse order.

Note: Temporarily tighten the eight counterweight mounting bolts. Decrease the tension on the lifting cable. Make sure that the counterweight is correctly positioned on the retaining plates. Tighten the bolts to a torque of $2800 \pm 350 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ ($2065 \pm 260 \text{ lb ft}$).

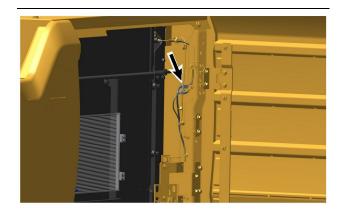


Illustration 422 g06341797

After You install the counterweight, connect the wiring for the rear view camera.

i07539775

Lifting and Tying Down the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000; 7500

WARNING

Improper lifting and tie-down techniques can allow the load to shift or fail resulting in personal injury or property damage. Use only properly rated cables and slings with lift and tie down points provided on the machine. Keep the deck of the transport vehicle clean and use anti-slip mats on steel decks.

Follow the instructions in Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lifting and Tying Down the Machine" for the proper technique for securing the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Specifications" for specific weight information. M0110641-02

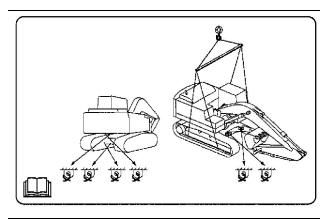


Illustration 423 g06289667

The lift and tie-down film is located near the base of the boom.

Lifting the machine



Illustration 424 g06184026

The machine center of gravity is at the center of the swing gear.



Lifting Point – To lift the machine, attach the lifting devices to the lifting points.

The weight and the instructions that are given herein describe the machine as the machine is manufactured by Caterpillar.

Refer to the Operation and Maintenance, "Specifications" for specific weight information.

Note: Only lift objects from approved lifting points and with approved lifting devices

- **1.** Use proper rated cables and slings for lifting. The crane should be positioned so that the machine is lifted parallel to the ground.
- **2.** To prevent contact with the machine, lifting cables should have sufficient length.
- **3.** Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
- **4.** Thread the cable between the first and second rollers at each end of the track.
- 5. Do not use the foot step as a lifting point.

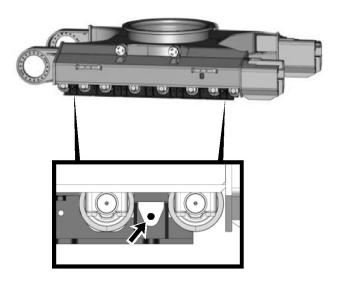


Illustration 425 g06279536

- **6.** If the full length roller guard is equipped, there are holes at the ends of the guard for lifting cables. Refer to Illustration 425.
- 7. Apply the proper protector to prevent machine/wire damage and slippage. Make sure that the rollers are not affected by the load.

Tying Down the Machine

Note: Obey all local and regional governmental regulations.

Diagonal Lashing

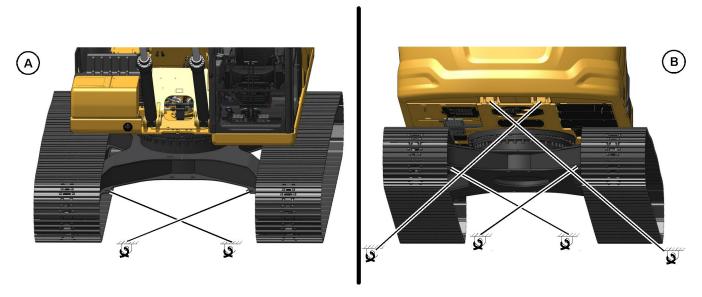


Illustration 426 g06320399

(A) Front of the machine

(B) Rear of the machine

Tying Down the Machine



Tie Down Point – To tie down the machine, attach the tie-downs to the tie-down points.

The weight and the instructions that are given herein describe the machine as the machine is manufactured by Caterpillar.

Refer to the Operation and Maintenance, "Specifications" for specific weight information.

- Use proper rated cables and shackles for tying down the machine.
- 2. Use the rear eyes and the front eyes that are provided on the lower frame to fasten tie-downs. Use corner protectors for sharp corners.
- **3.** Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
- **4.** Set the lashing angle, which is on the longitudinal axis of the machine and the cable, at 30 to 50 degrees.
- **5.** Keep the transport vehicle surface clean (for example, trailer deck).

6. For steel deck transport vehicles use skid-inhibiting or anti-slip mats (for example, rubber mats) with a friction coefficient of at least 0.3.

Lifting the Machine Segments

Bucket

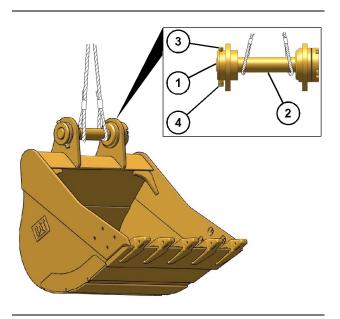


Illustration 427 g06184591

(1) Pin.(2) Sleeve.(3) Bolts.(4) Nuts.

240 M0110641-02

Install pin (1) and install sleeve (2) in the brackets of the bucket. The previous illustration indicates the method to secure pin (1) with bolts (3) and nuts (4). Fasten two proper rated wire cables to pin (1).

Towing Information

i07348733

Towing the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

WARNING

Personal injury or death could result when towing a disabled machine incorrectly.

Block the machine to prevent movement before final drives are disengaged. The machine can roll free if it is not blocked. With final drives disengaged, the machine cannot be stopped or steered.

Follow the recommendations below, to properly perform the towing procedure.

Relieve the hydraulic tank and line pressure before any disassembly.

Even after the machine has been turned off, the hydraulic oil can still be hot enough to burn. Allow the hydraulic oil to cool before draining.

NOTICE

To tow the machine, both final drives must be disengaged.

Do not operate the travel motors with the final drives disengaged. Damage could result.

These towing instructions are for moving a disabled machine for a short distance at low speed. Move the machine at a speed of 2 km/h (1.2 mph) or less to a convenient location for repair. Always haul the machine if long distance moving is required.

Shields must be provided on both machines. This will protect the operator if the tow line or the tow bar breaks.

Do not allow an operator to be on the machine that is being towed.

Before you tow the machine, make sure that the tow line or the tow bar is in good condition. Do not use a wire rope that is kinked, twisted, or damaged. Make sure that the tow line or the tow bar has enough strength for the towing procedure that is involved. The strength of the tow line or of the tow bar should be at least 150 percent of the gross weight of the towed machine. This requirement is for a disabled machine that is stuck in the mud and for being towed on a grade.

Do not use a chain for pulling a disabled machine. A chain link can break. This may cause personal injury. Use a wire rope with ends that have loops or rings. Put an observer in a safe position to watch the pulling procedure. The observer can stop the procedure if the wire rope starts to break. Stop pulling whenever the towing machine moves without moving the towed machine.

During towing, do not allow anyone to step between the towing and the towed machines.

Do not allow the wire rope to be straddled while the machine is being towed.

Keep the tow line angle to a minimum. Do not exceed a 30 degree angle from the straight ahead position.

Avoid towing the machine on a slope.

Quick machine movement could overload the tow line or the tow bar. This could cause the tow line or the tow bar to break. Gradual, steady machine movement will be more effective.

Prior to releasing the brake of the final drive, firmly lock both tracks to prevent the machine from moving suddenly. When the machine is ready to be towed, release the brake of the final drive. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Final Drive Sun Gear Removal".

Normally, the towing machine should be as large as the disabled machine. Make sure that the towing machine has enough brake capacity, enough weight, and enough power. The towing machine must be able to control both machines for the grade that is involved and for the distance that is involved.

You must provide sufficient control and sufficient braking when you are moving a disabled machine downhill. This may require a larger towing machine or additional machines that are connected to the rear of the disabled machine. This will prevent the machine from rolling away out of control.

All situation requirements cannot be listed. Minimal towing machine capacity is required on smooth, level surfaces. Maximum towing machine capacity is required on an incline or on a surface that is in poor condition.

Do not tow a loaded machine.

Consult your Cat dealer for the equipment that is necessary for towing a disabled machine.

242

Retrieval and Towing of Machine

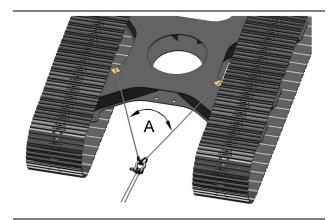


Illustration 428 g06289671

Note: Shackles must be used for towing the machine. The wire rope should be horizontal and straight to the track frame.

Install a properly rated wire rope to the lower frame of the towing machine and the lower frame of the towed machine. The permissible force for the lower frame is 100 percent of the gross weight of the towed machine.

Note: To prevent damage to the wire rope or the lower frame of the machines, use protective sleeves on the corners of the lower frame.

Retrieve the disabled machine carefully. The applied load for each wire rope should be equal. The angle (A) between each wire rope should be 60 degree maximum. Operate the machine at a low speed.

Lightweight Towing

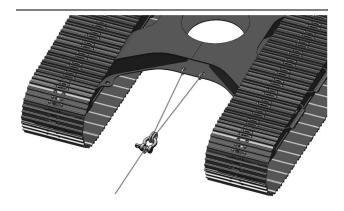


Illustration 429 g06186106

The maximum load for lightweight towing is 102900 N (75895 lb).

Shackles must be used for towing the machine. The wire rope should be horizontal and straight to the track frame.

Install a properly rated wire rope to the lower frame of the towing machine and the lower frame of the towed machine. Operate the machine at a low speed.

i06954175

Final Drive Sun Gear Removal

SMCS Code: 4050

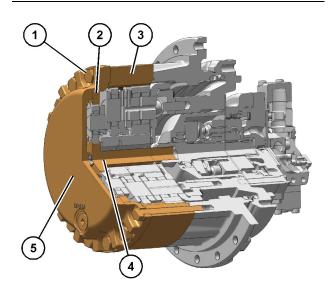


Illustration 430 g06188195

- (1) Bolt
- (2) Ring gear
- (3) Ring gear
- (4) Sun gear
- (5) Final drive cover

MARNING

Without the sun gear in place, the brakes are ineffective. Personal injury or death could result. Provide other means to hold or stop the machine.

 Thoroughly clean the area around the final drive.
 Make sure that you also clean the track shoes that are positioned above the final drive.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

Drain the final drive oil into a suitable container.See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Final Drive Oil - Change" for the procedure.

- Remove 14 of 16 cover bolts (1) from final drive cover (5). Do not leave a bolt in the top hole of the cover.
- 4. Insert an alignment dowel through the top hole of the cover and into the threads in the final drive housing. This is necessary to support ring gear (2) and ring gear (3) while you are removing the final drive cover.
- **5.** Remove one track shoe to allow access to the face between final drive cover (5) and ring gear (2).
- 6. Loosen remaining two cover bolts (1).
- 7. Use a hammer and a wedge to separate final drive cover (5) and ring gear (2). Make sure that ring gear (2) and ring gear (3) stay in place.
- **8.** Remove remaining two cover bolts (1) and final drive cover (5).
- 9. Remove sun gear (4) from final drive.
- 10. Install final drive cover (5) and 16 cover bolts (1).
- **11.** Fill the final drive with new oil. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Final Drive Oil Change" for the procedure.
- **12.** Repeat Steps 1 through 11 for the other final drive.
- **13.** Refer to the Service Manual for information on the installation of the final drive sun gear.

244
Operation Section

Engine Starting (Alternate Methods)

Engine Starting (Alternate Methods)

i06953771

Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables

(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly service the batteries may cause personal injury.

Prevent sparks near the batteries. They could cause vapors to explode. Do not allow the jump start cable ends to contact each other or the machine.

Do not smoke when checking battery electrolyte levels.

Electrolyte is an acid and can cause personal injury if it contacts skin or eyes.

Always wear eye protection when starting a machine with jump start cables.

Improper jump start procedures can cause an explosion resulting in personal injury.

Always connect the battery positive (+) to battery positive (+) and the battery negative (-) to battery negative (-).

Jump start only with an energy source with the same voltage as the stalled machine.

Turn off all lights and accessories on the stalled machine. Otherwise, they will operate when the energy source is connected.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to engine bearings and to electrical circuits when you jump-start a machine, do not allow the stalled machine to touch the machine that is used as the electrical source.

Turn on (close) the battery disconnect switch prior to the boost connection to prevent damage to electrical components on the stalled machine.

Use only equal voltage for starting. Check the battery and starter voltage rating of your machine. Use only the same voltage for jump starting. Use of a welder or higher voltage will damage the electrical system.

Severely discharged maintenance free batteries do not fully recharge from the alternator after jump starting. The batteries must be charged to proper voltage with a battery charger. Many batteries thought to be unusable are still rechargeable.

Refer to Special Instruction, SEHS7633, "Battery Test Procedure" for complete testing and charging information. This publication is available from your Cat dealer.

When the auxiliary start receptacles are not available, use the following procedure.

- Lower the equipment to the ground. Move all controls to the HOLD position. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
- **2.** Turn the start switch on the stalled machine to the OFF position. Turn off all accessories.
- **3.** Turn the battery disconnect switch on the stalled machine to the ON position.
- 4. Move the machine that is being used as an electrical source near the stalled machine so that the jump-start cables reach the stalled machine.
 Do not allow the machines to contact each other.
- 5. Stop the engine of the machine that is being used as an electrical source. If you are using an auxiliary power source, turn off the charging system.



Illustration 431 g06181546



Illustration 432 g06181551

- (1) Red positive post to starter
- (2) The black negative post connects to the battery disconnect switch
- (3) Do not use these two connections for jump starting. The red positive post is connected in series to the black negative post.
- (4) Cover
- 6. Ensure that battery caps on both machines are tight and correctly placed. Ensure that batteries in the stalled machine are not frozen. Make sure that the batteries have enough electrolyte.

Note: The positive terminal of the 24 V system of the source and the negative terminal of the 24 V system of the source must be identified correctly before the jumper cables are connected. The positive terminal of the 24 V system of the discharged battery must be identified correctly before the jumper cables are connected.

7. The positive ends of the jump-start cable are red. Connect one positive end of the jump-start cable to the positive cable terminal of the discharged battery. Some machines have battery sets.

Note: Batteries that are in series may be in separate compartments. Use the terminal that is connected to the starter solenoid. This battery or battery set is normally on the same side of the machine as the starter.

- Do not allow the positive cable clamps to contact any metal except for the battery terminals.
- Connect the other positive end of the jump-start cable to the positive cable terminal of the electrical source.
- Connect one negative end of the jump-start cable to the negative cable terminal of the electrical source.
- 10. Finally, connect the other negative end of the jump-start cable to the frame of the stalled machine. Do not connect the jump-start cable to the battery post. Do not allow the jump-start cables to contact the battery cables, the fuel lines, the hydraulic lines, or any moving parts.
- **11.** Start the engine of the machine that is being used as an electrical source or energize the charging system on the auxiliary power source.
- 12. Wait at least two minutes before you attempt to start the stalled machine. This will allow the batteries in the stalled machine to partially charge.
- **13.** Attempt to start the stalled engine. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine Starting" for the correct starting procedure.
- 14. Immediately after you start the stalled engine, disconnect the jump-start cables in reverse order.

246

i07313575

Engine Starting with Auxiliary Start Receptacle

(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

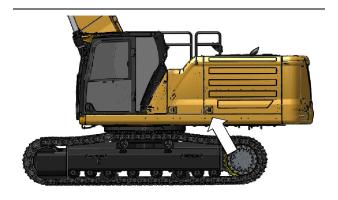


Illustration 433 g06209963

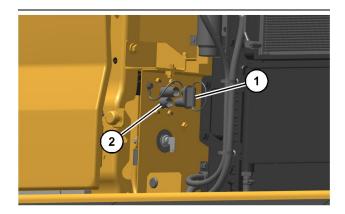


Illustration 434

g06279564

- (1) Cover
- (2) Receptacle

Some Caterpillar products may be equipped with an auxiliary start receptacle as a standard part. If your machine is not equipped with an auxiliary start receptacle, the machine can be equipped with an auxiliary start receptacle from parts service. This will ensure that a permanent receptacle is always available to jump-start the machine.

There are two cable assemblies that can be used to jump-start the stalled machine. You can jump-start the stalled machine from another machine that is equipped with an auxiliary start receptacle or with an auxiliary power pack. Your Caterpillar dealer can provide the correct cable lengths for your application.

1. Determine the reason that the engine will not start.

Reference: Refer to Special Instruction, SEHS7633, "Battery Test Procedure" for more information.

- Ensure that the travel control levers on the stalled machine are in the CENTER position. Engage the hydraulic lockout control. Engage the parking brake. Lower all work tools to the ground. Move all controls to HOLD.
- Turn the engine start switch key on the stalled machine to the OFF position. Turn off all accessories.
- Turn the battery disconnect switch on the stalled machine to ON.
- 5. Move the machine that is being used as a power source close to the stalled machine. The jumpstart cables should reach the batteries on both machines. DO NOT ALLOW THE MACHINES TO CONTACT EACH OTHER.
- **6.** Stop the engine on the machine that is being used as a power source. If you use an auxiliary power source, turn off the charging system.
- **7.** Connect the appropriate jump-start cable to the auxiliary start receptacle on the stalled machine.
- **8.** Connect the other end of the jump-start cable to the auxiliary start receptacle of the machine that is being used as a power source.
- **9.** Start the engine on the machine that is being used as a power source or energize the charging system on the auxiliary power source.
- **10.** Wait for a minimum of 2 minutes while the batteries in the stalled machine partially charge.
- Attempt to start the stalled engine.
- Immediately after the stalled engine starts, disconnect the jump-start cable from the power source.
- **13.** Disconnect the other end of the jump-start cable from the stalled machine.
- 14. Conclude the failure analysis on the starting charging system of the stalled machine, as required. Check the machine while the engine is running and the charging system is in operation.

Maintenance Section

Maintenance Access

i07377167

Access Door and Cover Locations

SMCS Code: 726A-CH

Engine Hood

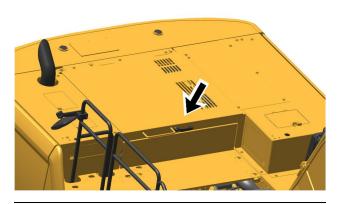


Illustration 435 Allows access to engine.

g06279602

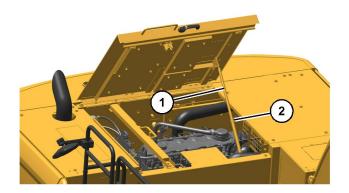


Illustration 436

g06279608

- 1. Open the engine hood.
- 2. Gas spring (1) will lock in place to hold the engine hood open.

MARNING

Operation of the Push Button Release for the Engine Hood

When closing the engine hood, only operate the push-button release by hand.

Failure to remove hands from the push-button release before closing the engine hood could result in personal injury.

Be sure to remove hands from the push-button release before completely closing the engine hood.

NOTICE

Do not add pressure to the engine hood when open.

WARNING

When closing the engine hood, Do Not operate the push-button release by foot.

Operation of the push-button release by foot could result in damage to the gas spring of the closing mechanism and/or personal injury.

Only operate the push-button release for closing the engine hood by hand.

3. To close the engine hood, support the engine hood with the door handle. Press the push-button release (2) to unlock the gas spring. Release the push button and slowly close the engine hood.

Engine Service Door

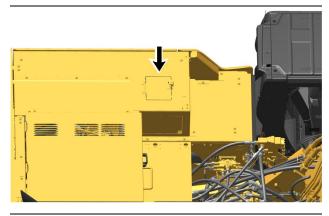


Illustration 437 g06279315

Allows access to the engine coolant reservoir.

Left Rear Access Door

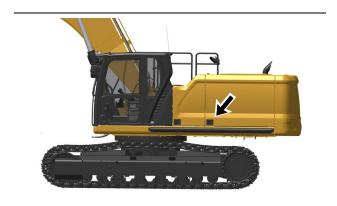


Illustration 438

g06279626

Allows access to the coolant sample port, coolant drain, cooling cores, and battery disconnect switch.

Left Front Access Door



Illustration 439

g06279630

Allows access to engine air filter, batteries, power fuses, and window washer reservoir.

Right Side Access Door



Illustration 440

g06279640

Allows access to the engine oil filter and engine oil sampling port. Additionally, the compartment houses the hydraulic pump, fuel filters, refueling pump, fuel tank drain valve, hydraulic tank sight gauge and tool storage box.

Storage Box

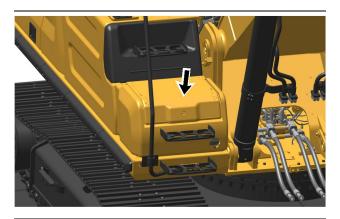


Illustration 441 g06279648

Allows access to the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank for machines equipped with Tier 4 engines. The compartment is empty and free for storage on machines that are equipped with Tier 3 engines.

Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities

i08693799

Lubricant Viscosities (Fluids Recommendations)

SMCS Code: 7581

250

General Information for Lubricants

When you are operating the machine in temperatures below -20°C (-4°F), refer to Special Publication, SEBU5898, "Cold Weather Recommendations". This publication is available from your Cat dealer.

Refer to the "Lubricant Information" section in the latest revision of the Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for a list of Cat ® engine oils and for detailed information. This manual may be found on the following website:

safety.cat.com

The footnotes are a key part of the tables. Read ALL footnotes that pertain to the machine compartment in question.

Selecting the Viscosity

To select the proper oil for each machine compartment, refer to the "Lubricant Viscosity for Ambient Temperature" table. Use the oil type AND oil viscosity for the specific compartment at the proper ambient temperature.

The proper oil viscosity grade is determined by the minimum ambient temperature (the air in the immediate vicinity of the machine). Measure the temperature when the machine is started and while the machine is operated. To determine the proper oil viscosity grade, refer to the "Min" column in the table. This information reflects the coldest ambient temperature condition for starting a cold machine and for operating a cold machine. Refer to the "Max" column in the table for operating the machine at the highest temperature that is anticipated. Unless specified otherwise in the "Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures" tables, use the highest oil viscosity that is allowed for the ambient temperature.

Machines that are operated continuously should use oils that have the higher oil viscosity. The oils that have the higher oil viscosity will maintain the highest possible oil film thickness. Refer to "General Information for Lubricants" article, "Lubricant Viscosities" tables, and any associated footnotes. Consult your Cat dealer if additional information is needed.

NOTICE

Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

Engine Oil

Cat oils have been developed and tested in order to provide the full performance and life that has been designed and built into Cat engines.

Cat DEO-ULS multigrade and Cat DEO multigrade oils are formulated with the correct amounts of detergents, dispersants, and alkalinity in order to provide superior performance in Cat diesel engines where recommended for use.

Note: SAE 10W-30 is the preferred viscosity grade for the 3116, 3126, C7, C-9, and C9 diesel engines when the ambient temperature is between -18° C (0° F) and 40° C (104° F).

Table 28

Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures							
Compartment or System	Oil Type and Performance Requirements	Oil Viscosities	°C		°F		
		On viscosities	Min	Max	Min	Max	
Engine Crankcase	Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather	SAE 0W-40	-40	40	-40	104	
	Cat DEO-ULS SYN Cat DEO SYN	SAE 5W-40	-30	50	-22	122	
	Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE 10W-30	-18	40	0	104	
	Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE 15W-40	-9.5	50	15	122	
Pump Coupling (If Equipped)	Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE 10W-30	-18	40	0	104	

Note: API engine oil categories are backwards compatible. Cat DEO-ULS (API CK-4) oil can be used in all engines with some restrictions related to fuel sulfur level. Cat DEO (API CI-4/API CI-4 PLUS) can be used in engines that are Tier 3 emissions certified and prior, and in engines that do not use aftertreatment devices.

Hydraulic Systems

Refer to the "Lubricant Information" section in the latest revision of the Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for detailed information. This manual may be found on the web on the following website:

safety.cat.com

The following are the preferred oils for use in most Cat machine hydraulic systems:

- · Cat HYDO Advanced 10 SAE 10W
- Cat HYDO Advanced 30 SAE 30W
- · Cat BIO HYDO Advanced

Cat HYDO Advanced oils allow 6000 hours or higher oil drain intervals for most applications. S·O·S Services oil analysis is recommended when the oil drain interval is increased to 6000 hours or higher. In comparison, non-Cat commercial hydraulic oils (second choice oils) allow 2000 hours oil drain interval. Itis recommended to follow the maintenance interval schedule for oil filter changes and for oil sampling that is stated in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for your particular machine. Consult your Cat dealer for details. When switching to Cat HYDO Advanced fluids, cross contamination with the previous oil should be kept to less than 10%.

Second choice oils are listed below.

- Cat MTO
- Cat DEO

- Cat DEO-ULS
- Cat TDTO
- · Cat TDTO Cold Weather
- Cat TDTO-TMS
- Cat DEO-ULS SYN
- Cat DEO SYN
- Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather

Note: Oil drain intervals of the oils listed above are less than those of Cat HYDO Advanced oils. The oil drain interval of these oils is typically 2000 hours and up to a maximum of 4000 hours. An exception is Cat TDTO Cold Weather oil which allows 6000 hours or higher oil drain interval. S·O·S Services oil analysis is required when the oils listed above are used in Cat hydraulic system components and hydrostatic transmissions.

Table 29

Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures							
Compartment or System	Oil Type and Performance	Oil Viggasities	°C		°F		
	Requirements Oil Viscosities		Min	Max	Min	Max	
Hydraulic System	Cat HYDO Advanced 10 Cat TDTO	SAE 10W	-20	40	-4	104	
	Cat HYDO Advanced 30 Cat TDTO	SAE 30	10	50	50	122	
	Cat BIO HYDO Advanced	"ISO 46" Multi-Grade	-30	50	-22	122	
	Cat MTO Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE10W-30	-20	40	-4	104	
	Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE15W-40	-15	50	5	122	
	Cat TDTO-TMS	Multi-Grade	-15	50	5	122	
	Cat DEO-ULS SYN Cat DEO SYN	SAE 5W-40	-30	40	-22	104	
	Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather	SAE0W-40	-40	40	-40	104	
	Cat TDTO Cold Weather	SAE 0W-20	-40	40	-40	104	

Other Fluid Applications

Table 30

Excavators, Fi	ont Shovels, Mass Excav Lubricant Visc	ators, Demolition Excava		rack Materi	al Handlers	5	
Compartment or System	Oil Type and Perform- ance Requirements	Oil Viscosity Grade	°C		°F		
			Min	Max	Min	Max	
Final Drives and Swing Drives	Cat TDTO Cat TDTO-TMS Cat TDTO SYN Cold Weather commercial TO-4	SAE 0W-20	-40	0	-40	32	
		SAE 0W-30	-40	10	-40	50	
		SAE 5W-30	-30	10	-22	50	
		SAE 10W	-30	0	-22	32	
		SAE 30	-25	25	-13	77	
		SAE 50	-15	50	5	122	
		Cat TDTO-TMS	-30	25	-22	77	
	Cat TDTO Cat TDTO-TMS Cat TDTO SYN Cold Weather commercial TO-4	SAE 0W-20	-40	0	-40	32	
Track Roller Frame Recoil Spring and Pivot Shaft Bearings		SAE 0W-30	-40	10	-40	50	
		SAE 5W-30	-35	0	-31	32	
		SAE 10W	-30	0	-22	32	
		SAE 30	-20	25	-4	77	
		SAE 40	-10	40	14	104	
		SAE 50	0	50	32	122	
		Cat TDTO-TMS	-25	25	-13	77	

(Table 30, contd)

Excavators, Front Shovels, Mass Excavators, Demolition Excavators, and Track Material Handlers Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures							
Compartment or	mpartment or Oil Type and Perform-		٥	°C		°F	
System	ance Requirements	Oil Viscosity Grade	Min	Max	Min	Max	
	Cat DEO (single grade)	SAE 30	-20	25	-4	77	
Track Idlers and Track Rollers	Cat DEO SYN Cat DEO-ULS SYN Cat ECF-1-a Cat ECF-2 Cat ECF-3 API CF	SAE 5W-40	-35	40	-31	104	

Table 31

Excavators, Front Shovels, Mass Excavators, Demolition Excavators, and Track Material Handlers Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures							
Compartment or	Oil Type and Perform-	011111 11 0 1	۰	°C		°F	
System	ance Requirements	Oil Viscosity Grade	Min	Max	Min	Max	
	I Oil meeting eitner Cat ECF-	SAE 0W40(1)	-40	50	-40	122	
Variable Pitch Flexxaire Fan (If Equipped)		SAE 5W40 ⁽¹⁾	-40	50	-40	122	
Caterpillar Non-Synthetic TO-4		SAE 30 ⁽²⁾	-15	25	-5	77	
	SAE 50 ⁽²⁾	-10	50	14	122		

⁽¹⁾ This is the first choice. Full synthetic oils are recommended. Synthetic oils may provide longer service life for the fan. Synthetic oils allow for increased service intervals over non-synthetic oils.

Special Lubricants

Grease

To use a non-Cat grease, the supplier must certify that the lubricant is compatible with Cat grease.

Each pin joint should be flushed with the new grease. Ensure that all old grease is removed. Failure to meet this requirement may lead to failure of a pin joint.

Table 32

Recommended Grease						
Compartment or System	Grease Type NLGI Grade		°C		°F	
Compartment of System	Grease Type	ease Type NLGI Grade		Max	Min	Max
	Cat Prime Application Grease	NLGI Grade 2	-20	140	-4	284
External Lubrication Points Cat Extreme Application Grease	Cat Extreme Application	NLGI Grade 1	-20	140	-4	284
	NLGI Grade 2	-15	140	+5	284	

⁽²⁾ This is the second choice. Caterpillar TDTO is acceptable. Commercial oils that meet the TO-4 specification are also acceptable. TDTO is non-synthetic. Commercial TO-4 oils are typically non-synthetic.

(Table 32, contd)

Recommended Grease						
Compartment or System	Grease Type	Crease Time		;	°F	
Compartment of System	Grease Type	NLGI Grade	Min	Max	Min	Max
	Cat Extreme Application Grease-Artic	NLGI Grade 0.5	-50	130	-58	266
	Cat Extreme Application Grease-Desert	NLGI Grade 2	-10	140	+14	284
	Cat Utility Grease	NLGI Grade 2	-20	140	-4	284
	Cat Ball Bearing Grease	NLGI Grade 2	-20	160	-4	320

Grease for the Autolube System (if Equipped)

The grease used with the automatic lubrication system must not contain any graphite or PTFE.

Note: Pumpability is based on "US Steel Mobility and Lincoln Ventmeter Tests". Performance may vary depending on lubrication equipment and the length of the lines.

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for additional information about grease. This manual may be found on the following website:

safety.cat.com

Table 33

Recommended Grease for the Autolube System							
Compartment or System	Grease Type	Crosses Turns		°C		°F	
Compartment of System	Grease Type	NLGI Grade	Min	Max	Min	Max	
Cat Autolube System	Cat Extreme Application	NLGI Grade 1	-35	40	-31	104	
	Grease	NLGI Grade 2	-30	50	-22	122	

Diesel Fuel Recommendations

Diesel fuel must meet "Caterpillar Specification for Distillate Fuel" and the latest versions of "ASTM D975" or "EN 590" to ensure optimum engine performance. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for the latest fuel information and for Cat fuel specification. This manual may be found on the following website:

safety.cat.com

The preferred fuels are distillate fuels. These fuels are commonly called diesel fuel, furnace oil, gas oil, or kerosene. These fuels must meet the "Caterpillar Specification for Distillate Diesel Fuel for Off-Highway Diesel Engines". Diesel Fuels that meet the Caterpillar specification will help provide maximum engine service life and performance.

Misfueling with fuels of high sulfur level can have the following negative effects:

- Reduce engine efficiency and durability
- · Increase the wear
- · Increase the corrosion
- · Increase the deposits
- Lower fuel economy
- Shorten the time period between oil drain intervals (more frequent oil drain intervals)
- Increase overall operating costs
- Negatively impact engine emissions

Failures that result from the use of improper fuels are not Caterpillar factory defects. Therefore the cost of repairs would not be covered by a Caterpillar warranty.

Caterpillar does not require the use of ULSD in off road and machine applications that are not Tier 4/ Stage IIIB certified engines. ULSD is not required in engines that are not equipped with after treatment devices.

Follow operating instructions and fuel tank inlet labels, if available, to ensure that the correct fuels are used.

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for more details about fuels and lubricants. This manual may be found on the following website:

safety.cat.com

Fuel Additives

Cat Diesel Fuel Conditioner and Cat Fuel System Cleaner are available for use when needed. These products are applicable to diesel and biodiesel fuels. Consult your Cat dealer for availability.

Biodiesel Recommendations

NOTICE

Never use raw vegetable or plant-based oils in place of esterified biodiesel.

The use of oils that are not esterified can lead to engine damage, up to and including engine failure.

Biodiesel is a fuel that can be made from various renewable resources that include vegetable oils, animal fat, and waste cooking oil. These oils and fats are chemically processed (esterified), and filtered to remove water and contaminants.

For biodiesel storage requirements, consult your fuel supplier.

Note: In some regions, biodiesel blends are known as Fatty Acid Methyl Ester (FAME).

Use biodiesel blends that meet national, regional, and local standards.

For more information on biodiesel standards, and to reduce the risks associated with biodiesel usage, refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations".

Biodiesel Blend Limits

NOTICE

The use of biofuel blends above the acceptable limit can lead to higher engine downtime.

Biodiesel blend levels up to B20 are acceptable to use in this product.

Note: For engines equipped with emission aftertreatment devices, biodiesel blends must be blended with U.S. Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel, or European Sulfur Free Diesel.

Coolant Information

The information provided in this "Coolant Recommendation" section should be used with the "Lubricants Information" provided in the latest revision of Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations". This manual may be found on the web on the following website:

safety.cat.com

The following two types of coolants may be used in Cat diesel engines:

Preferred – Cat ELC (Extended Life Coolant)

Acceptable – Cat DEAC (Diesel Engine Antifreeze/Coolant)

256

NOTICE

Never use water alone as a coolant. Water alone is corrosive at engine operating temperatures. In addition, water alone does not provide adequate protection against boiling or freezing.

i08274718

Capacities (Refill)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

S/N: JFW10044-Up

S/N: HBY1-Up

Table 34

3	336 GC Excavato	r Approximat	e Refill Capacities
Component or System	Component or System Liters US		Recommended Type
Cooling System	40	10.6	
Fuel Tank	600	158.5	
Engine Crankcase with Filter	25	6.6	Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubrical
Hydraulic System ⁽¹⁾	161	42.5	Viscosities".
Swing Drive	13.5	3.6	
Each Final Drive	6.5	1.7	
Pump Coupling	0.6	0.16	SAE 10W-30 Engine Oil
	kg	Ibs	
Refrigerant ⁽²⁾	1	2.2	R-134a
Swing Gear	26.1	57.5	Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubrica Viscosities".
	mL	oz	
Refrigerant Oil compressor(2)	240	8.2	Polyalkylene Glycol (PAG) Oil

The amount of hydraulic fluid that is needed to refill the hydraulic system after performing Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic System Oil - Change"

(2) Refer to Service Manual, "Air Conditioning and Heating R-134a for All Caterpillar Machines" for additional information

i08292307

Capacities (Refill)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

S/N: JFW1-10043

Table 35

336 GC Excavator Approximate Refill Capacities				
Component or System Liters US gal Recommended Type				
Cooling System	40	10.6	Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant	
Fuel Tank	600	158.5	Viscosities".	

(Tal	hle	35	con	td)
ιıaı	-	JJ.	COLL	w

336 GC Excavator Approximate Refill Capacities					
Component or System	Liters	US gal	Recommended Type		
Engine Crankcase with Filter	25	6.6			
Hydraulic System(1)	161	42.5			
Swing Drive	18	4.8			
Each Final Drive	8	2.1			
Pump Coupling	0.6	0.16	SAE 10W-30 Engine Oil		
	kg	lbs			
Refrigerant ⁽²⁾	1	2.2	R-134a		
Swing Gear	26.1	57.5	Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities".		
	mL	oz			
Refrigerant Oil compressor(2)	240	8.2	Polyalkylene Glycol (PAG) Oil		

⁽¹⁾ The amount of hydraulic fluid that is needed to refill the hydraulic system after performing Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic System Oil - Change"

i07445339

S-O-S Information

SMCS Code: 1000; 1348; 3080; 4050; 5050; 7000; 7542-008

S·O·S Services is a highly recommended process for Cat customers to use in order to minimize owning and operating cost. Customers provide oil samples, coolant samples, and other machine information. The dealer uses the data in order to provide the customer with recommendations for management of the equipment. In addition, S·O·S Services can help determine the cause of an existing product problem.

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluid Recommendations" for detailed information concerning S·O·S Services.

The effectiveness of $S \cdot O \cdot S$ Services is dependent on timely submission of the sample to the laboratory at recommended intervals.

Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Maintenance Interval Schedule" for a specific sampling location and a service hour maintenance interval.

Consult your Cat dealer for complete information and assistance in establishing an S·O·S program for your equipment.

⁽²⁾ Refer to Service Manual, "Air Conditioning and Heating R-134a for All Caterpillar Machines" for additional information

258 M0110641-02

Maintenance Section Maintenance Support

Maintenance Support

i07477696

Prepare the Machine for Maintenance

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Refer to the following procedure before you perform any maintenance to the machine.

WARNING

Personal injury can result from hydraulic oil pressure and hot oil.

Hydraulic oil pressure can remain in the hydraulic system after the engine has been stopped. Serious injury can be caused if this pressure is not released before any service is done on the hydraulic system.

Make sure all of the attachments have been lowered, oil is cool before removing any components or lines. Remove the oil filler cap only when the engine is stopped, and the filler cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

NOTICE

Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, "Dealer Service Tool Catalog" for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Note: Permit only one operator on the machine. Keep all other personnel away from the machine or in view of the operator.

1. Park the machine on a dry, level, solid surface that is free of any debris.

Note: The surface must be solid enough to support the weight of the machine and any tooling that is used to support the machine.

- **2.** Engage the parking brake. Place wheel blocks in front and behind the wheels or tracks.
- Lower all work tools to the ground.
- 4. Stop the engine.

5. Release the pressure in the hydraulic system. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "System Pressure Release" for more information.

Perform a visual inspection first. If the visual checks are completed but the problem has not been identified, perform operational checks. If the problem has not been identified, perform instrument tests. This procedure will help to identify system problems.

i08292362

Service Interval Chart

SMCS Code: 7000

The service interval chart is inside the battery compartment door on the left side of the machine.

Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Maintenance Interval Schedule" for the correct maintenance intervals and procedures that are specific to your machine.

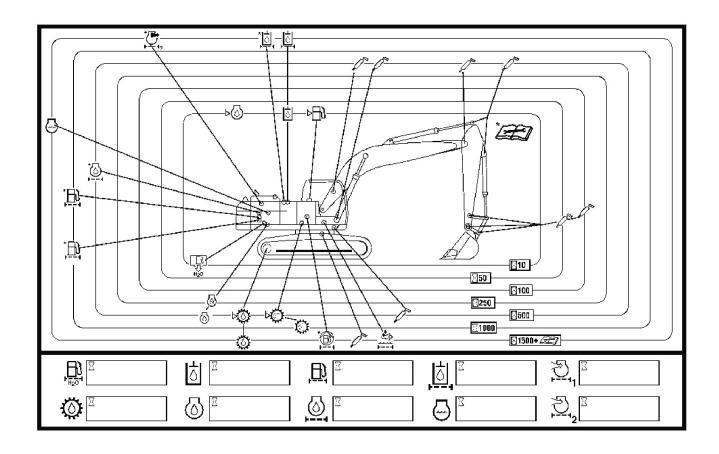


Illustration 442 g06616111



Operation and Maintenance Manual – Refer to the OMM for maintenance instructions and guidelines.



Service hour interval – Hourly interval in which a maintenance procedure should be performed.



Cooling system coolant – Change the ELC (Extended Life Coolant).



Engine air filter primary element – Clean or replace the primary air filter element.



Engine air filter secondary element – Replace the secondary air filter element.



Engine oil level – Check the engine oil level.



Engine oil - Change the engine oil.



Engine oil filter – Change the engine oil filter.



Final drive oil level – Check the final drive oil level.



Final drive oil – Change the final drive oil.



Fuel cap filter – Replace the fuel cap filter.



Fuel level - Check the fuel level.



Fuel system filter – Replace the fuel system filters.



Fuel system water separator – Drain the water separator.



Fuel system water separator element – Replace the fuel system water separator element.



Fumes Disposal Filter Element – Replace the fumes disposal filter element.



Grease zerk – Lubricate the designated locations.



Hydraulic oil level – Check the hydraulic oil level.



Hydraulic oil – Change the hydraulic oil.



Hydraulic oil filter – Change the hydraulic oil filter.



Swing drive oil level – Check the swing drive oil level.



Swing drive oil – Change the swing drive

i07327966

System Pressure Release

SMCS Code: 1250-553-PX; 1300-553-PX; 1350-553-PX; 5050-553-PX; 6700-553-PX; 7540-553-PX

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from sudden machine movement.

Sudden movement of the machine can cause injury to persons on or near the machine.

To prevent injury or death, make sure that the area around the machine is clear of personnel and obstructions before operating the machine.

Coolant System

A WARNING

Pressurized system: Hot coolant can cause serious burn. To open cap, stop engine, wait until radiator is cool. Then loosen cap slowly to relieve the pressure.

To relieve the pressure from the coolant system, turn off the machine. Allow the cooling system pressure cap to cool. Remove the cooling system pressure cap slowly to relieve pressure.

Hydraulic System

The release of hydraulic pressure in a hydraulic circuit is required before service is performed to that hydraulic circuit. Release the pressure in the following hydraulic circuits before any hydraulic lines are disconnected or removed from that hydraulic circuit.

- · Boom hydraulic circuit
- · Stick hydraulic circuit
- · Bucket hydraulic circuit
- Swing hydraulic circuit
- Travel hydraulic circuit
- Attachment hydraulic circuits (if equipped)
- · Pilot hydraulic circuit
- · Return hydraulic circuit

Note: Refer to the Disassembly and Assembly Manual for additional information concerning service of the components of specific hydraulic circuits.

Release of Hydraulic Pressure from the Main Hydraulic System

A WARNING

Personal injury can result from hydraulic oil pressure and hot oil.

Hydraulic oil pressure can remain in the hydraulic system after the engine has been stopped. Serious injury can be caused if this pressure is not released before any service is done on the hydraulic system.

Make sure all of the work tools have been lowered to the ground, and the oil is cool before removing any components or lines. Remove the oil filler cap only when the engine is stopped, and the filler cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

NOTICE

Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, "Dealer Service Tool Catalog" for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Perform the following steps to release the hydraulic system pressure from the main hydraulic system.

Note: For additional safety, wrap hydraulic joint with material that could absorb/reduce any residual pressure of oil when released. Loosen the joint slowly, pause, and carefully check hydraulic joint for tensions indicating presence of pressure or spring force in lines or components.

1. Position the machine on level ground.



Illustration 443 g06185115

- 2. Fully retract the stick cylinder rod. Adjust the position of the bucket so that the bucket is parallel to the ground. Lower the boom until the work tool is flat on the ground. Refer to Illustration 443.
- **3.** Release the system pressure from the implement and swing hydraulic circuits.

Note: Perform Step 3b through Step 3d immediately after the engine is shut off to insure adequate pilot system pressure is available to release the pressure in the hydraulic circuits.

- a. Shut off the engine.
- b. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position without starting the engine.

c. Place the hydraulic activation control lever in the UNLOCKED position.

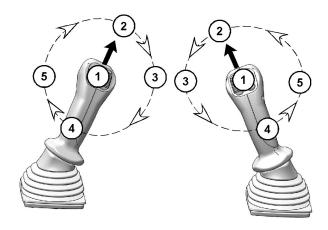


Illustration 444 g06184822

d. Move both joysticks in a circular motion to the FULL STROKE positions multiple times until the pilot accumulator has been exhausted.

Note: Pilot pressure is required to relieve hydraulic system pressure.

- e. Place the hydraulic activation control lever in the LOCKED position.
- f. Start the engine to recharge the pilot accumulator.

Note: Do not activate any controls when recharging the pilot accumulator.

- g. Shut off the engine.
- h. Repeat Step 3b through Step 3g until the highpressure lines have been released.

Note: Each time the accumulator is recharged, start the joysticks at different positions or rotate in the reverse direction. Doing so will ensure that the same circuit is not being relieved each time.

Note: You can also move only the joysticks or pedals of the hydraulic circuit that requires service to the full stroke positions after moving joysticks in a circular motion multiple times. This action will release the high pressure only in that single hydraulic circuit. This action will also release any pressure that might be present in the pilot hydraulic circuit.

- Release hydraulic system pressure in the attachment circuits.
 - a. Start the engine to charge pilot accumulator.
 - b. Shut off the engine.

Note: Perform Step 4c through Step 4e immediately after the engine is shut off to insure adequate pilot system pressure is available to release the pressure in the hydraulic circuits.

- c. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position without starting the engine.
- d. Place the hydraulic activation control lever in the UNLOCKED position.
- e. Activate the switch or pedal for the attachment circuit.
- f. Place the hydraulic activation control lever in the LOCKED position.
- g. Start the engine to recharge pilot accumulator.

Note: Do not activate any controls when recharging pilot accumulator.

- h. Shut off the engine.
- Repeat Step 4c through Step 4f for each attachment circuit.
- 5. After releasing the hydraulic pressure in each of the desired hydraulic circuits, place the hydraulic activation control lever in the LOCKED position.
- 6. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position.

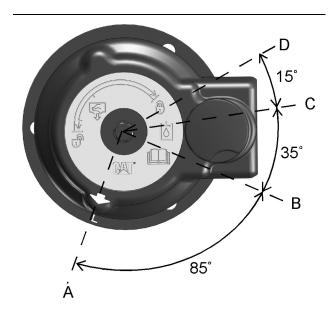


Illustration 445

q06184990

Hydraulic oil tank filler cap

- (A) LOCK position
- (B) PRESSURE RELEASE START position
- (C) PRESSURE RELEASE END position
- (D) OPEN position
- 7. Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 445 for filler cap positions.
 - a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).
 - b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).
 - c. Push down the filler cap and move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).

Note: The travel hydraulic circuit is open to the hydraulic tank. Pressure from the travel circuit is released by releasing pressure from the return circuit.

- 8. Release the pressure that may be present in the boom circuit to remove the risk of residual pressure in the line. Make sure that the engine start switch is in the OFF position and the pressure in the hydraulic tank has been released.
 - a. Remove the hydraulic oil tank filler cap.
 - b. Remove any covers to access the main control valve.

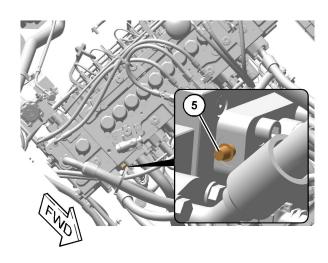


Illustration 446 g06205184

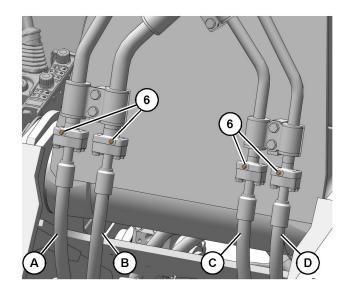
Main control valve

(5) Screw

- c. Use a clean hose of adequate length and size and connect to screw (5). Put the other end of the hose in the filler cap opening.
- d. Slowly loosen screw (5) by a maximum of 1/2 turn. Loosening the screw allows the hydraulic oil in the boom circuit to drain into the hydraulic tank.
- e. Tighten screw (5) to $13 \pm 2 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ (9 ± 1 lb ft).

Note: Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped for information on lowering the work tool with the engine off.

f. Disconnect the hose from screw (5). Do not allow the oil that is contained in the hose to spill. Drain the oil into a suitable container.



System Pressure Release

Illustration 447 g06285855

Stick and Bucket circuit locations

- (6) Purge Screws (If Equipped)
- (A) Circuit A
- (B) Circuit B
- (C) Circuit C
- (D) Circuit D
- 9. If the purge screws are equipped, perform the following pressure release procedure for each Stick and Bucket circuit. Refer to Illustration 447 and Table 36 for the stick and bucket circuit locations.

Table 36

Stick and Bucket Circuit Locations					
Sales Model	Circuits				
Sales Wodel	Α	В	С	D	
336	Stick In	Stick Out	Bucket Close	Bucket Open	

- a. Connect one end of a drain hose to purge screw (6). Insert the other end of the drain hose into an empty container.
- b. Loosen purge screw (6) by 1/2 turn. Hydraulic oil will be drained from the drain hose to the container.

Note: Dispose of drained fluid according to local regulations.

- c. Tighten purge screw (6) to a torque of 13 +/- 2 Nm (9 +/- 1 lb ft) after all the hydraulic oil has been drained from the line.
- d. Repeat Steps 9a through 9c for all circuits.

- e. Remove the drain hose and install hydraulic tank fill cap.
- 10. The pressure in the multiple hydraulic circuits that require service is now released and lines and components can be disconnected or removed from those hydraulic circuits.

i07746333

Welding on Machines and Engines with Electronic Controls

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Do not weld on any protective structure. If it is necessary to repair a protective structure, contact your Cat dealer.

Proper welding procedures are necessary to avoid damage to the electronic controls and to the bearings. When possible, remove the component that must be welded from the machine or the engine and then weld the component. If you must weld near an electronic control on the machine or the engine, temporarily remove the electronic control to prevent heat related damage. The following steps should be followed to weld on a machine or an engine with electronic controls.

- **1.** Turn off the engine. Place the engine start switch in the OFF position.
- 2. If equipped, turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. If there is no battery disconnect switch, remove the negative battery cable at the battery.

NOTICE

Do NOT use electrical components (ECM or sensors) or electronic component grounding points for grounding the welder.

- 3. Clamp the ground cable from the welder to the component that will be welded. Place the clamp as close as possible to the weld. Make sure that the electrical path from the ground cable to the component does not go through any bearing. Use this procedure to reduce the possibility of damage to the following components:
 - Bearings of the drive train
 - Hydraulic components
 - Electrical components
 - Other components of the machine

- 4. Protect any wiring harnesses and components from the debris and the spatter which is created from welding.
- **5.** Use standard welding procedures to weld the materials together.

i04807435

Severe Service Application

SMCS Code: 1000

An engine which operates outside of normal conditions is operating in a severe service application.

An engine that operates in a severe service application may need more frequent maintenance intervals in order to maximize the following conditions:

- Reliability
- · Service life

The number of individual applications cause the impossibility of identifying all of the factors which may contribute to severe service operation. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for the unique maintenance that may be necessary for your engine.

An application is a severe service application if any of the following conditions apply:

Severe Environmental Factors

- Frequent operation in dirty air
- Frequent operation at an altitude which is above 1525 m (5000 ft)
- Frequent operation in ambient temperatures which are above 32° C (90° F)
- Frequent operation in ambient temperatures which are below 0° C (32° F)

Severe Operating Conditions

- Frequent operation with inlet air which has a corrosive content
- Operation with inlet air which has a combustible content
- Operation which is outside of the intended application
- Operation with a plugged fuel filter
- Extended operation at low idle (more than 20% of hours)

- Frequent cold starts at temperatures below 0° C (32° F)
- Frequent dry starts (starting after more than 72 hours of shutdown)
- Frequent hot shutdowns (shutting down the engine without the minimum of 2 minutes to 5 minutes of cool down time)
- · Operation above the engine rated speed
- Operation below the peak torque speed
- Operating with fuel which does not meet the standards for distillate diesel fuel as stated in Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" "Distillate Diesel Fuel"
- Operating with a blend of distillate fuel which contains more than 20 percent biodiesel

Improper Maintenance Procedures (Maintenance Procedures Which May Contribute to a Severe Service Application)

- Inadequate maintenance of fuel storage tanks from causes such as excessive water, sediment, and microorganism growth.
- Extending maintenance intervals beyond the recommended intervals
- Using fluids which are not recommended in Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations"
- Extending maintenance intervals for changing the engine oil and engine coolant without S·O·S validation
- Extending maintenance intervals for changing air filters, oil filters, and fuel filters
- Failure to use a water separator
- Using filters which are not recommended by Special Publication, PEWJ0074, "2008 Cat Filter and Fluid Application Guide"
- Storing the engine for more than 3 months but less than 1 yr (For information about engine storage, refer to Special Publication, SEHS9031, "Storage Procedure for Caterpillar Products")

"Condenser (Refrigerant) - Clean"............. 280 i08686542 " Engine Air Filter Primary and/or Secondary Element Maintenance Interval Schedule SMCS Code: 7000 "Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace" 298 Ensure that all safety information, warnings, and "Film (Product Identification) - Clean" 299 instructions are read and understood before any operation or any maintenance procedures are performed. The user is responsible for the performance of maintenance. All adjustments, the use of proper lubricants, fluids, filters, and the replacement of components due to normal wear and aging are " Hydraulic System - Purge" 309 included. Failure to adhere to proper maintenance intervals and procedures may result in diminished "Light Emitting Diode Lamp (LED) - Replace"... 319 performance of the product and/or accelerated wear of components. Use mileage, fuel consumption, service hours, or "Radiator, Aftercooler and Oil Cooler Cores calendar time. WHICH EVER OCCURS FIRST, to determine the maintenance intervals. Products that operate in severe operating conditions may require "Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) more frequent maintenance. Refer to the maintenance procedure for any other exceptions that may change the maintenance intervals. Note: The aftertreatment system can be expected to function properly for the useful life of the engine (emissions durability period), as defined by regulation. All prescribed maintenance requirements "Window Wiper - Inspect/Replace" 334 must be followed. Note: Before each consecutive interval is performed, all maintenance from the previous interval must be **Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for** performed. First 50 Hours The following guidelines should be followed if the "Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate" 270 service hours are not met: Items listed between 10 and 100 service hours "Bucket Linkage - Lubricate" 272 should be performed at least every 3 months. "Bucket Linkage - Lubricate" 273 Items listed between 250 and 500 service hours should be performed at least every 6 months. **Every 10 Service Hours or Daily** Items listed between 1000 service hours and 2500 service hours should be performed at least every "Cooling System Coolant Level - Check"...... 284 When Required "Air Conditioner/Cab Heater Filter (Recirculation) -"Fuel System Water Separator - Drain"....... 304 "Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain" 305 "Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check" 317 "Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace". . . . 269 "Bucket Linkage - Inspect/Adjust" 271

"Undercarriage - Check"	" Engine Valve Lash - Check"				
Every 50 Service Hours	"Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) Element - Replace"				
"Bucket Linkage - Lubricate"	"Fuel System Secondary Filter - Replace" 303				
Every 100 Service Hours	"Swing Drive Oil - Change"				
"Bucket Linkage - Lubricate"	Every 2000 Service Hours				
"Oil Filter (Hydraulic Hammer) - Replace" 319	"Cooling System Coolant Sample - Obtain" 286				
Every 250 Service Hours	" Final Drive Oil - Change"				
"Cooling System Coolant Sample - Obtain" 286	"Fuel Tank Cap Filter - Replace" 305				
"Engine Oil Sample - Obtain"	" Swing Gear - Lubricate"				
Initial 500 Service Hours	Every Year				
"Engine Oil and Filter - Change"	"Cooling System Coolant Sample - Obtain" 286				
"Engine Valve Lash - Check"	Every 3000 Service Hours				
"Final Drive Oil - Change"	" Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) -				
"Swing Drive Oil - Change"	Replace"				
Initial 500 Hours (for New Systems,	Every 3 Years				
Refilled Systems, and Converted	"Seat Belt - Replace"				
Systems)	Every 5000 Service Hours				
"Cooling System Coolant Sample - Obtain" 286	"Pump Coupling Oil - Change"				
Every 500 Service Hours	"Receiver Dryer (Refrigerant) - Replace" 324				
"Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate" 270	Every 6000 Service Hours or 3				
"Final Drive Oil Level - Check" 300	Years				
"Final Drive Oil Sample - Obtain" 301	"Cooling System Coolant Extender (ELC) -				
"Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain"	Add"				
"Pump Coupling Oil Level - Check"					
"Swing Bearing - Lubricate"	Every 12 000 Service Hours or 6 Years				
"Swing Drive Oil Sample - Obtain"	"Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change" 281				
·	g - , (,,				
Every 1000 Service Hours					
"Battery - Clean"					
"Battery Hold-Down - Tighten"					
"Belt - Inspect/Adjust/Replace"					
" Engine Oil and Filter - Change"					

Air Conditioner/Cab Heater Filter (Recirculation) - Inspect/Replace

i06954215

Air Conditioner/Cab Heater Filter (Recirculation) - Inspect/Replace

SMCS Code: 1054-510-A/C; 1054-040-A/C

NOTICE

An air recirculation filter element plugged with dust will result in decreased performance and service life to the air conditioner or cab heater.

To prevent decreased performance, clean the filter element, as required.

The air conditioner filter is on the lower left side of the cab behind the seat.

Slide the operator seat forward.

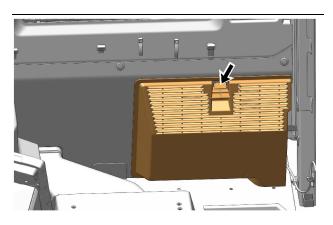


Illustration 448

g06181599

2. Release the cover latch.

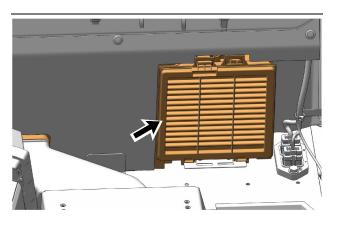


Illustration 449

g06181603

- 3. Slide the filter element upward.
- **4.** Tap the air filter to remove the dirt. Do not use compressed air to clean the filter.

- 5. After you clean the filter element, inspect the filter element. If the filter element is damaged or badly contaminated, use a new filter element. Make sure that the filter element is dry.
- 6. Install the filter element.
- 7. Install the cover.

NOTICE

Failure to reinstall the filter element for the air conditioning system will contaminate and damage the system components.

i00934864

Battery - Clean

SMCS Code: 1401-070

Clean the battery surface with a clean cloth. Keep the terminals clean and keep the terminals coated with petroleum jelly. Install the post cover after you coat the terminal post with petroleum jelly.

i06019968

Battery Electrolyte Level - Check

SMCS Code: 1401; 1401-535; 1401-535-FLV

WARNING

All lead-acid batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn the skin and clothing. Always wear a face shield and protective clothing when working on or near batteries.

Note: If the machine is operated in extreme temperatures, check the electrolyte level Every 500 Service Hours or 3 months.

When the engine is not run for long periods of time or when the engine is run for short periods, the batteries may not fully recharge. Ensure a full charge in order to help prevent the battery from freezing.

- 1. Clean the battery surface with a clean cloth. Clean the terminals and the cable clamps. Coat the clamps and the terminals with silicone lubricant or petroleum jelly. Install the post cover.
- 2. Inspect the electrolyte level in each battery cell.

 Maintain the electrolyte level to the bottom of the filler openings. Use distilled water. If distilled water is not available, use clean drinking water.

i00934872

Battery Hold-Down - Tighten

SMCS Code: 7257

Tighten the hold-downs for the battery in order to prevent the batteries from moving during machine operation.

i04064489

Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace

SMCS Code: 1401-040; 1401; 1401-561; 1401-510; 1402-510; 1402-040

WARNING

Personal injury can result from battery fumes or explosion.

Batteries give off flammable fumes that can explode. Electrolyte is an acid and can cause personal injury if it contacts the skin or eyes.

Prevent sparks near the batteries. Sparks could cause vapors to explode. Do not allow jumper cable ends to contact each other or the engine. Improper jumper cable connections can cause an explosion.

Always wear protective glasses when working with batteries.

- **1.** Turn all of the switches to the OFF position. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position.
- **2.** Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. Remove the key.
- **3.** Disconnect the negative battery cable at the battery.
- **4.** Disconnect the positive battery cable at the battery.
- **5.** Disconnect the battery cables at the battery disconnect switch. The battery disconnect switch is connected to the machine frame.
- **6.** Make necessary repairs or replace the battery.
- **7.** Connect the battery cable at the battery disconnect switch.
- 8. Connect the positive battery cable of the battery.
- 9. Connect the negative battery cable of the battery.
- **10.** Install the key and turn the battery disconnect switch to the ON position.

i07246860

Belt - Inspect/Adjust/Replace

SMCS Code: 1357-040; 1357-025; 1357-510; 1397-025; 1397-510; 1397-040

Note: This engine is equipped with a belt tightener that automatically adjusts the belt to the correct tension.

 Unlatch the engine hood and raise the engine hood.



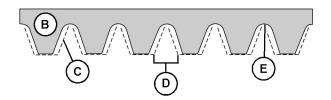


Illustration 450

g06206193

- (A) New belt
- (B) Worn belt
- 2. Inspect the condition of the serpentine belt. Over time the belt ribs will lose material (C). The space between the ribs will increase (D). The loss of material will cause the pulley sheave to contact the belt valley. This will lead to belt slippage and accelerated wear (E). Replace the belt if the belt is worn or frayed.
- **3.** If the belt requires replacement, perform Step 3a through Step 3f.
 - a. Remove the upper fan guard.

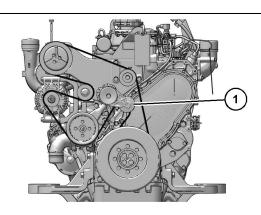


Illustration 451 g06265252

- (1) Belt tensioner
- b. Rotate the belt tensioner (1) clockwise to remove the belt.
- c. Remove the belt.
- d. Install a new belt.
- e. Rotate the belt tensioner clockwise to install the belt.
- f. Install the upper fan guard.
- g. Lower the engine hood and latch the engine hood.

i07531958

Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 6501-086; 6502-086

Note: Caterpillar recommends the use of 5% molybdenum grease for lubricating the boom, and stick linkage. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for more information on molybdenum grease.

Apply lubricant through all fittings after operation under water.

Wipe all fittings before you apply lubricant.

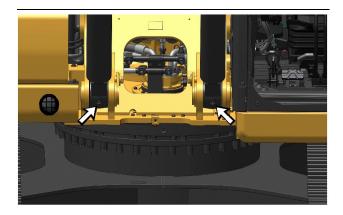


Illustration 452 g06183509

1. Apply lubricant through the fitting at the base of each boom cylinder.

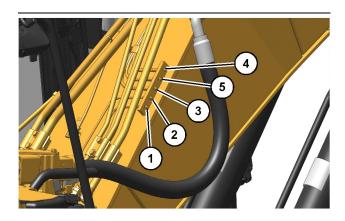


Illustration 453 g06183534

Note: Your machine may have the fittings mounted in a vertical position as shown in the illustration above, or your machine may have the fittings mounted in a horizontal position.

- 2. The fittings are at the base of the boom. The fittings can be serviced from the platform on the fuel tank. To lubricate the lower boom bearings, apply lubricant through fittings (1) and (2).
- **3.** Apply lubricant through fittings (3) and (4) for the boom cylinder rod.
- **4.** Apply lubricant through fitting (5) for the stick cylinder head.

Note: To ensure proper lubrication of the lower boom bearings and of the boom cylinder rod end bearings, lubricant should be applied through fittings (1), (2), (3), and (4). Apply lubricant first when the boom is raised and any attachment is suspended. Then apply lubricant when the boom is lowered and the attachment is rested on the ground with a slight downward pressure.

i07313700

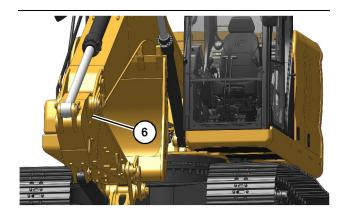


Illustration 454

g06183854

5. Apply lubricant through fitting (6). Fitting (6) is at the connection point of the boom and of the stick.

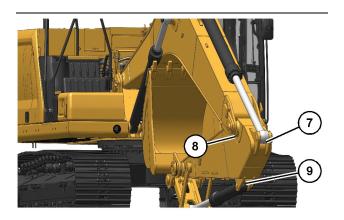


Illustration 455

g06183864

6. Apply lubricant through fitting (7) on the stick cylinder rod. Apply lubricant through fitting (8) at the connection point of the boom and of the stick. Apply lubricant through fitting (9) at the bucket cylinder head end.

Bucket Linkage - Inspect/ Adjust

SMCS Code: 6513-025; 6513-040

WARNING

Unexpected machine movement can cause injury or death.

To avoid possible machine movement, move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position and attach a Special Instruction, SEHS7332, "Do Not Operate" or similar warning tag to the hydraulic lockout control.

NOTICE Improperly adjusted bucket clearance could cause galling on the contact surfaces of the bucket and stick, resulting in excessive noise and/or damaged Oring seals.

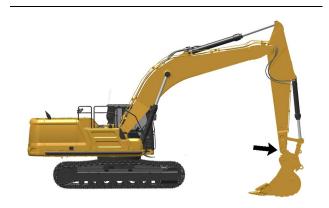


Illustration 456

g06279682

Area for linkage adjustment

272

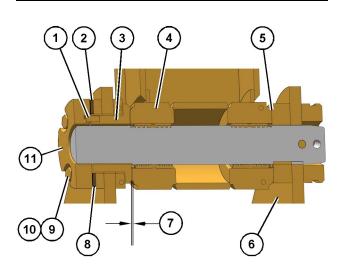


Illustration 457 g06185866

- (1) Pin
- (2) Shims
- (3) Flange
- (4) Stick boss
- (5) No gap
- (6) Bucket bloss
- (7) Bucket clearance
- (8) Location
- (9) Bolts
- (10) Washers
- (11) Plate

The clearance of the bucket control linkage on this machine can be adjusted by shimming. If the gap between the bucket and the stick becomes excessive, adjust bucket clearance (7) to 0.5 to 1 mm (0.02 to 0.04 inch).

Two shims of different thickness are used at location (8). The thicknesses of the shims are 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) and 1.0 mm (0.04 inch).

- **1.** Position the machine on a level surface and lower the bucket to the ground.
- Slowly operate the swing control lever until stick boss (4) and the bucket boss (6) are in full face contact at no gap (5). This will help to determine the total clearance of the connection point of the stick and of the bucket.
- **3.** Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Stop the engine.
- **4.** Measure bucket clearance (7), which is the existing total clearance.
- **5.** Determine the number of shims that need to be removed from shims (2) by using the following calculation:

- Subtract 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) or 1.0 mm (0.04 inch) from bucket clearance (7).
- **6.** Remove the appropriate number of shims at location (8) to meet the above thickness. Make sure that you use a minimum of three 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) shims. To remove the shims, remove bolts (9), washers (10), and plate (11).
- 7. After the correct number of shims has been removed and pin (1) is aligned with the pin hole, install plate (11), bolts (9), and washers (10). Tighten the bolts to 240 ± 40 N·m (175 ± 30 lb ft).
- **8.** After installation, make sure that bucket clearance (7) is still correct.

i07377602

Bucket Linkage - Lubricate (TB Bucket Family)

SMCS Code: 6513-086

Note: Use this procedure for the TB bucket family. Lubricate the bucket linkage at the maintenance interval of every 50 service hours.

Note: Caterpillar recommends the use of 5% molybdenum grease for lubricating the bucket linkage. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for more information on grease.

Wipe all fittings before you apply lubricant.

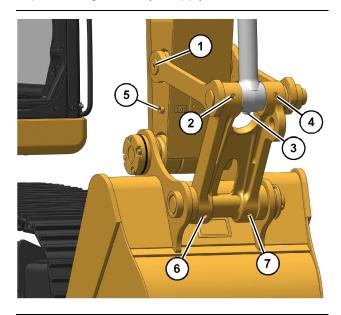


Illustration 458

g06183336

Note: Completely fill all cavities of the bucket control linkage with grease when you initially install a bucket.

- **1.** Apply lubricant through fittings for the linkages (1), (2), (3), and (4).
- **2.** Apply lubricant through fittings for the bucket (5), (6), and (7).

Note: Service the above fittings after you operate the bucket under water.

i07378295

Bucket Linkage - Lubricate (DB Bucket Family)

SMCS Code: 6513-086

Note: Use this procedure for the DB bucket family. Lubricate the bucket linkage at the maintenance interval of every 100 service hours.

Note: Caterpillar recommends the use of 5% molybdenum grease for lubricating the bucket linkage. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for more information on grease.

Wipe all fittings before you apply lubricant.

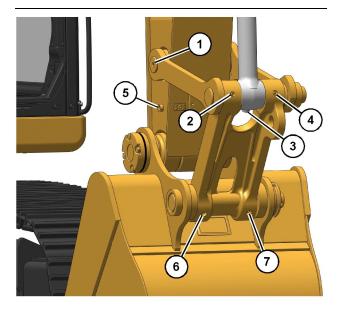


Illustration 459

g06183336

Note: Completely fill all cavities of the bucket control linkage with grease when you initially install a bucket.

- **1.** Apply lubricant through fittings for the linkages (1), (2), (3), and (4).
- **2.** Apply lubricant through fittings for the bucket (5), (6), and (7).

Note: Service the above fittings after you operate the bucket under water.

i08059817

Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace

SMCS Code: 6805-510; 6805-040

A WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from bucket falling.

Block the bucket before changing bucket tips or side cutters.

K Series GET Drive-through System Bucket Tips

Note: To maximize the life of the bucket tip and the penetration of the bucket tip, the bucket tip can be rotated.

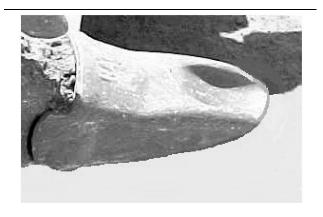


Illustration 460
Acceptable wear

g01055179



Illustration 461

g01055196

Replace this bucket tip.

Check the bucket tips for wear. If the bucket tip has a hole, replace the bucket tip.

274 M0110641-02

Removal Procedure

WARNING

Retainer pin, when struck with force, can fly out and cause injury to nearby people.

Make sure the area is clear of people when driving retainer pins.

To avoid injury to your eyes, wear protective glasses when striking a retainer pin.

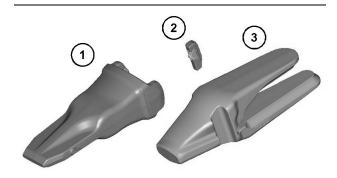


Illustration 462

g06528662

- (1) Bucket tip
- (2) Retainer
- (3) Adapter

Note: Retainers are often damaged during the removal process. Caterpillar recommends the installation of a new retainer when bucket tips are rotated or replaced.

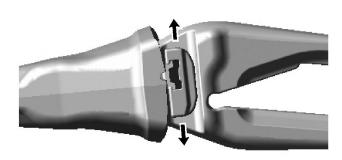


Illustration 463

g01054386

Internal view

 Use a hammer and a punch to drive out the retainer. The retainer can be removed from the top of the bucket tip or from the bottom of the bucket tip. **2.** Remove the bucket tip from the adapter with a slight counterclockwise rotation.

Installation Procedure

- 1. Clean the adapter, if necessary.
- **2.** Install the new bucket tip or the rotated bucket tip onto the adapter with a slight clockwise rotation.

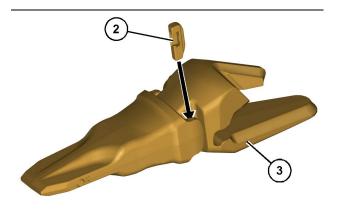


Illustration 464

g06528668

Proper location for installing the retainer

3. The retainer can be installed from the top of the bucket tip or from the bottom of the bucket tip. Use a hammer and a 1 inch X 1 inch X 8 inch steel bar stock to drive retainer (2) into adapter (3).

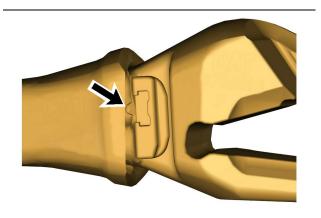


Illustration 465

g06528672

Internal View

The latch of the retainer is properly seated in the recess of the bucket tip.

q06528674

275

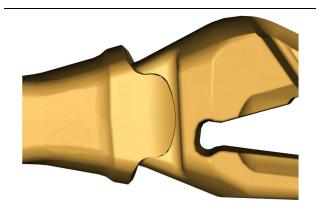


Illustration 466

A properly installed retainer does not extend beyond the ear of the bucket tip.

4. The retainer is properly seated if the retainer can be moved slightly by the technicians hand. If the retainer cannot be moved, adjust the retainer, as needed. The ends of the retainer should not extend beyond the ear of the bucket tip.

J Series GET Bucket Tips

A WARNING

Block the bucket before changing the bucket feeth.

To prevent possible injury to the eyes, wear a protective face shield when striking the pin.

The pin, when struck, can fly out and cause injury to nearby personnel.

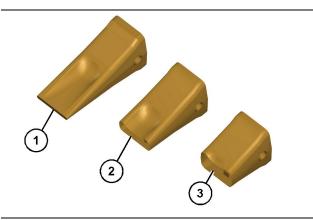


Illustration 467

q06528680

- (1) Usable tip
- (2) Replaceable bucket tip
- (3) Overworn tip

Check the bucket tips for wear. If the bucket tip has a hole, replace the bucket tip.

- **1.** Remove the pin from the bucket tip. The pin can be removed by one of the following methods.
 - Use a hammer and a punch from the retainer side of the bucket to drive out the pin.
 - Use a Pin-Master. Follow Step 1a through Step 1c for the procedure.

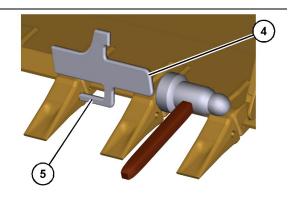


Illustration 468 g06214793

- (4) Back of Pin-Master
- (5) Extractor
- a. Place the Pin-Master on the bucket tip.
- b. Align extractor (5) with the pin.
- c. Strike the Pin-Master at the back of the tool (4) and remove the pin.

Note: Discard the old pin and the retainer assembly. When you change tips, use a new pin and a new retainer assembly. Refer to the appropriate parts manual for your machine.

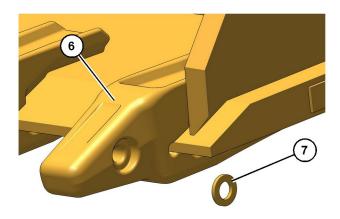


Illustration 469 g06214921

- (6) Retainer assembly
- (7) Adapter
- 2. Clean the adapter and the pin.
- **3.** Fit retainer assembly (6) into the counterbore that is in the side of adapter (7). Make sure that the face of the retainer assembly with the marking "OUTSIDE" is visible.

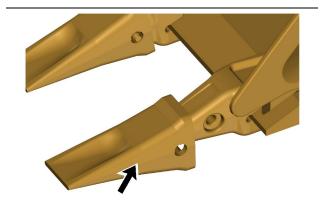


Illustration 470 g06214795

4. Install the new bucket tip onto the adapter.

Note: The bucket tips can be rotated by 180 degrees to allow the tip to wear evenly. You may also move the tips from the outside teeth to the inside teeth. Check the tips often. If wear is present on the tips, rotate the tips. The outside teeth generate the most wear

5. Drive the pin through the bucket tip. The pin can be installed by using one of the following methods:

- From the same side of the retainer, drive the pin through the bucket tip, the retainer assembly, and the adapter.
- Use a Pin-Master. Follow Step 5a through Step 5e for the procedure.

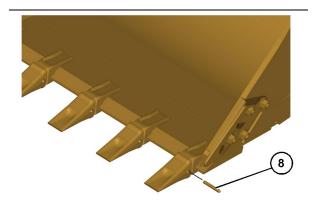


Illustration 471 g06214803

(8) Pin

a. Insert pin (8) through the bucket tip.

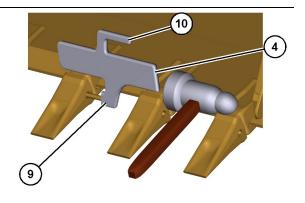


Illustration 472 g06214807

- b. Place the Pin-Master over the bucket tips so that the pin will fit into the counterbore of the pin holder (9).
- c. Strike the Pin-Master with a hammer at the back of the tool (4) to insert the pin.
- d. Slide pin holder (9) away from the pin and rotate the tool slightly to align pin setter (10) with the pin.

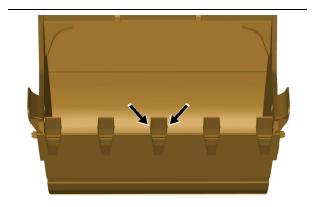


Illustration 473

g06214812

Final assembly of pin into bucket tip

e. Strike the end of the tool until the pin is fully inserted.

Bucket Tips (Cat® Advansys) - If Equipped

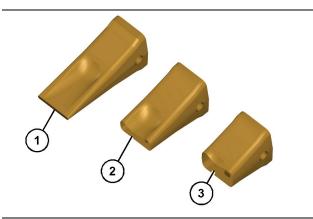


Illustration 474

g06528680

- (1) Usable tip
- (2) Replaceable bucket tip
- (3) Overworn tip

Check the bucket tips for wear. If the bucket tip has a hole, replace the bucket tip.

Removal

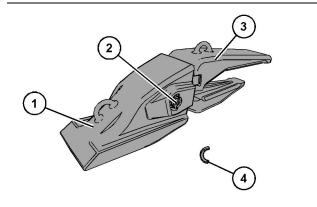


Illustration 475

g06528701

- (1) Bucket Tip
- (2) Retainer
- (3) Adapter
- (4) Compression Sleeve
- **1.** Use a 1/2" ratchet and rotate the retainer (2) 180 degrees to the unlocked position.
- 2. Remove the bucket tip (1) from adapter (3).
- 3. Clean adapter (3).

Installation

- **1.** Clean the adapter and the area around the latch, if necessary.
- 2. Install the new bucket tip (1) onto the adapter (3).

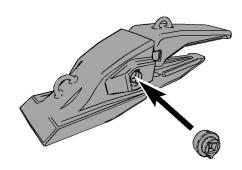


Illustration 476 g06528728

3. Use a 1/2" ratchet to rotate the retainer (2) 180 degrees to the locked position.

Side Cutters

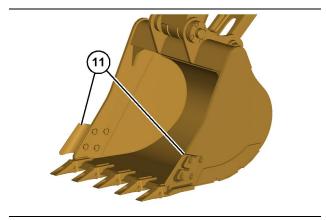


Illustration 477

g06214814

Bucket With Side Cutters

- **1.** Remove the mounting bolts and the side cutters (11).
- 2. Clean the mounting surface of the side plate on the bucket and of the side cutter. Remove any burrs or protrusions on the mating surfaces.

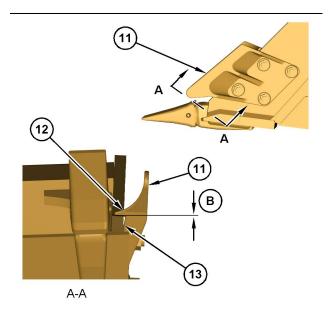


Illustration 478 g06214887

- (12) Shear ledge on a side cutter
- (13) Side plate on a bucket
- (B) 0.0 mm (0.0 inch)

Note: Some side cutters may be rotated for additional wear.

3. Install the side cutter.

Note: Certain bolts may require thread compound.

- **4.** Hand tighten the bolts.
- **5.** Make sure that there is not a gap between the side plate on the bucket and the shear ledge on the side cutter.
- **6.** Torque the mounting bolts to the correct specification.

Side Protectors (If Equipped)

Inspect the wear of the side protector. When too much wear is present, replace the protector.

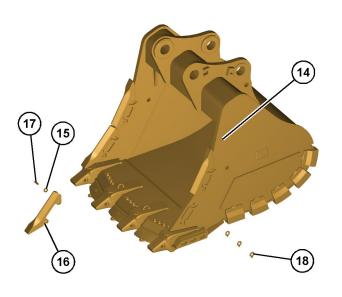


Illustration 479 g06219766

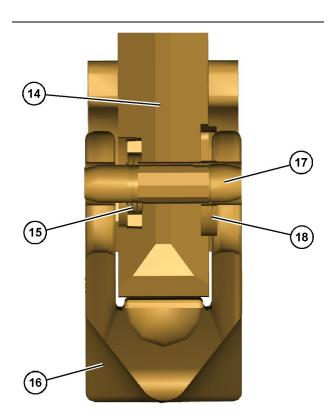


Illustration 480 g06219767

- (14) Side plate
- (15) Retainer
- (16) Side protector
- (17) Pin
- (18) Shim

- **1.** Hit pin (17) from the side of the bucket without the retainer to remove side protector (16) from side plate (14).
- **2.** Clean side protector (16), pin (17), retainer(15), and side plate (14) before installation.

Note: Lateral clearance between the side plate and the side protector should not exceed 1 mm (0.04 inch). Shims (18) may be required to decrease the lateral clearance which will decrease movement. Install the shims between the side plate and the side protector on the opposite side of the retainer.

- 3. Put retainer (15) in side plate (14).
- 4. Align two pin holes of the new protector and the side plate. Hit the pin from the retainer side of the bucket.

Note: If the pin and/or the retainer are worn, replace the pin and/or the retainer.

i07092323

Cab Air Filter (Fresh Air) - Clean/Replace

SMCS Code: 7342-510; 7342-070

The cab air filter is on the left side of the cab.

1. Use the ignition key to open the access panel.



Illustration 481 g06182115

- 2. Remove air filter (1).
- **3.** Tap the air filter to remove the dirt. Do not use compressed air to clean the filter.
- **4.** After you clean the air filter, inspect the air filter. If the air filter is damaged or badly contaminated, use a new air filter.
- 5. Install the air filter.
- 6. Close and lock the access panel.

i07103676

Camera - Clean

SMCS Code: 7348-070

WARNING

Failure to use an appropriate external ladder or an appropriate platform for direct access to the rear view camera could result in slipping and falling which could result in personal injury or death. Be sure to use an appropriate external ladder or an appropriate platform for direct access to the rear view camera.

The machine's counterweight and the engine hood are not approved as a maintenance platforms.

A WARNING

Unexpected machine movement can cause injury or death.

In order to avoid possible machine movement, move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position and attach a Special Instruction, SEHS7332, "Do Not Operate" or similar warning tag to the hydraulic lockout control.

Note: When you access the camera for cleaning, be sure to observe safe procedures for access. Maintain a three-point contact and/or use a body harness.

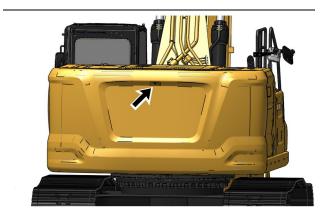


Illustration 482

g06224689

The rear view camera is on top of the counterweight.

If necessary, use a damp cloth to clean the glass of the camera. The camera is sealed. The camera is not affected by a wash with high-pressure spray.

Note: Alternatively, cameras may be cleaned from ground level by using a wash with a high-pressure spray or a damp rag on a wand.

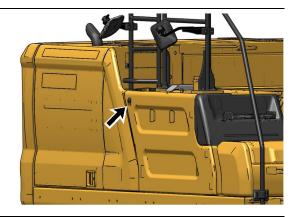


Illustration 483

g06224690

If equipped, clean the side view camera as well.

i06969907

Condenser (Refrigerant) - Clean

SMCS Code: 1805-070

NOTICE

If excessively dirty, clean condenser with a brush. To prevent damage or bending of the fins, do not use a stiff brush.

Repair the fins if found defective.



Illustration 484

g06179792

 Open the access door on the left side of the machine. The condenser is located in front of the radiator.

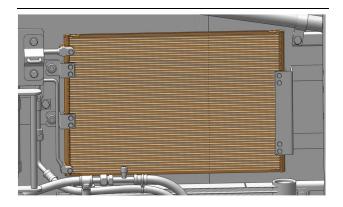


Illustration 485

q06183025

- Inspect the condenser for debris. Clean the condenser, if necessary.
- Use clean water to wash off all dust and dirt from the condenser.
- 4. Close the access door.

i07313722

Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change

SMCS Code: 1350-044

A WARNING

Engine hood and engine hood parts can be hot while engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Hot parts or hot components can cause burns or personal injury. Do not allow these parts to contact your skin, when engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Use protective clothing or protective equipment to protect your skin.

MARNING

Personal injury can result from hot coolant, steam and alkali.

At operating temperature, engine coolant is hot and under pressure. The radiator and all lines to heaters or the engine contain hot coolant or steam. Any contact can cause severe burns.

Remove cooling system pressure cap slowly to relieve pressure only when engine is stopped and cooling system pressure cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

Do not attempt to tighten hose connections when the coolant is hot, the hose can come off causing burns.

Cooling System Coolant Additive contains alkali. Avoid contact with skin and eyes.

NOTICE

Do not change the coolant until you read and understand the cooling system information in Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations".

Failure to do so could result in damage to the cooling system components.

NOTICE

Mixing ELC with other products will reduce the effectiveness of the coolant.

This could result in damage to cooling system components.

If Caterpillar products are not available and commercial products must be used, make sure they have passed the Caterpillar EC-1 specification for premixed or concentrate coolants and Caterpillar Extender.

Note: This machine was filled at the factory with Caterpillar Extended Life Coolant.

If the coolant in the machine is changed to Extended Life Coolant from another type of coolant, see Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations".

1. Unlatch and raise the engine service door.

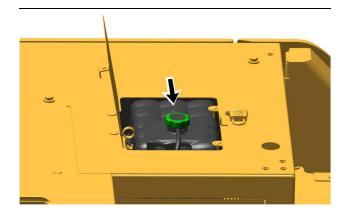


Illustration 486 g06279740

- Slowly loosen the pressure cap that is on the coolant reservoir to release pressure from the cooling system.
- 3. Remove the pressure cap.
- Inspect the o-ring of the cooling system pressure cap. If the o-ring is damaged, replace the pressure cap.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

Open the rear access door on the left side of the machine.

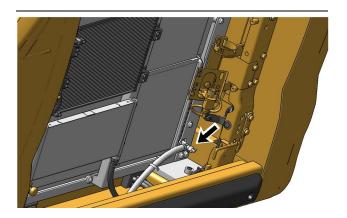


Illustration 487 g06279744

- **6.** Open the drain valve and allow the coolant to drain into a suitable container. The drain valve is on the bottom of the radiator.
- **7.** Flush the cooling system. Follow Step 7a through Step 7h to flush the cooling system.
 - a. Close the drain valve.
 - b. Fill the cooling system with clean water.

c. Install the pressure cap.

NOTICE

Do not run the engine with plain water in the cooling system for more than 5 min. The water may vaporize and trapped air may damage the NRS cooler.

- d. Start the engine and run the engine until the engine reaches operating temperature.
- e. Stop the engine and allow the engine to cool.
- f. Loosen the pressure cap slowly to relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
- g. Open the drain valve that is on the bottom of the radiator and allow the coolant to drain into a suitable container.
- h. Flush the radiator with clean water until the draining water is transparent.
- 8. Close the drain valve.
- **9.** Add the Extended Life Coolant. Refer to the following topics:
 - Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations"
 - Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)"
- **10.** After the cooling system has been filled, perform the following procedures during initial start-up:
 - a. Start the engine without the filler cap.
 - b. Run the engine at low idle for 10 minutes.
 - c. Then, increase the engine speed to a high idle until the water temperature regulator is open and the coolant level is stabilized.
 - d. Maintain the coolant at the proper level as the water temperature regulator opens, and the air is purged from the cooling system and NRS cooler. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Cooling System Coolant Level -Check".
- **11.** Install the cooling system pressure cap.
- 12. Stop the engine.

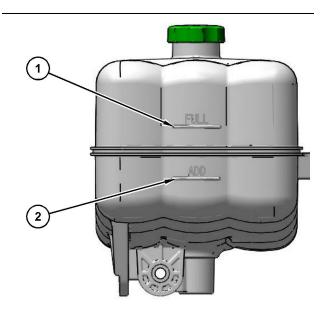


Illustration 488

g06266322

- (1) "FULL"
- (2) "LOW"
- Check the coolant reservoir. Maintain the coolant level between "FULL" mark (1) and "LOW" mark (2).
- **14.** If more coolant is necessary, remove the pressure cap and add the appropriate coolant solution.
- 15. Install the pressure cap.
- 16. Close the engine hood and latch the engine hood. Close the left access door.
- **17.** Close and latch engine service door.

i07313797

Cooling System Coolant Extender (ELC) - Add

SMCS Code: 1352; 1353; 1395

WARNING

Engine hood and engine hood parts can be hot while engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Hot parts or hot components can cause burns or personal injury. Do not allow these parts to contact your skin, when engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Use protective clothing or protective equipment to protect your skin.

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury can result from hot coolant, steam and alkali.

At operating temperature, engine coolant is hot and under pressure. The radiator and all lines to heaters or the engine contain hot coolant or steam. Any contact can cause severe burns.

Remove cooling system pressure cap slowly to relieve pressure only when engine is stopped and cooling system pressure cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

Do not attempt to tighten hose connections when the coolant is hot, the hose can come off causing burns.

Cooling System Coolant Additive contains alkali. Avoid contact with skin and eyes.

Use Caterpillar Extended Life Coolant (ELC) when you add coolant to the cooling system. See Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for all cooling system requirements.

Use a Coolant Conditioner Test Kit to check the concentration of the coolant.

NOTICE

Mixing ELC with other products will reduce the effectiveness of the coolant.

This could result in damage to cooling system components.

If Caterpillar products are not available and commercial products must be used, make sure they have passed the Caterpillar EC-1 specification for premixed or concentrate coolants and Caterpillar Extender.

Note: This machine was filled at the factory with Caterpillar Extended Life Coolant.

- 1. Park the machine on level ground.
- **2.** Stop the engine.
- 3. Unlatch and raise the engine service door.



Illustration 489 g06279740

4. Make sure that the cooling system has cooled down. Loosen the cooling system pressure cap slowly to relieve system pressure. Remove the pressure cap.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

5. It may be necessary to drain some coolant from the radiator so that Caterpillar Extender can be added to the cooling system.

Note: Always discard drained fluids according to local regulations.

- 6. Add Caterpillar Extended Life Coolant (ELC) to the cooling system. Refer to the following topics for the proper amount of Caterpillar Extender:
 - Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations"
 - Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)"
- Inspect the o-ring of the cooling system pressure cap. If the o-ring is damaged, replace the pressure cap.
- 8. Install the cooling system pressure cap.
- 9. Close and latch engine service door.

i07313844

Cooling System Coolant Level - Check

SMCS Code: 1350-535-FLV; 1350-040; 1395-535-FLV

WARNING

Engine hood and engine hood parts can be hot while engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Hot parts or hot components can cause burns or personal injury. Do not allow these parts to contact your skin, when engine is running or immediately after engine shutdown. Use protective clothing or protective equipment to protect your skin.

WARNING

Personal injury can result from hot coolant, steam and alkali.

At operating temperature, engine coolant is hot and under pressure. The radiator and all lines to heaters or the engine contain hot coolant or steam. Any contact can cause severe burns.

Remove cooling system pressure cap slowly to relieve pressure only when engine is stopped and cooling system pressure cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

Do not attempt to tighten hose connections when the coolant is hot, the hose can come off causing burns.

Cooling System Coolant Additive contains alkali. Avoid contact with skin and eyes.

Note: Your machine may be equipped with an automated function for checking fluid levels. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Monitoring System" regarding the automated system.

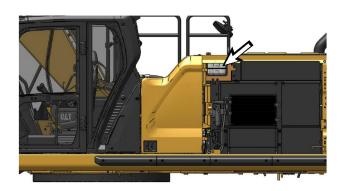


Illustration 490 g06266315

1. Open the radiator door on left side of machine.

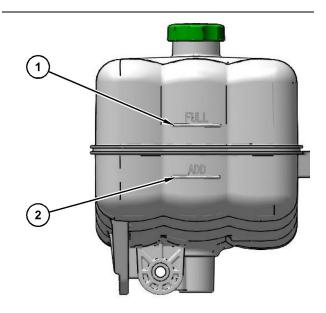


Illustration 491 g06266322

- (1) "FULL" level
- (2) "ADD" level
- 2. Check the coolant level of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cold. Maintain the coolant level between the "FULL" mark and the "ADD" mark. If the coolant reservoir is at or below the "ADD" mark, follow Steps 2a through 2g.

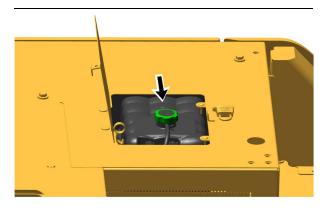


Illustration 492 g06279740

 a. Slowly loosen the cooling system pressure cap to relieve system pressure. Remove the pressure cap.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

- b. Add the appropriate coolant solution to the cooling system. Refer to the following topics:
 - Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations"
 - Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)"
- c. Start the engine. Operate the engine without the cooling system pressure cap until the water temperature regulator opens and the coolant level stabilizes.
- d. Inspect the condition of the o-ring on the pressure cap. If the o-ring is damaged, replace the pressure cap.
- e. Install the cooling system pressure cap.
- f. Stop the engine.
- g. Close the engine hood and latch the engine hood.

286

i08603679

Cooling System Coolant Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 1395-554; 1395-008

WARNING

Use caution when servicing a warm machine. Fluids (hydraulic oil, engine oil, transmission fluid, coolant, etc.) can be extremely hot. Severe burns will result from contact with hot fluids.

WARNING

Pressurized System: Hot coolant can cause serious burns. To open the cooling system filler cap, stop the engine and wait until the cooling system components are cool. Loosen the cooling system pressure cap slowly in order to relieve the pressure.

The cooling system coolant should be sampled and monitored with regular frequency. The samples should be analyzed per the following guidelines:

- Level 1 analysis: Every 250 hours
- Level 2 analysis: Every 2000 hours

Note: Obtain a Coolant Sample (Level 1) every 250 hours if the cooling system is filled with anything other than Cat ® ELC (Cat ® Extended Life Coolant) or Commercial EC-1 coolants. This includes the following type of coolants.

- Cat ® Diesel Engine Antifreeze/Coolant (DEAC)
- Commercial heavy-duty coolant/antifreeze

Note: A level 1 analysis may indicate the need for a Level 2 analysis.

Note: A Level 2 analysis is required after 500 hours of operation for the following reasons: (Cat ® DEAC)

- The cooling system is new
- The cooling system has been refilled
- The cooling system has been converted to a new coolant

NOTICE

Always use a designated pump for oil sampling, and use a separate designated pump for coolant sampling. Using the same pump for both types of samples may contaminate the samples that are being drawn. This contaminate may cause a false analysis and an incorrect interpretation that could lead to concerns by both dealers and customers.

NOTICE

Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, "Dealer Service Tool Catalog" for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat * products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to "Prepare the Machine for Maintenance".



Illustration 493

g06384019

Open the left rear access door. Refer to "Access Door and Cover Locations".

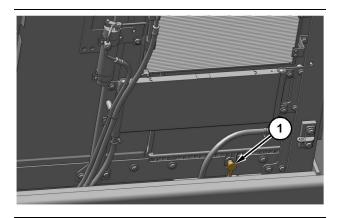


Illustration 494

g06719907

(1) Coolant sample port

Coolant sample port (1) is located on the radiator compartment behind the left rear access door.

Obtain the sample of the coolant as close as possible to the recommended sampling interval. To receive the full effect of Scheduled Oil Sampling analysis (S·O·S analysis), establish a consistent trend of data. To establish a pertinent history of data, perform consistent samplings that are evenly spaced. Supplies for collecting samples can be obtained from your Cat ® dealer.

Use the following guidelines for proper sampling of the coolant:

- Complete the information on the label for the sampling bottle before you begin to take the samples.
- Keep the unused sampling bottles stored in plastic bags.
- Obtain coolant samples directly from the coolant sample port. You should not obtain the samples from any other location.
- Obtain the coolant sample while the coolant is at operating temperature.
- Keep the lids on empty sampling bottles until you are ready to collect the sample.
- Place the sample in the mailing tube immediately after obtaining the sample to avoid contamination.
- Never collect samples from expansion bottles.
- Never collect samples from the drain for a system.

Submit the sample for Level 1 analysis.

For additional information about coolant analysis, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" or consult your Cat dealer.

Engine Air Filter Primary and/ or Secondary Element -Replace

SMCS Code: 1054-510-SE; 1054-510-PY

Primary Air Filter Element -Replace

NOTICE

Service the air cleaner only with the engine stopped. Engine damage could result.

NOTICE Service the engine air filter elements only when a message or a warning is displayed on the monitor display. Do not open the filter compartment unless service is indicated. Opening the filter compartment when not necessary to do so increases the chance of dirt contamination in engine air intake system components.

NOTICE

Short air filter life can result if the pre-cleaner system malfunctions. If air filter life is drastically reduced from typical for the operating conditions, consult your Cat dealer.

NOTICE

Do not use the air filter elements longer than 1 year.

The engine air cleaner assembly is located behind the front access door on the left side of the machine.

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to "Prepare the Machine for Maintenance".



Illustration 495 g06181546

Open the front access door on the left side of the machine.

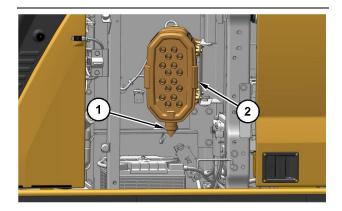


Illustration 496 g06625406

- (1) Outlet tube
- (2) Latch
- Squeeze outlet tube (1) to purge the dirt from the outlet tube.

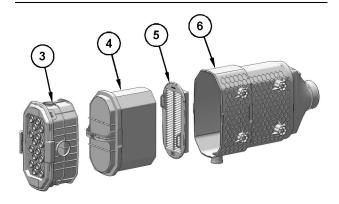


Illustration 497 g06625380

- (3) Pre-cleaner
- (4) Primary air filter element
- (5) Secondary air filter element
- (6) Air filter housing
- **4.** Release latches (2) that secure pre-cleaner (3) to engine air filter housing (6).
- 5. Remove pre-cleaner (3).
- Clean inside the air filter housing where the precleaner was removed.

NOTICE

Caterpillar does not recommend cleaning the primary air filter element. Caterpillar only recommends to replace the primary air filter element. Caterpillar does not cover costs for damage to engine components caused by cleaning the primary air filter element.

Observe the following guidelines if you attempt to clean the primary filter element:

Do not tap or strike the filter element in order to remove dust.

Do not wash the filter element.

Use low pressure compressed air in order to remove the dust from the filter element. Air pressure must not exceed 207 kPa (30 psi). Direct the air flow up the pleats and down the pleats from the inside of the filter element. Take extreme care in order to avoid damage to the pleats.

Do not clean the air filter element more than three times. The air filter element must be replaced if the filter has been in use for one year, regardless of the number of times the filter has been cleaned.

Do not use air filters with damaged pleats, gaskets, or seals. Dirt entering the engine will cause damage to engine components.

NOTICE

Do not clean the air filter elements by bumping or tapping. This could damage the seals. Do not use elements with damaged pleats, gaskets, or seals. Damaged elements will allow dirt to pass through. Engine damage could result.

7. Remove primary air filter element (4). Replace the filter element as necessary.

Note: Replace the primary filter if the filter has been in use for 1 year.

8. Clean inside the air filter assembly housing.

Note: Do not allow any dirt or debris to contact the secondary air filter element (5).

- **9.** Inspect the seal area ensure that no foreign debris has fallen into the seal area. Clean the air cleaner interior to remove remaining dust or debris
- 10. Without removing secondary air filter element (5), inspect the filter element for damage. Replace if necessary or dirty. Refer to Secondary Air Filter Element Replace.
- 11. Install the secondary air filter element.
- 12. Install the primary air filter element.

Note: Filters must be fully installed before the precleaner can be attached. If the pre-cleaner cannot be fully latched, verify that the filter elements are properly seated.

- **13.** Install the pre-cleaner and secure the latches that hold the pre-cleaner to the air filter housing.
- 14. Close the access door.

Secondary Air Filter Element - Replace

NOTICE

Always replace the secondary element. Do not attempt to reuse it by cleaning. Engine damage could result.

NOTICE

Do not use the air filter elements longer than 1 year.

NOTICE

Replace the secondary filter element when you service the primary element for the third time. If a clean primary element has been installed and the filter element indicator is still flashing, replace the secondary filter element. Also if the exhaust smoke remains black and a clean primary filter element has been installed, replace the secondary filter element.

- Open the front access door on the left side of the machine.
- Refer to the section "Primary Air Filter Element -Replace". Remove the pre-cleaner from the engine air filter housing. Remove the primary air filter element from the air filter housing.

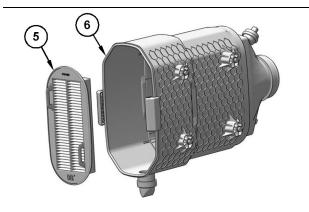


Illustration 498

g06625383

- (5) Secondary air filter element
- (6) Air filter housing
- Secondary air filter element (5) is pressed into the rear portion of engine air filter housing (6). Pull forward on the secondary air filter element to remove the element from the engine air filter housing.
- **4.** Cover the air inlet opening. Clean inside the air cleaner housing.
- **5.** Clean all surfaces of the pre-cleaner cover and body.
- **6.** Uncover the air inlet opening.
- **7.** Carefully press the secondary air filter element into the rear portion of the engine air filter housing.

Note: Be certain that the new secondary air filter element is properly seated in the filter housing. Also, check to see that no damage to the filter element has occurred during installation.

8. Install the primary air filter element and the precleaner.

9. Close the access door.

290

Engine Air Pre-Cleaner - Clean

Note: Do not attempt to clean the pre-cleaner by hitting the filter against another object. Damage to the filter is likely to occur.

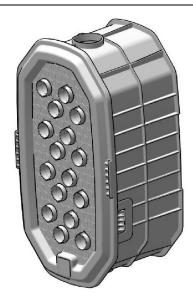


Illustration 499 g06183310

After removing the pre-cleaner from the air filter housing, inspect the interior of the pre-cleaner through the ejection ports around the perimeter.

In general, dust and debris will clear automatically through normal pre-cleaner operation and no further service will be required.

If the ejection ports are blocked, or dust is packed between the pre-cleaner tubes, first try to clear any accumulation by vigorously shaking the pre-cleaner.

If the pre-cleaner is still blocked with dirt, the precleaner may be separated by releasing the snap features holding the front cover to the pre-cleaner body.



Illustration 500 g06069263

 Place the pre-cleaner assembly on a suitable work surface. The interior of the pre-cleaner may have accumulated debris. Protect your work surface to collect excess debris and to avoid scattering debris.



Illustration 501 g06069266

2. Lift the locking tabs on one end of the cover away from the retainers. Move the locking tabs only far enough to clear the retention posts.

Note: Do not bend the locking tabs farther than necessary to release the tabs. Damage to the air cleaner can result. Do not use tools to force the snap features off the retainers.

- 3. Pull one end of the top cover away from the bottom half
- **4.** Hold one end of the cover sections apart and separate one of the locking tabs on the other end of the pre-cleaner.

M0110641-02 291
Maintenance Section

Maintenance Section Engine Oil Level - Check



Illustration 502 g06069264

- **5.** Pull the top cover up and away from the bottom.
- Clear any blockage by shaking the pre-cleaner components and/or brushing away accumulated debris.

Note: Do not use picks or other stiff implements to clear debris, you may damage the pre-cleaner components

Note: Do not attempt to remove the pre-cleaner tubes from the top cover or you will damage the air cleaner.

7. If the blockage is still not cleared, you may attempt to clear the debris by use of an air nozzle limited to 207 kPa (30 psi).

Alternately, each part of the pre-cleaner may be submerged in water to loosen mud or other debris that may have dried on the interior surface of the air cleaner.

Note: Never attempt to use a pressure washer or other high-pressure water sources to clean the precleaner. Use of high-pressure water may damage the pre-cleaner tubes and reduce the pre-cleaner effectiveness.

- **8.** After cleaning, reassemble the pre-cleaner by lining up the tubes on the pre-cleaner top with the tubes in the pre-cleaner bottom.
- **9.** Allow the pre-cleaner top to rest on the pre-cleaner bottom and ensure that the four snap features are aligned.



Illustration 503 g06069247

- 10. If all the tabs are aligned, gently push the precleaner top down into place. Ensure that all the snap features have engaged.
- Before installing the pre-cleaner to the air filter housing, inspect the pre-cleaner gasket for damage. Replace if damaged.

i07245363

Engine Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 1000-535

A WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

NOTICE

Do not overfill the crankcase. Engine damage can result.

Note: In addition to an engine oil dipstick, your machine may be equipped with an automated function for checking fluid levels. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Monitoring System" regarding the automated system.

Note: If the machine is on an incline or the engine has been stopped only for a short time, then the engine oil does not return to the crankcase and the fluid level cannot be properly checked by either method. Park the machine on level ground and check that the oil level after the engine has been stopped for at least 30 minutes.

Check the oil level while the engine is stopped. Do not check the oil level while the engine is running.

1. Open the engine hood.

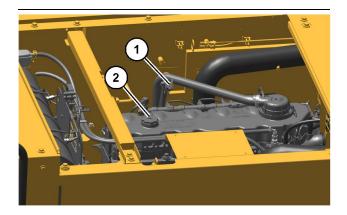


Illustration 504 g06264436

2. Remove dipstick (1). Wipe the oil off the dipstick and reinsert the dipstick.

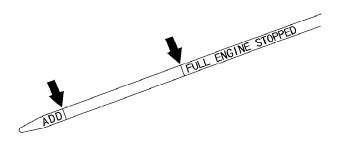


Illustration 505 g00832222

3. Remove the dipstick and check the dipstick. The oil level should be between the "FULL" mark and the "ADD" mark.

NOTICE Do not fill above the "FULL" mark on the dipstick.

If the oil level is above the "FULL" Mark, the crankshaft might dip into the oil during engine operation. This will lead to excessively high oil temperatures. High oil temperatures can reduce the lubricating characteristics of oil.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

4. Remove oil filler plug (2) to add oil, if necessary. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities".

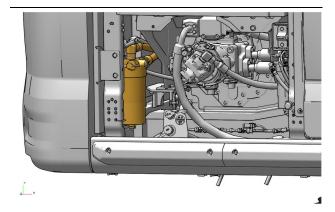
Note: If the oil is deteriorated or badly contaminated, change the oil regardless of the maintenance interval.

- **5.** Clean the oil filler plug. Install the oil filler plug.
- 6. Close the engine hood.

i07105519

Engine Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 1000-008; 1000; 1348-008; 1348-554-SM; 7542-554-OC; 7542-554-SM; 7542-008



q06226123 Illustration 506

Obtain a sample of the engine oil from the engine oil sampling valve that is on the engine oil filter housing. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "S·O·S Oil Analysis" for information that pertains to obtaining a sample of the engine oil. Refer to Special Publication, PEGJ0047, "How To Take A Good Oil Sample" for more information about obtaining a sample of the engine oil.

i08292375

Engine Oil and Filter - Change

SMCS Code: 1318-510

Selection of the Oil Change Interval

NOTICE

The engine oil and filter change interval for standard service application is every 1000 hours when the following requirements are met:

- Utilize Cat Recommended Fluids
- · Utilize Cat Filters
- Utilize S·O·S Services at recommended interval

When these requirements are not met, the oil and filter change interval should be every 500 hours, or use S·O·S Services oil sampling and analysis program to determine an acceptable oil change interval.

If you select an interval for oil and filter change that is too long, you may damage the engine.

NOTICE

When operating in any of the conditions or environments outlined in this Operation and Maintenance Manual, Severe Service Application, use S·O·S Services oil analysis to determine the best oil and filter change interval.

When S·O·S Services are not used in severe service applications, the oil and filter change interval should be every 250 hours..

If you select an interval for oil and filter change that is too long, you may damage the engine.

Reference: Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities"

Reference: Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Maintenance Interval Schedule"

Reference: Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Severe Service Application"

Reference: Operation and Maintenance Manual, "S·O·S Information"

Use the table below to determine the appropriate oil and filter change interval.

Table 37

Selection of Oil and Filter Change Interval				
	Conditions			
	Cat Recommended Fluids	Cat Filters	S·O·S Services	Interval
Standard Service Application	YES	YES	YES	1000 hours
	YES	YES	NO	500 hours
	YES	NO	YES	500 hours
	NO	YES	YES	500 hours
	NO	NO	NO	250 hours
Severe Service Application	NO	NO	NO	250 hours
	YES	YES	NO	250 hours
	YES	YES	YES	Use S·O·S(1)
	YES	NO	YES	Use S·O·S ⁽¹⁾
	NO	YES	YES	Use S·O·S ⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ If operating in any of the conditions or environments outlined in the Severe Service Application, use S·O·S Services oil analysis to determine the best oil change interval.

Note: Initial oil and filter change is required at initial 500 service hours.

Procedure for Changing Engine Oil and Filter

MARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

Note: If the sulfur content in the fuel is greater than 1.5 percent by weight, use an oil that has a TBN of 30 and reduce the oil change interval by one-half.

Note: Drain the crankcase while the oil is warm. This allows waste particles that are suspended in the oil to drain. As the oil cools, the waste particles will settle to the bottom of the crankcase. The particles will not be removed by draining the oil and the particles will recirculate in the engine lubrication system with the new oil.

1. Park the machine on a level surface. Stop the engine.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

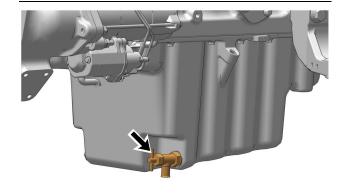


Illustration 507 g06183508

2. Open the crankcase drain valve (1). Allow the oil to drain into a suitable container.

Note: Discard any drained fluids according to local regulations.

3. Close the drain valve.



Illustration 508 g06279640

4. Open the access door at the right side of the machine.

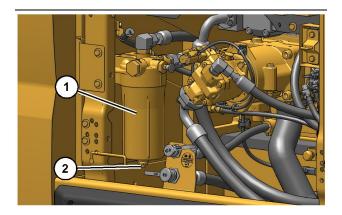


Illustration 509 g06282140

5. Loosen drain valve (2) and allow the oil to drain out of the housing.

Note: If equipped with a fast fill system, the oil can be drained and filled using the fast fill coupler. Refer to "Fast Fill" in this chapter.

6. Remove the oil filter housing (1). Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Oil Filter - Inspect". Dispose of the used filter according to local regulations.



Illustration 510 g06183515

- 7. Remove the filter from the housing.
- 8. Clean the filter housing and the base thread.
- 9. Install the new filter element into the housing.
- **10.** After installing the new element, hand tighten the drain valve at the bottom of the housing.



Illustration 511 g06604084

- **11.** Apply a thin coat of engine oil to the gasket of the filter. Refer to Illustration 511 for lubrication points on the gasket.
- **12.** Install the filter housing with element to the filter base utilizing a socket wrench.

Note: Apply a tightening torque of 90 N·m (66 lb ft) and tighten until metal to metal contact is achieved.

- **13.** Retighten the drain valve to a torque of 2.5 N⋅m (22.1 lb in).
- 14. Close the access door.

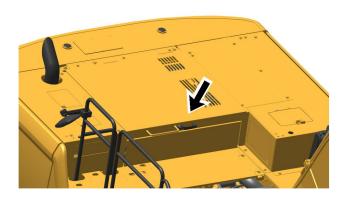


Illustration 512 g06279602

15. Open the access door on top of the machine.

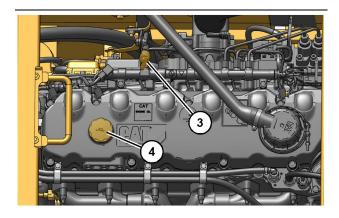


Illustration 513 g06282148

16. Remove oil filler cap (4). Fill the crankcase with new oil. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)". Clean the oil filler plug and install the oil filler plug.

NOTICE

Do not under fill or overfill engine crankcase with oil. Either condition can cause engine damage.

17. Start the engine and allow the oil to warm. Check the engine for leaks. Stop the engine.

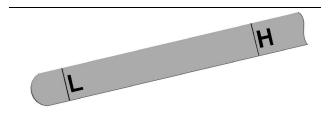


Illustration 514 g06183475

- 18. Wait for 30 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the crankcase. Check the oil level with dipstick (3). Maintain the oil between the "L" and "H" marks on the dipstick. If necessary, add oil.
- 19. Close the access door.

Fast Fill

M0110641-02

If your machine is equipped with a deluxe service center, you may drain and add the engine oil through the fast fill port.



Illustration 515 g06279640

 Open the access door on the right side of the machine.

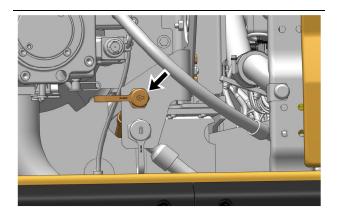


Illustration 516 g06183504

2. Remove the dust cover.

Attach a hose that is equipped with a 126-7539 Nozzle.

Note: Make sure that the nozzle and the receiver are free from debris before attaching.

- 4. Drain the oil or add the oil, as needed.
- 5. Install the dust cover.

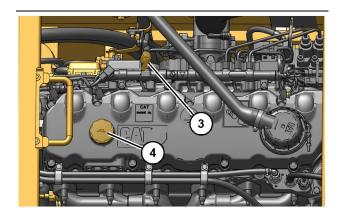


Illustration 517 g06282148

6. Verify that the correct amount of oil was added using the engine dipstick (3).

i01747875

Engine Valve Lash - Check

SMCS Code: 1102-082; 1102-535; 1102; 1105-025; 1105-535; 1121-535; 1209-535; 1209-082; 1209; 7527

Refer to Engine Systems Operation/Testing and Adjusting in order to perform the complete procedure for the valve lash adjustment.

Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace

i07051358

Ether Starting Aid Cylinder -Replace

(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1456-510-CD

WARNING

Breathing ether vapors or repeated contact of ether with skin can cause personal injury. Personal injury may occur from failure to adhere to the following procedures.

Use ether only in well ventilated areas.

Do not smoke while changing ether cylinders.

Use ether with care to avoid fires.

Do not store replacement ether cylinders in living areas or in the operator's compartment.

Do not store ether cylinders in direct sunlight or at temperatures above 49 °C (120 °F).

Discard cylinders in a safe place. Do not puncture or burn cylinders.

Keep ether cylinders out of the reach of unauthorized personnel.

The ether cylinder is located inside the rear access door on the left side of the machine.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance, "Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention" before you replace the ether cylinder.

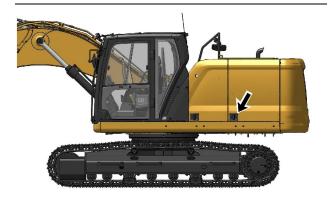
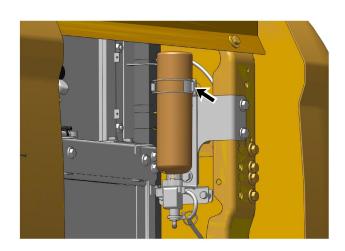


Illustration 518 a06179792

1. Open the rear access door at the left side of the machine.



q06211094 Illustration 519

- Loosen the cylinder retaining clamp.
- 3. Unscrew the empty ether starting aid cylinder and remove the empty ether starting aid cylinder.

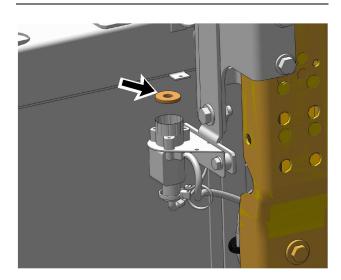


Illustration 520 g06211096

- 4. Remove the used gasket.
- 5. Install a new gasket.

Note: A new gasket and O-ring is provided with each new ether starting aid cylinder.

- **6.** Install the new ether starting aid cylinder.
- **7.** Tighten the ether starting aid cylinder hand tight.

- 8. Tighten the cylinder retaining clamp securely.
- Close the access door.

i07786001

Film (Product Identification) - Clean

SMCS Code: 7405-070; 7557-070



Illustration 521

g06435629

Cleaning of the Films

Make sure that all the product identification films are legible. Make sure that the recommended procedures are used to clean the product identification films. Ensure that all the product identification films are not damaged or missing. Clean the product identification films or replace the films.

Hand Washing

Use a wet solution with no abrasive material that contains no solvents and no alcohol. Use a wet solution with a "pH" value between 3 and 11. Use a soft brush, a rag, or a sponge to clean the product identification films. Avoid wearing down the surface of the product identification films with unnecessary scrubbing. Ensure that the surface of the product identification films is flushed with clean water and allow the product identification films to air dry.

Power Washing

Power washing or washing with pressure may be used to clean product identification films. However, aggressive washing can damage the product identification films.

Excessive pressure during power washing can damage the product identification films by forcing water underneath the product identification films. Water lessens the adhesion of the product identification film to the product, allowing the product identification film to lift or curl. These problems are magnified by wind. These problems are critical for the perforated film on windows.

To avoid lifting of the edge or other damage to the product identification films, follow these important steps:

- Use a spray nozzle with a wide spray pattern.
- A maximum pressure of 83 bar (1200 psi)
- A maximum water temperature of 50° C (120° F)
- Hold the nozzle perpendicular to the product identification film at a minimum distance of 305 mm (12 inch).
- Do not direct a stream of water at a sharp angle to the edge of the product identification film.

i06969803

Final Drive Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 4050-044-FLV

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

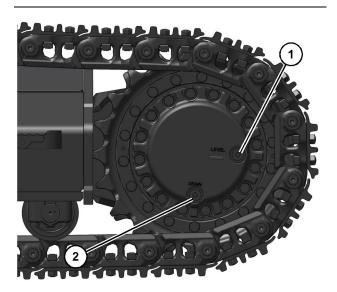


Illustration 522 g06182944

- (1) Oil level plug
- (2) Oil drain plug

 Position one final drive so that oil drain plug (2) is at the bottom.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

- 2. Remove drain plug (2) and level plug (1). Allow the oil to drain into a suitable container.
- Clean the plugs and inspect the O-ring seals. If wear or damage is evident, replace the drain plug, the level plug, and/or the O-ring seals.
- 4. Install drain plug (2).
- **5.** Fill the final drive to the bottom of the opening on level plug (1). See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities" and Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)".

Note: If the oil fills slowly, the fill hole may be blocked by the planetary gear. Rotate the final drive to move the planetary gear away from the fill hole.

Note: Overfilling the final drive will cause the seals on the travel motor to allow hydraulic oil or water to enter the final drive. The final drive may become contaminated.

- 6. Install level plug (1).
- 7. Perform Step 1 to Step 6 on the other final drive. Use a different container for the oil so that the oil samples from the final drives will be separate.
- Completely remove the oil that has spilled onto surfaces.
- **9.** Start the machine and allow the final drives to run through several cycles.
- 10. Stop the machine. Check the oil level.
- Check the drained oil for metal chips or for particles. If there are any chips or particles, consult your Cat dealer.
- **12.** Properly dispose of the drained material. Obey local regulations for the disposal of the material.

i06969810

Final Drive Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 4050-535-FLV

A WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

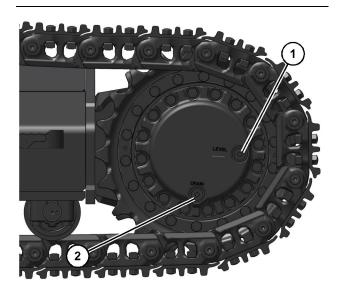


Illustration 523

g06182944

- (1) Oil level plug
- (2) Oil drain plug
- **1.** Position one final drive so that oil drain plug (2) is at the bottom.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

- 2. Remove oil level plug (1).
- **3.** Check the oil level. The oil should be near the bottom of the level plug opening.
- **4.** Add oil through the level plug opening, if necessary. See Operation and Maintenance, "Lubricant Viscosities".

Note: If the oil fills slowly, the fill hole may be blocked by the planetary gear. Rotate the final drive to move the planetary gear away from the fill hole.

Note: Overfilling the final drive will cause the seals on the travel motor to allow hydraulic oil or water to enter the final drive. The final drive may become contaminated.

- Clean oil level plug (1). Inspect the O-ring seal. Replace the O-ring seal if the O-ring seal is worn or damaged.
- 6. Install oil level plug (1).
- **7.** Repeat the procedure for the other final drive.

i06969816

Final Drive Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 4011-008; 4050-008; 4050-SM; 7542-008

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

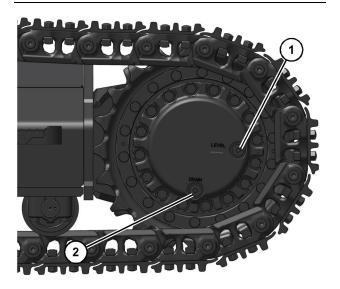


Illustration 524

g06182944

- (1) Oil level plug
- (2) Oil drain plug
- 1. Position the final drive so that oil drain plug (2) is at the bottom.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

- 2. Remove oil level plug (1).
- **3.** Obtain a sample of the final drive oil through the hole for the oil level plug.
- 4. Install oil level plug (1).

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" "S·O·S Oil Analysis" for more information on obtaining a sample of the final drive oil. For additional information about taking an oil sample, refer to Special Publication, PEGJ0047. "How To Take A Good Oil Sample".

i07318401

Fuel System - Prime

SMCS Code: 1250-548

WARNING

Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surfaces or electrical components can cause a fire. To help prevent possible injury, turn the start switch off when changing fuel filters or water separator elements. Clean up fuel spills immediately.

NOTICE

Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, "Dealer Service Tool Catalog" for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

NOTICE

Do not loosen the fuel lines at the fuel manifold. The fittings may be damaged and/or a loss of priming pressure may occur when the fuel lines are loosened.

NOTICE

Do not allow dirt to enter the fuel system. Thoroughly clean the area around a fuel system component that will be disconnected. Fit a suitable cover over any disconnected fuel system components.

Prime the fuel system to fill the fuel filter, and prime the fuel system to purge trapped air. The fuel system should be primed under the following conditions:

- The fuel tank is running low.
- · The machine has been stored.
- · The fuel filter is being replaced.
- The fuel system has been repaired.
- Turn the engine start switch to the ON position. Leave the engine start switch in the ON position for 4 minutes.
- 2. Verify that the water separator is full of fuel.

- 3. If the water separator is not full of fuel, turn the engine start switch OFF and then turn the engine start switch ON. Turning the engine start switch off and on will cycle the fuel priming pump again.
- 4. When the water separator is full of fuel, attempt to start the engine. If the engine starts and the engine runs rough or the engine misfires, operate at low idle until the engine is running smoothly. If the engine cannot be started, or if the engine continues to misfire or smoke, repeat Step 1.

i07318410

Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) Element - Replace

SMCS Code: 1263-510-FQ

A WARNING

Personal injury or death may result from failure to adhere to the following procedures.

Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surfaces or electrical components can cause a fire.

Clean up all leaked or spilled fuel. Do not smoke while working on the fuel system.

Turn the disconnect switch OFF or disconnect the battery when changing fuel filters.

NOTICE

Do not fill the fuel filters with fuel before installing the fuel filters. The fuel will not be filtered and could be contaminated. Contaminated fuel will cause accelerated wear to fuel system parts.

The primary filter/water separator is located behind the access door on the right side of the machine.



Illustration 525

g06279640

 Open the access door on the right side of the machine.

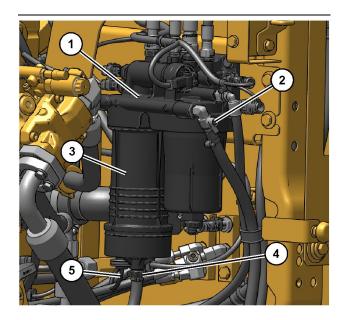


Illustration 526

g06281993

- (1) Filter base
- (2) Fuel shutoff valve
- (3) Filter housing
- (4) Drain valve
- (5) Sensor
- 2. Turn fuel shutoff valve (2) to the closed position.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control" for information on the fuel shutoff valve.

Turn drain valve (4) counterclockwise to open. The drain valve is on the bottom of the water separator.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

Note: Dispose of used fluids according to local regulations.

- 4. Close the drain valve (4).
- **5.** Disconnect the water sensor (5) from the harness.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the sediment bowl from the housing. The sediment bowl is permanently attached to the housing. Attempting to remove the sediment bowl may damage the bowl.

Note: Do not use a chain type strap wrench to remove the fuel filter. Only use a filter wrench on the reinforced area (area with both horizontal and vertical reinforcing ribs) of the filter housing.

- 6. Unscrew filter housing (3). Rotate and remove a primary filter from drain valve (4). A filter wrench may be used on the filter housing to loosen the filter housing. Do not apply wrench to clear sediment bowl. Properly discard the used filter.
- 7. Clean the mounting base (1).
- **8.** Lubricate the seal of the new filter with clean diesel fuel.
- 9. Install the new filter into the housing.
- **10.** Tighten the filter housing (3) on the filter base (1) and tighten until the housing flange touches the filter base. Tighten the drain valve (4). Do not use tools to tighten the filter housing to the filter base.
- **11.** Ensure that sensor (5) is in the correct position and connect to the wiring harness. If the sensor was removed from the bowl, install the sensor and tighten to 2.0 ± 0.2 N·m (18 ± 2 lb in).
- **12.** Open the fuel shutoff valve (2).
- 13. Close the access door.
- **14.** Prime the fuel system. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel System Prime".

i07318618

Fuel System Secondary Filter - Replace

SMCS Code: 1261-510

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from a fire.

Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surfaces or electrical components can cause a fire.

Clean up all leaked or spilled fuel. Do not smoke while working on the fuel system.

Turn the disconnect switch OFF or disconnect the battery when changing fuel filters.

NOTICE

Do not fill fuel filters with fuel before installing them. Contaminated fuel will cause accelerated wear to fuel system parts.

NOTICE

Do not allow dirt to enter the fuel system. Thoroughly clean the area around a fuel system component that will be disconnected. Fit a suitable cover over any disconnected fuel system components.



Illustration 527 g06279640

1. Open the access door on the right side of the machine.

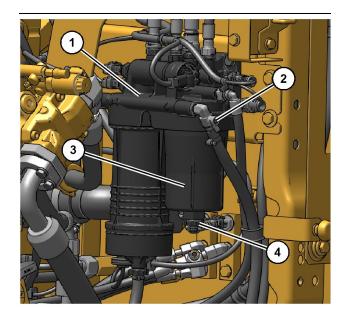


Illustration 528 q06282038

- (1) Filter base
- (2) Fuel shutoff valve
- (3) Secondary filter housing
- (4) Drain valve
- 2. Turn fuel shutoff valve (2) to the closed position.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control" for information on the fuel shutoff valve.

Turn drain valve (4) counterclockwise to open and drain.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

Note: Dispose of used fluids according to local regulations.

- **4.** Loosen filter housing (3) to drain the rest of fuel inside the filter housing. A wrench may be used to loosen the filter housing.
- 5. Close the drain valve (2).
- **6.** Unscrew filter housing (3) and rotate and remove a secondary filter from the drain valve (4). A wrench may be used to loosen the filter housing. Properly discard the used filter.
- 7. Clean the mounting base (1).
- **8.** Lubricate the seal of the new filter with clean diesel fuel.
- **9.** Install the new filter into the housing.

- **10.** Install the filter housing (3) on the filter base (1) and tighten to 50 N⋅m (37 lb ft). Tighten the drain valve(4).
- 11. Open the fuel shutoff valve (2).
- Prime the fuel system. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel System - Prime" for instructions.
- 13. Close the access door.

i07318648

Fuel System Water Separator - Drain

SMCS Code: 1263

- Open the access door on the right side of the machine.
- 2. Provide a suitable container for used fluid.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

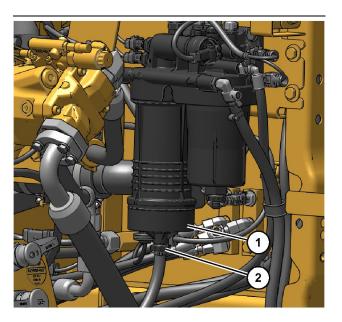


Illustration 529

g06282052

- (1) Bowl
- (2) Drain valve
- 3. Check bowl (1) in the bottom of the water separator. Open drain valve (2). Drain the water and sediment in the bowl.

Note: Dispose of used fluids according to local regulations.

4. Close drain valve (2).

5. Close the access door.

i08187518

Fuel Tank Cap Filter - Replace

SMCS Code: 1273-510-FI; 1273-510-Z2

1. Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Prepare the Machine for Maintenance".

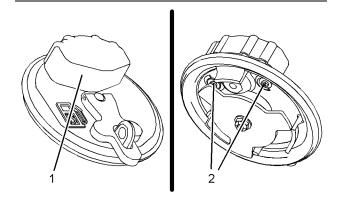


Illustration 530 g02612539

- 2. Remove the fuel cap.
- **3.** Remove filter element screws (2) from the underside of the fuel cap and remove old filter element (1).
- Wash the fuel tank cap in a clean, nonflammable solvent.
- 5. Install a new fuel cap filter element.
- **6.** Install filter element screws (2) to secure filter element (1) to the fuel cap.
- 7. Install the fuel tank cap

i07321530

Fuel Tank Strainer - Clean

SMCS Code: 1273-070-STR

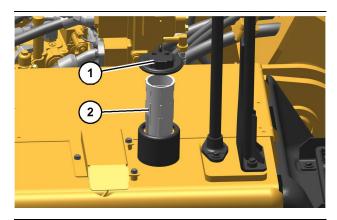


Illustration 531

g06283169

- 1. Remove fuel tank cap (1).
- 2. Remove strainer (2) from the filler opening.
- Wash the strainer in a clean, nonflammable solvent.
- **4.** Install the strainer into the filler opening.
- 5. Install the fuel tank cap.

i07348843

Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain

SMCS Code: 1273-543

Refer to this Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control" for the exact location of the fuel tank drain valve

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

306 M0110641-02



Illustration 532

g06289703

Typical example

 Open the drain valve by turning the valve counterclockwise. Allow the water and the sediment to drain into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of drained fluids according to local regulations.

Close the drain valve by turning the valve clockwise.

i08292803

Fuses - Replace

SMCS Code: 1417-510

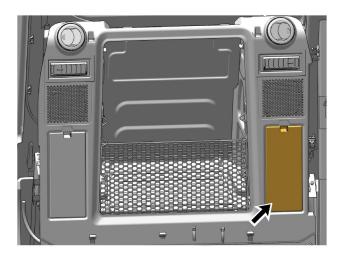
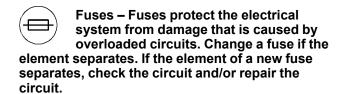


Illustration 533 g06181624

The fuse panel is on the left side of the interior storage box. Remove the cover to access the fuses.



NOTICE

Always replace fuses with the same type and capacity fuse that was removed. Otherwise, electrical damage could result.

NOTICE

If it is necessary to replace fuses frequently, an electrical problem may exist.

Contact your Cat dealer.

To replace a fuse, use the puller that is stored in the fuse panel.

The following list identifies the circuits that are protected by each fuse. The amperage for each fuse is included with each circuit.

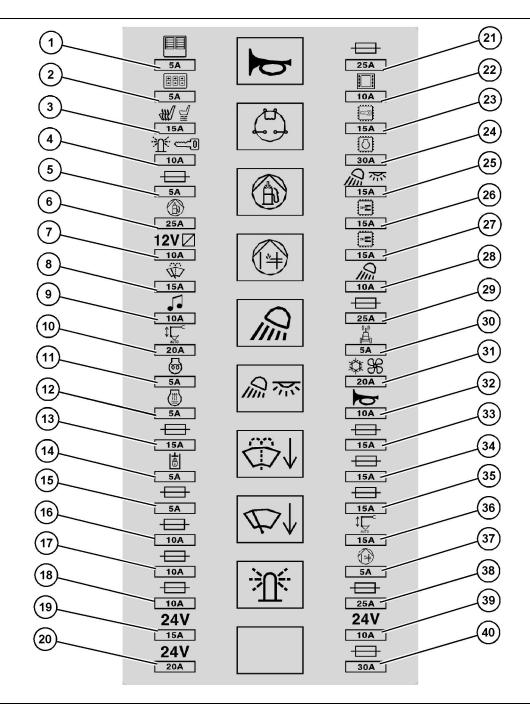


Illustration 534 g06616678

- (1) Heater and Air Conditioner Control and Monitor 5 Amp
- (2) Electronic Switch Control Panel 5 Amp
- (3) Grip, Seat Heater, and Air Suspension Seat 15 Amp
- (4) Beacon 10 Amp
- (5) Spare 5 Amp
- (6) Electric Refueling Pump 25 Amp

- (7) 12V Converter 10 Amp
- (8) Window Wiper and Window Washer 15 Amp
- (9) Radio 10 Amp
- (10) Cat Inertial Measurement Unit, Grade Control 20 Amp
- (11) Glow Relay 5 Amp
- (12) Ether Solenoid 5 Amp

- (13) Spare 15 Amp
- (14) Hydraulic Lock 5 Amp
- (15) Spare 5 Amp
- (16) Spare 10 Amp
- (17) Spare 10 Amp
- (18) Spare 10 Amp
- (19) Auxiliary Circuit 15 Amp
- (20) Auxiliary Circuit 20 Amp
- (21) Spare 25 Amp
- (22) Display and ET Connector 10 Amp
- (23) Body Control Module 15 Amp
- (24) Engine Electronic Control Module 30 Amp
- (25) Chas/Cab/Dome Light 15 Amp
- (26) Primary Electronic Control Module 15 Amp
- (27) Secondary Electronic Control Module 15 Amp
- (28) Boom Lamp Relay 10 Amp
- (29) Spare 25 Amp
- (30) Product Link Module 5 Amp
- (31) Air Conditioner and Heater Blower 20 Amp
- (32) Horn 10 Amp
- (33) Spare 15 Amp
- (34) Spare 15 Amp
- (35) Spare 15 Amp
- (36) Cat Grade Control 15 Amp
- (37) Fuel Lifting Pump 5 Amp
- (38) Spare 25 Amp
- (39) Auxiliary Circuit 10 Amp
- (40) Spare 30 Amp

Relays

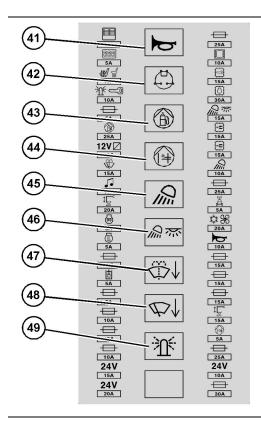


Illustration 535

g06616686

- (41) Horn Relay
- (42) Spare Relay
- (43) Refueling Pump Relay
- (44) Lifting Pump Relay
- (45) Boom Light Relay
- (46) Chassis Light and Cab Light Relay
- (47) Lower Washer Relay
- (48) Lower Wiper Relay
- (49) Beacon Relay

Power Fuse Module



Illustration 536

q06266781

The power fuse module is located behind the rear access door on the left side of the machine. Remove the cover to access the fuses.

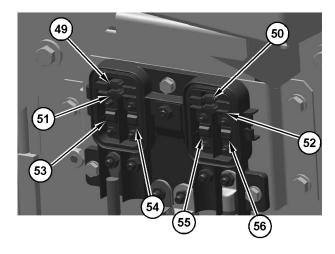


Illustration 537

q06266787



Spare (49-52) - The fuse module also includes spare fuses (5) which can be used if one of the installed fuses opens. One spare fuse is provided for each fuse in use.



Main Circuit 100 Amp (53) - This fuse is designed to protect the wires between the batteries and the fuses. If the wires are shorted to the machine body, this fuse would minimize the damage to the wires.

Spare 70 Amp (54)

Spare 40 Amp (55)

Alternator Circuit 125 Amp (56) - This fuse is designed to protect the alternator. If the batteries are installed with reversed polarity, the fuse would prevent the alternator from damaging the rectifier.

i08473239

Hydraulic System - Purge

(Air - Purge)

SMCS Code: 5050-542

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to "Prepare the Machine for Maintenance".

Purging air from the hydraulic system is required in any of the following instances:

- If hydraulic oil level is too low, under level 0, while the machine is parked.
- After hydraulic components are repaired, disassembled, or assembled.
- If the inlet hose is removed from any of the hydraulic pumps.

Note: Make sure that a qualified mechanic performs the hydraulic system air purge. Special tools and training are required.

Refer to the following procedures in the Service Manual for detailed instructions on purging air from the hydraulic system:

- Testing and Adjusting, M0086311, "336, 336 GC, 340 Excavator", "Main Hydraulic Pump Air -Purge"
- Testing and Adjusting, M0086311, "336, 336 GC, 340 Excavator", "Hydraulic System Air - Purge -Fan Pump"
- Testing and Adjusting, M0086311, "336, 336 GC, 340 Excavator", "Hydraulic System Air - Purge -Auxiliary Pump and PTO Drive"
- Testing and Adjusting, M0086311, "336, 336 GC, 340 Excavator", "Hydraulic System Air - Purge -Medium Pressure Circuit"

i08473416

Hydraulic System Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 5056-044

Cat HYDO Advanced 10 Oil Change Interval

The standard Cat HYDO Advanced 10 oil change interval is every 6000 service hours or 3 years. But a 6000 service hour or 3-year maintenance interval for hydraulic oil (change) is strongly recommended with S·O·S monitoring of the hydraulic oil after 3000 service hours. The interval for S·O·S monitoring is every 500 hours. The Oil change is strongly recommended when the oil deterioration or contamination is detected. The maintenance interval for the hydraulic oil filter is not changed.

Hydraulic Hammer Use

The use of hydraulic hammers shortens the life of hydraulic oil. If a hydraulic hammer is used, the maintenance interval is shortened, refer to Table 38 for the intervals.

Table 38

Percentage of Hammer Use	Hydraulic System Oil - Change
50%	Every 1000 service hours
100%	Every 600 service hours

Procedure to Change the Hydraulic Oil

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

NOTICE

Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, PERJ1017, "Dealer Service Tool Catalog" for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Cat ® products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

1. Park the machine on level ground. Lower the bucket to the ground so that the stick is vertical.

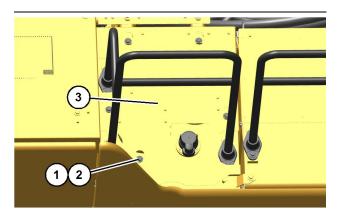


Illustration 538 g06283567

2. Remove five bolts (1) and washers (2). Remove cover (3) from the top of the hydraulic tank.

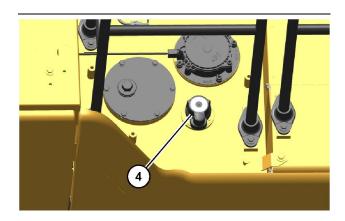


Illustration 539 g06283580

3. Clean the area thoroughly to keep dirt out of the screen cover and filler cap (4).



Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off. Relieve pressure by slowly turning the cap until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

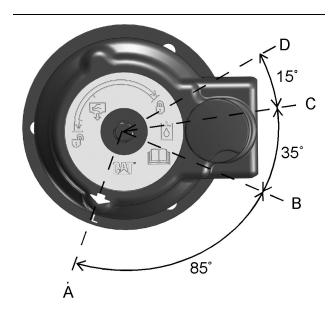


Illustration 540 q06184990

Filler cap

(A) LOCK position

- (B) PRESSURE RELEASE START position (C) PRESSURE RELEASE END position
- (D) OPEN position
- 4. Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 540 for filler cap positions.
 - a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).
 - b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).
 - c. Move the arrow from position (C) to position
 - d. After the tank pressure is relieved, tighten the filler cap.

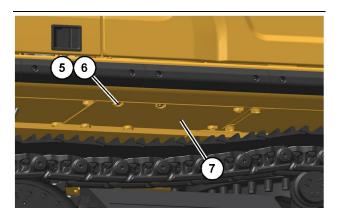


Illustration 541 g06283591

5. Remove six bolts (5) and washers (6). Remove the hydraulic tank access cover (7) that is located under the upper structure. Removing the cover will allow access to the drain valve.

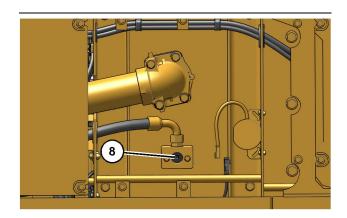


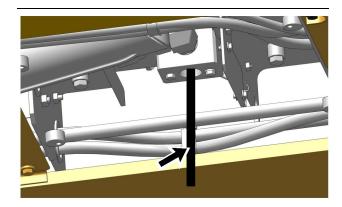
Illustration 542

(8) Plug

g06283598

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

- 6. Remove plug (8).
- 7. Inspect the O-ring. Replace the O-ring if wear or damage is evident.

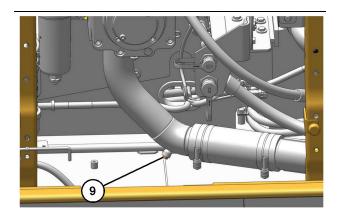


g06182192 Illustration 543

- 8. Use a bar to push the plunger up to allow the oil to
- 9. Drain the oil into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of used fluids according to local regulations.

- 10. After the oil has been drained, clean drain plug (5) and install. Tighten the plug to 68 ± 7 N·m $(50 \pm 5 \text{ lb ft}).$
- 11. Open the access door on the right side of the machine.
- 12. Clean the pump, the hydraulic lines, and the hydraulic tank.



g06283634 Illustration 544

- 13. Remove plug (9) from the tube. Allow the oil to drain into a container.
- 14. Inspect the O-ring. Replace the O-ring if wear or damage is evident.
- 15. Clean the plug. Install the plug and the O-ring into the drain port.

Hydraulic Tank Screen - Clean

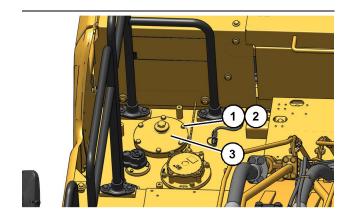


Illustration 545

g06283653

- (1) Bolts
- (2) Washers (3) Cover
- 1. Remove bolts (1), washers (2), and cover (3).

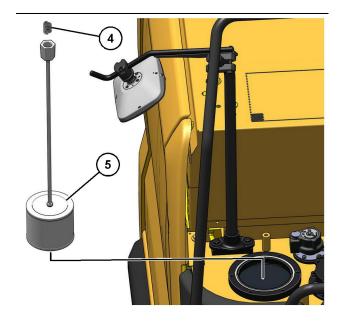


Illustration 546

g06283658

- (4) Spring
- (5) Screen
- 2. Remove spring (4) and screen (5).

Note: Do not allow spring (4) to fall back into the tank.

M0110641-02 313

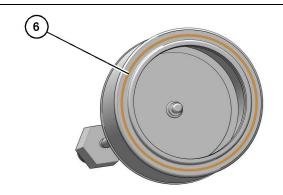


Illustration 547

g06283660

(6) O-ring seal

3. Remove O-ring seal (6) from the screen.

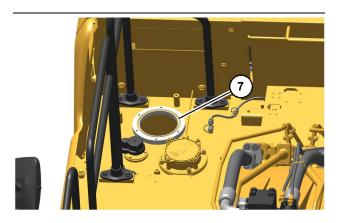


Illustration 548
(7) O-ring seal

q06283663

- **5.** Inspect O-ring seals (6) and (7). Replace the Oring seals if wear or damage is evident.
- **6.** Wash the screen in a clean nonflammable solvent. Allow the screen to dry. Inspect the screen. Replace the screen, if the screen is damaged.
- 7. Install O-ring seal (6) on screen (5).

4. Remove O-ring seal (7) from the tank.

8. Install screen (5) and spring (4). Then install cover (3), washers (2), and bolts (1).

Note: Make sure that the O-ring seals and the spring are properly positioned during installation.

Case Drain Filter - Clean

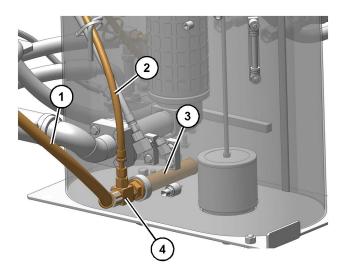


Illustration 549 g06220559

- (1) Hose
- (2) Hose
- (3) Case drain filter
- (4) Tee
- **1.** Remove hose (1) and hose (2) from tee (4). Remove tee (4).
- 2. Remove case drain filter (3) from the hydraulic
- 3. Wash the screen of the case drain filter in a clean nonflammable solvent. Allow the filter to dry. Inspect the filter. Replace the filter if the filter is damaged.
- **4.** Inspect the O-ring seal on the filter. Replace the O-ring seal if wear or damage is evident.
- 5. Install the filter in the hydraulic tank. Tighten the filter to 175 ± 26 N⋅m (129 ± 19 lb ft).
- **6.** Install the tee onto the filter. Tighten the tee to $65 \pm 10 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ (48 ± 7 lb ft).
- 7. Install the two hoses onto the tee.

Hydraulic System Oil - Fill

- Fill the hydraulic system oil tank. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)".
- 2. Inspect the O-ring seal on the filler cap for damage. Replace the O-ring, if necessary. Clean the filler cap. Install the filler cap.

Note: Make no attempt to start the engine until the pump has been filled with hydraulic oil. Serious damage to the hydraulic components can result.

Main Pump and Hydraulic System Air Purge

1. Access the hydraulic pump. The hydraulic pump is located behind the right access door.

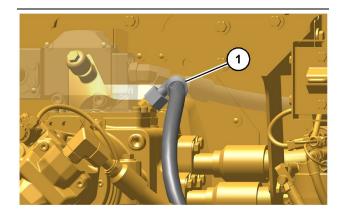


Illustration 550

g06284191

(1) Hose

- 2. While the engine is stopped, remove hose (1) from the top of the pump. Add hydraulic oil through the opening.
- **3.** After the pump has been filled with oil, install drain hose (1).
- **4.** Start the engine. When the engine is at low idle, raise the boom. Hold the boom in this position.
- Stop the engine. Slowly lower the boom until the work tool is on the ground. The hydraulic tank will pressurize.
- **6.** Slowly loosen hose (1) until hydraulic oil flows from the connection. Oil flowing from the connection indicates that the air has been released from the pump.
- 7. Tighten hose (1).
- **8.** Start the engine. Operate the engine at idling speed for 5 minutes.



Illustration 551

g06284230

- **9.** Operate the joysticks to circulate the hydraulic oil. Lower the bucket to the ground so that the stick is vertical to the ground. Stop the engine.
- 10. Check the hydraulic oil level.

Reference: For the correct procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check".

- 11. Close the access door.
- Close the engine hood and latch the engine hood.

Note: Purging air from the hydraulic system is recommended following a hydraulic system oil change. Refer to Hydraulic System - Purge for information on purging air from the hydraulic system.

Fast Fill

If your machine is equipped with a deluxe service center, you may drain the hydraulic oil through the fast fill port. You may also add the hydraulic oil through a fast fill port.



Illustration 552 g06279640

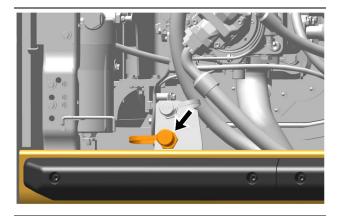


Illustration 553 g06284237

- 1. Remove the dust cover.
- 2. Attach the hose to the male coupling.
- 3. Drain the oil or add the oil, as needed.

Note: Purging air from the hydraulic system is recommended following a hydraulic system oil change. Refer to Hydraulic System - Purge for information on purging air from the hydraulic system.

i08361840

Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace

SMCS Code: 5068-510-RJ

A WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

The return filter is a cartridge type filter. The amount of foreign material that enters the hydraulic system is reduced when the filter element is replaced.

Two different filters are available for the return filter. One filter is used for standard applications such as digging and normal use of a hammer. The second filter is used for an application such as demolishing a ceiling in a tunnel with a hammer.

Note: If the message display shows that the hydraulic return filter is plugged, turn off the machine. After you make sure that the warning has disappeared, start the machine and run the machine on level ground for approximately 10 minutes. If the warning still appears in the message display, inspect the filter and replace the filter, if necessary.

Hydraulic Hammer Use

The use of hydraulic hammers shortens the life of hydraulic oil. If a hydraulic hammer is used, the maintenance interval is shortened, refer to Table39 for the intervals.

Table 39

Percentage of Hammer Use	Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Re- turn) - Replace
50%	Every 500 service hours
100%	Every 250 service hours

Return Filter Replacement Procedure

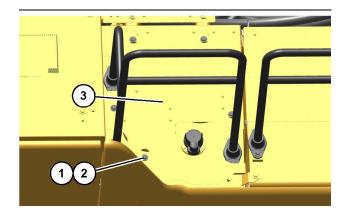


Illustration 554

g06283567

- **1.** Remove seven bolts (1) and washers (2). Remove cover (3) from the top of the hydraulic tank.
- **2.** Clean the area thoroughly to keep dirt out of the return filter and filler cap.

Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace

WARNING

Pressurized system!

316

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off. Relieve pressure by slowly turning the cap until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

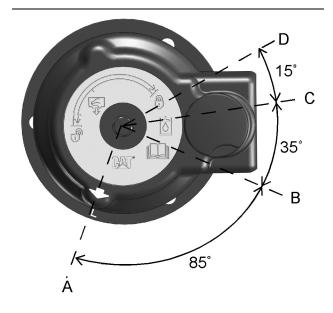


Illustration 555

g06184990

Filler cap

- (A) LOCK position
- (B) PRESSURE RELEASE START position
- (C) PRESSURE RELEASE END position
- (D) OPEN position
- Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 555 for filler cap positions.
 - a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).
 - Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).
 - c. Move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).
 - d. After the tank pressure is relieved, tighten the filler cap on the hydraulic tank to position (A).
- **4.** Check the hydraulic system oil level.

Reference: For the correct procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check".

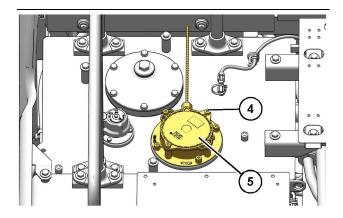


Illustration 556 g06640480

5. Remove four bolts (4), disconnect the harness connector from the filter bypass switch, and remove filter assembly (5) from the tank.

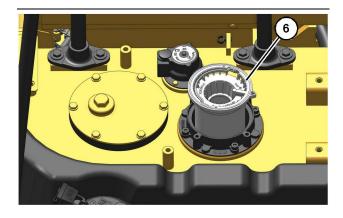


Illustration 557 g06254829

Remove filter element (6) and discard. Install a new element into the filter case.

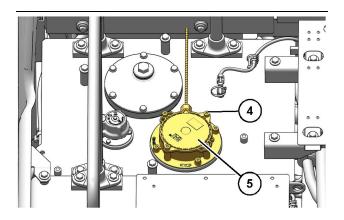


Illustration 558 g06640480

 Place filter assembly (5) into position in the tank. Install four bolts (4) and tighten to 30 ± 7 N·m (22 ± 5 lb ft). Install the harness connector on the filter bypass switch.

i07323743

Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 5050-535

MARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

NOTICE

Never remove the fill/vent plug from the hydraulic tank if the oil is hot.

Air can enter the system and cause pump damage.

Note: In addition to an oil level gauge, your machine may be equipped with an automated function for checking fluid levels. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Monitoring System" regarding the automated system.

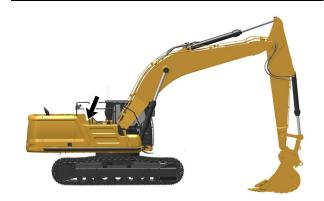


Illustration 559

g06284260

The hydraulic oil tank is on the right side of the machine.

- Park the machine on level ground. Lower the bucket to the ground with the stick in a vertical position, as shown.
- Open the access door on the right side of the machine.

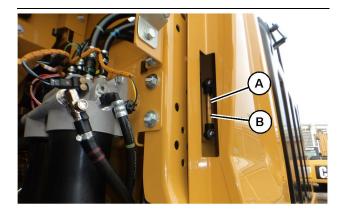


Illustration 560

a06216919

- (A) High temperature range
- (B) Low temperature range
- 3. For a cold machine, maintain the hydraulic oil level in the low temperature range (B). For a machine that is at normal operating temperature, maintain the hydraulic oil level in the high temperature range (A).
- 4. Close the access door.

Note: Perform Step 5 through Step 8 if the oil level is low.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information that pertains to Containing Fluid Spillage.

318

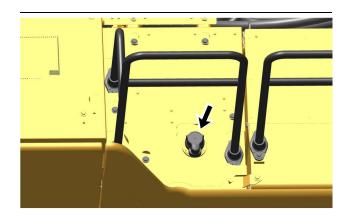


Illustration 561 g06284277

⚠ WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off by slowly turning the cap approximately 1/8 of a turn until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

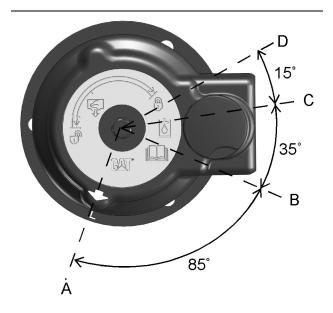


Illustration 562 g06184990

Filler cap

- (A) LOCK position
- (B) PRESSURE RELEASE START position
- (C) PRESSURE RELEASE END position
- (D) OPEN position
- Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 562 for filler cap positions.

- a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise, with no downward force applied, and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).
- b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).
- c. Push the center of the filler cap down. Without tilting the filler cap, move the arrow from position (C) to position (D).
- d. The hydraulic tank pressure is relieved. Remove the filler cap.
- Add oil if necessary. See Operation and Maintenance, "Lubricant Viscosities"
- Check the O-ring seal of the filler cap. Replace the O-ring seal if the O-ring seal is damaged.
- **8.** Clean the filler cap. Tighten the filler cap on the hydraulic tank to position (A).

i07323802

Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 5050-008-OC; 5095-SM; 5095-008; 7542-008; 7542

Note: If Cat HYDO Advanced hydraulic oils are used, the hydraulic oil change interval is extended to 6000 hours. S·O·S services after 3,000 hour is recommended. Consult your Cat dealer for details.

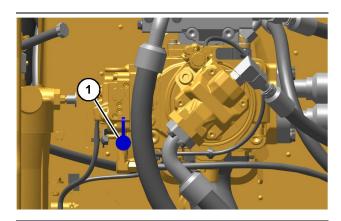


Illustration 563 g06284299

The hydraulic oil sampling valve (1) is on main hydraulic pump housing. Obtain a sample of the hydraulic oil from the hydraulic oil sampling valve. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "S·O·S Oil Analysis" for information that pertains to obtaining a sample of the hydraulic oil. Refer to Special Publication, PEGJ0047, "How To Take A Good Oil Sample" for more information about obtaining a sample of the hydraulic oil.

i03753191

Indicators and Gauges - Test

SMCS Code: 7450-081; 7490-081

- Look for broken lenses on the gauges, broken indicator lights, broken switches, and other broken components in the cab.
- 2. Start the engine.
- 3. Look for inoperative gauges.
- Turn on all machine lights. Check for proper operation.
- **5.** Move the machine forward. Release the travel levers and the travel pedals. The machine should stop.
- 6. Stop the engine.
- Make any repairs that are required before operating the machine.

i08066994

Light Emitting Diode Lamp (LED) - Replace

SMCS Code: 1434-510

- Remove the electrical power from the light emitting diode (LED) lamp.
- **2.** Disassemble the housing for the LED lamp to have access to the bulb.

Note: On some LED lamps, the bulb is a part of the lens assembly. The bulb is not removed separately from the lens assembly. Replace the entire lens assembly on these LED lamps.

- 3. Remove the bulb from the LED lamp.
- 4. Install the replacement bulb in the LED lamp.
 If the bulb is a part of the lens assembly, install the replacement lens assembly in the LED lamp.
- 5. Reassemble the housing for the LED lamp. Ensure that any printing on the lens is oriented correctly for the LED lamp mounting position on the machine.
- **6.** Reattach the electrical power to the LED lamp.
- 7. Check the LED lamp for proper operation.

Note: Consult your Cat dealer for additional information on LED lamps.

i07833447

Oil Filter (Hydraulic Hammer) -Replace

(If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 5068-510

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

The use of hydraulic hammers shortens the life of hydraulic oil. If a hydraulic hammer is used, the maintenance interval is shortened, refer to Table 40 for the intervals.

Table 40

Percentage of Hammer Use	Oil Filter (Hydraulic Hammer) - Replace	
50%	Every 250 service hours	
100%	Every 100 service hours	



Illustration 564

g06181120

- **1.** Park the machine on level ground in the service position as shown.
- **2.** Move the hydraulic lockout control to the UNLOCKED position.
- 3. Turn the engine start switch to the ON position.
- **4.** Move the joysticks and the travel levers/pedals to the full stroke positions to relieve the pressure in the hydraulic lines.
- 5. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position and return the lever for the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

320

WARNING

Pressurized system!

The hydraulic tank contains hot oil under pressure. To prevent burns from the sudden release of hot oil, relieve the tank pressure with the engine off. Relieve pressure by slowly turning the cap until the cap reaches the secondary stop.

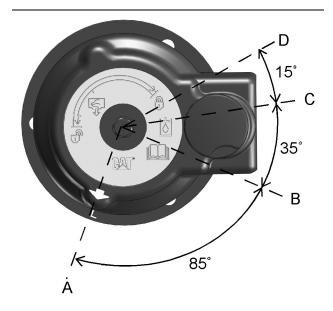


Illustration 565

g06184990

Filler cap

- (A) LOCK position
- (B) PRESSURE RELEASE START position
- (C) PRESSURE RELEASE END position
- (D) OPEN position
- **6.** Release the pressure that may be present in the return hydraulic circuit with the following procedure. Refer to Illustration 565 for filler cap positions.
 - a. Turn the filler cap counterclockwise and move the arrow from position (A) to position (B).
 - b. Release the pressure for a minimum of 45 seconds by moving the arrow from position (B) to position (C).
 - c. Move the arrow from position (C) to position
 - d. After the tank pressure is relieved, remove the filler cap.
- **7.** The oil filter for the hammer is located near the base of the boom.

Note: Some configurations may invert the hammer filter installation.

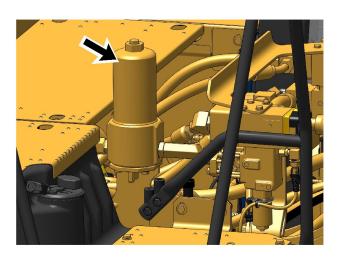


Illustration 566

g06211151

8. Position a suitable container to contain the oil.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

9. Loosen the filter housing and remove. Inspect the plug on the top of the housing. If there are signs of leakage, replace the O-ring on the plug. Tighten the plug to59 ± 5 N·m (44 ± 4 lb ft).

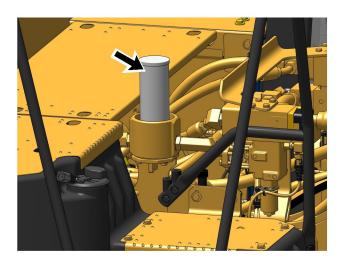


Illustration 567

g06211156

10. Remove the filter element and discard. The element cannot be reused.

321

Note: Used filter elements should always be disposed of according to local regulations.

- 11. Install the new filter element.
- **12.** Clean the filter housing and install on the filter base. Tighten the nut on the filter case to 98 ± 10 N⋅m (72 ± 7 lb ft).
- **13.** Start the engine and operate the machine slowly for 10 to 15 minutes. Move each cylinder evenly through several cycles and operate the hammer.
- **14.** Return the machine to the service position. Check the machine for oil leaks.
- 15. Stop the engine.
- 16. Check the hydraulic oil level.

Reference: For the correct procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check".

i07349186

Oil Filter - Inspect

SMCS Code: 1308-507; 5068-507

Inspect a Used Filter for Debris

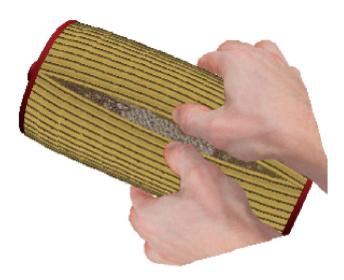


Illustration 568

g06224663

The element is shown with debris.

Use a filter cutter to cut the filter element open. Spread apart the pleats and inspect the element for metal and for other debris. An excessive amount of debris in the filter element can indicate a possible failure.

If metals are found in the filter element, a magnet can be used to differentiate between ferrous metals and nonferrous metals.

Ferrous metals can indicate wear from steel parts and on cast iron parts.

Nonferrous metals can indicate wear from the aluminum parts of the engine such as main bearings, rod bearings, or turbocharger bearings.

Small amounts of debris may be found in the filter element. This debris could be caused by friction and by normal wear. Consult your Cat dealer to arrange for further analysis if an excessive amount of debris is found.

Using an oil filter element that is not recommended by Caterpillar can result in severe engine damage to engine bearings, to the crankshaft, and to other parts. This can result in larger particles in unfiltered oil. The particles could enter the lubricating system and the particles could cause damage.

i07326813

Pump Coupling Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 5062-044

MARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

Note: If the machine is parked on an incline or the engine has been stopped for a short time, the oil in the pump coupling will not return to the housing. Park the machine on level ground and drain the oil after the engine has been stopped for at least 15 minutes.

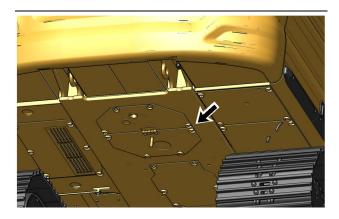


Illustration 569

g06284414

 Remove the cover plates to gain access to the drain plug.

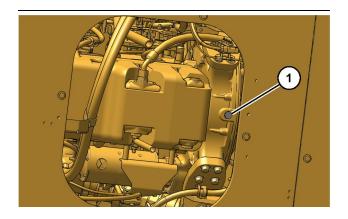


Illustration 570 g06284420

(1) Oil drain plug

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

- **2.** Remove drain plug (1). Allow the oil to drain into a suitable container.
- **3.** Clean the drain plug and inspect the O-ring seal. If wear or damage is evident, replace the drain plug and/or the O-ring seal.
- 4. Install drain plug (1).
- **5.** Open the access door on the right side of the machine.

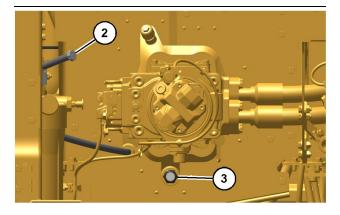


Illustration 571 g06284424

- (2) Oil fill cap
- (3) Sight gauge

NOTICE

Do not overfill the housing for the pump coupling. Overfilling will the cause the engine oil to overheat and engine damage can result.

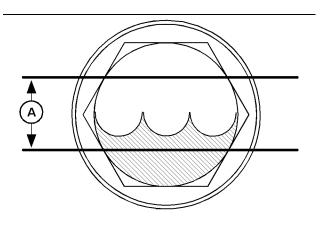


Illustration 572 g03208836

Sight Gauge

- **6.** Remove fill cap (2). Fill the housing with new oil to area (A) of sight gauge (3). See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities" and Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)".
- 7. Clean and install the fill cap.
- 8. Check for leaks.
- **9.** Close the access door on the right side of the machine.
- 10. Install the cover plate.

i07327147

Pump Coupling Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 5062-535

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

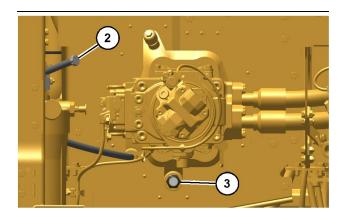


Illustration 573

g06284424

- (2) Oil fill cap
- (3) Sight gauge

Note: Check the oil level for the pump coupling with the machine on a level surface. If the machine is parked on an incline or the engine has been stopped for a short period, the oil in the pump coupling will not return to the housing. The fluid level cannot be checked properly. Park the machine on level ground and check the oil level once the engine has been stopped for at least 15 minutes.

 Open the access door on the right side of the machine.

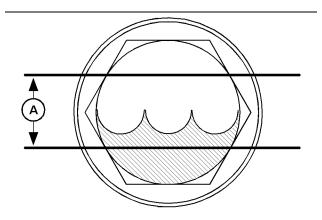


Illustration 574

g03208836

Sight Gauge

Maintain the oil level in area (A) of sight gauge (3). If the oil level is low, then add oil. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities".

NOTICE

Do not overfill the housing for the pump coupling. Overfilling will the cause the engine oil to overheat and engine damage can result.

3. Remove oil fill cap (2) and fill to the recommended oil level.

- 4. Clean and install the oil fill cap (2).
- **5.** Close the right side access door.

i07348844

Radiator, Aftercooler and Oil Cooler Cores - Clean

SMCS Code: 1063-070-KO; 1353-070-KO; 1374-070-KO

⚠ WARNING

Personal injury can result from air pressure.

Personal injury can result without following proper procedure. When using pressure air, wear a protective face shield and protective clothing.

Maximum air pressure at the nozzle must be less than 205 kPa (30 psi) for cleaning purposes.

 Open the access door on the left side of the machine.

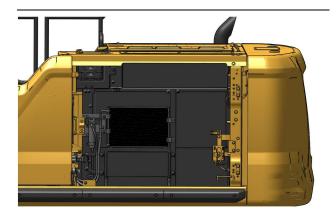


Illustration 575

g06289706

- 2. Check all the core fins for debris.
- Remove dust and debris from all the core fins and from the screens.

Compressed air is preferred, but high-pressure water or steam can be used to remove dust and general debris from a core.

See Special Publication, SEBD0518, "Know Your Cooling System" for more detailed information about cleaning core fins.

4. Close the access doors.

i08192239

i07349192

Receiver Dryer (Refrigerant) - Replace

SMCS Code: 7322-510; 7322-710

MARNING

Personal injury can result from contact with refrigerant.

Contact with refrigerant can cause frost bite. Keep face and hands away to help prevent injury.

Protective goggles must always be worn when refrigerant lines are opened, even if the gauges indicate the system is empty of refrigerant.

Always use precaution when a fitting is removed. Slowly loosen the fitting. If the system is still under pressure, release it slowly in a well ventilated area.

Personal injury or death can result from inhaling refrigerant through a lit cigarette.

Inhaling air conditioner refrigerant gas through a lit cigarette or other smoking method or inhaling fumes released from a flame contacting air conditioner refrigerant gas, can cause bodily harm or death.

Do not smoke when servicing air conditioners or wherever refrigerant gas may be present.

Use a certified recovery and recycling cart to properly remove the refrigerant from the air conditioning system.

NOTICE

If the refrigerant system has been open to the outside air (without being plugged) for more than 30 minutes, the receiver-dryer must be replaced. Moisture will enter an open refrigerant system and cause corrosion which will lead to component failure.

Prepare the machine for maintenance. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Prepare the Machine for Maintenance".

Refer to Service Manual, "Air Conditioning and Heating R-134a for All Caterpillar Machines" for the proper procedure to change the receiver-dryer assembly and for the procedure to reclaim the refrigerant gas.

Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) - Inspect

SMCS Code: 7323-040; 7325-040



Illustration 576

q06184357

Consult your Cat dealer for repair of any cracks in the ROPS.

Inspect the ROPS for loose bolts or for damaged bolts. Replace any damaged bolts or missing bolts with original equipment parts only. Tighten the M24 bolt (1) to $425 \pm 50 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ (315 $\pm 40 \text{ lb ft}$).

Note: Apply oil to all ROPS bolt threads before you install the bolts. Failure to apply oil to the bolt threads can result in improper bolt torque.

Do not straighten the ROPS. Do not repair the ROPS by welding reinforcement plates to the ROPS.

Consult your Cat dealer for inspection of any potential damage or repair of any damage to any operator protective structure. (Including ROPS, FOPS, TOPS, OPS, and OPG) Refer to Special Instruction, SEHS6929, "Inspection, Maintenance, and Repair of Operator Protective Structures (OPS) and Attachment Installation Guidelines for All Earthmoving Machinery"

i06970675

Seat Belt - Inspect

SMCS Code: 7327-040

Always inspect the condition of the seat belt and the condition of the seat belt mounting hardware before you operate the machine. Replace any parts that are damaged or worn before you operate the machine.



Illustration 577

g06224278

Typical example

Inspect buckle (2) for wear or for damage. If the buckle is worn or damaged, replace the seat belt.

Inspect seat belt (1) for webbing that is worn or frayed. Replace the seat belt if the webbing is worn or frayed.

Inspect all seat belt mounting hardware for wear or for damage. Replace any mounting hardware that is worn or damaged. Make sure that the mounting bolts are tight.

If your machine is equipped with a seat belt extension, also perform this inspection procedure for the seat belt extension.

Contact your Cat dealer for the replacement of the seat belt and the mounting hardware.

Note: The seat belt should be replaced within 3 years of the date of installation. A date of installation label is attached to the seat belt retractor and buckle. If the date of installation label is missing, replace belt within 3 years from the year of manufacture as indicated on belt webbing label, buckle housing, or installation tags (non-retractable belts).

Seat Belt - Replace

SMCS Code: 7327-510

The seat belt should be replaced within 3 years of the date of installation. A date of installation label is attached to the seat belt retractor and buckle. If the date of installation label is missing, replace the belt within 3 years from the year of manufacture as indicated on the belt webbing label, buckle housing, or installation tags (non-retractable belts).

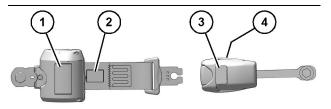


Illustration 578

g06183390

- (1) Date of installation (retractor)
- (2) Year of manufacture (tag) (fully extended web)
- (3) Date of installation (buckle)
- (4) Year of manufacture (underside) (buckle)

Consult your Cat dealer for the replacement of the seat belt and the mounting hardware.

Determine the age of a new seat belt before installing on seat. A manufacture label is on the belt webbing and imprinted on the belt buckle. Do not exceed the install by date on the label.

A complete seat belt system should be installed with new mounting hardware.

Date of installation labels should be marked and affixed to the seat belt retractor and buckle.

Note: Date of installation labels should be permanently marked by punch (retractable belt) or stamp (non-retractable belt).

If your machine is equipped with a seat belt extension, also perform this replacement procedure for the seat belt extension.

i07327814

Swing Bearing - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 7063-086

Note: Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for more information on grease.

Note: Do not overgrease the swing bearings. Do not grease more than the recommended maintenance interval. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Maintenance Interval Schedule" for more information.

Wipe the fittings before you lubricate the swing bearing.

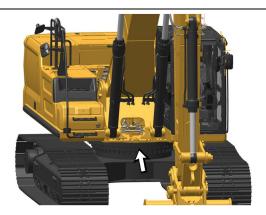


Illustration 579

g06285449

The swing bearing grease zerks are at the front of the swing drive housing near the boom cylinders.

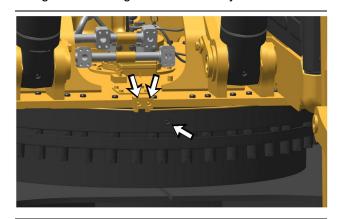


Illustration 580

g06285452

Apply lubricant through the fittings until the lubricant overflows the bearing seals.

i07349047

Swing Drive Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 5459-044

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.



Illustration 581

g06289887

 Remove the access cover that is located below the swing drives.

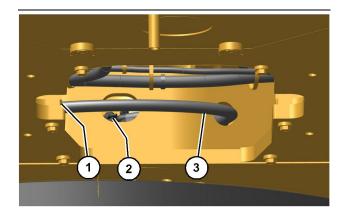


Illustration 582

g06289893

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information that pertains to Containing Fluid Spillage.

- 2. Remove drain hose (3) from holder (1) on the upper frame. Face the end of the hose toward the container.
- Loosen drain valve (2). Drain the oil into a suitable container.

Note: Drained fluids should be disposed of according to local regulations.

4. Tighten the drain valve. Return the drain hose to holder (1). Make sure that the end of the hose is facing upward.



WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.



Illustration 585 g06289912

The dipstick for the swing drive oil is on the swing drive at the rear base of the boom.

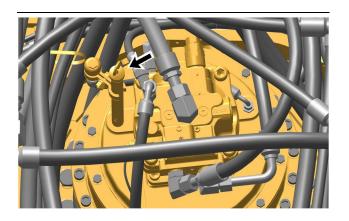


Illustration 586 g06289915

1. Remove the dipstick.

Illustration 583

g06289903

- 5. Remove dipstick (4).
- **6.** Add the specified quantity of oil through the dipstick tube. See Operation and Maintenance, "Capacities (Refill)".



Illustration 584 g06188660

- 7. Maintain the oil level between the "ADD" and "FULL" marks on the dipstick.
- **8.** Check the oil that has been drained for metal chips or metal particles. Consult your Caterpillar dealer if any metal chips or metal particles are found.
- **9.** Drained materials should be disposed of according to local regulations.



Illustration 587 g06188660

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information that pertains to Containing Fluid Spillage.

- 2. Check the dipstick. Maintain the oil level between the "ADD" and "FULL" marks on the dipstick. Add oil through the dipstick tube, if necessary. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities" when you select an oil. If the oil level is above the "FULL" line, then remove oil from the system. Restore the oil to the correct level position.
- 3. Insert the dipstick.

i07349071

Swing Drive Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 5459-008; 5459-008-OC; 5459-OC; 5459-554-OC; 7542-008

A WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

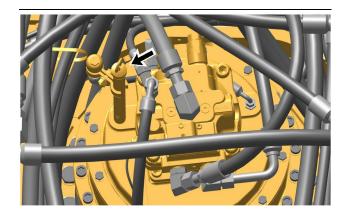


Illustration 588 g06289915

Obtain an oil sample of the swing drive oil through the opening for the dipstick. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "S·O·S Oil Analysis" for information that pertains to obtaining an oil sample from the swing drive housing. Refer to Special Publication, PEGJ0047, "How To Take A Good Oil Sample" for more information about obtaining an oil sample from the swing drive housing.

i06988169

Swing Gear - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 7063-086

Note: Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for more information on grease.

NOTICE

Improper lubrication can cause damage to machine components.

To avoid damage, make sure that the proper amount of grease is applied to the swing drive.

When the amount of grease in the compartment becomes too large, the agitation loss becomes large, thereby accelerating grease deterioration.

Grease deterioration can cause damage to the pinion gear of the swing drive and swing internal gear.

Not enough grease will result in poor gear lubrication.

Remove the inspection cover that is located near the boom base. Inspect the grease.

329

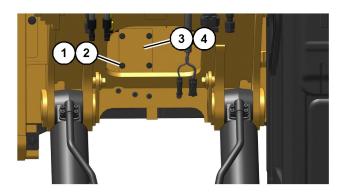


Illustration 589

g06188728

- (1) Bolts
- (2) Washers
- (3) Cover
- (4) Gasket
- **1.** Remove bolts (1) and washers (2). Remove cover (3) and gasket (4).
- Inspect gasket (4). Replace the gasket if damage is evident.

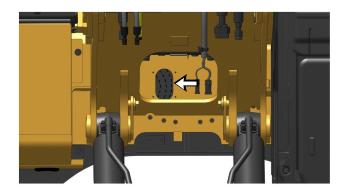


Illustration 590

g06188736

- 3. Check the level of grease. The level of grease is correct when:
 - Waves of grease are present from the rotating swing drive pinion.
 - The grease is evenly distributed on the floor of the pan.

Note: Smeared or waveless areas are evidence for a lack of grease.

Note: Add grease, as needed. Remove grease, as needed. Too much grease will result in the deterioration of the grease because of excessive movement of the grease. Too little grease will result in poor lubrication of the swing gear.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)" for the size of the pan.

4. Check for contamination and for discolored grease.

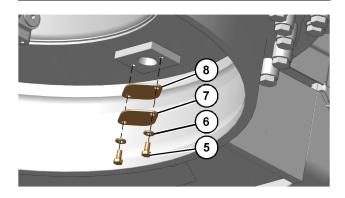


Illustration 591

g06188788

- (5) Bolts
- (6) Washers
- (7) Cover
- (8) Gasket
- 5. If the grease is contaminated or discolored with water, change the grease. Remove the covers from below the swing drive underneath the undercarriage frame.
- **6.** Remove bolts (5), washers (6), cover (7), and gasket (8) to allow the water to drain. When you reinstall cover (7), inspect gasket (8). Replace the gasket if damage is evident.



Illustration 592

g06188791

- **7.** Raise the boom and turn the upper structure by 1/4 turn. Lower the bucket to the ground.
- **8.** Repeat Step 7 at every 1/4 turn in four places. Add grease, as needed.
- **9.** Install gasket (4), cover (3), washers (2), and bolts (1).

Track Adjustment - Adjust

SMCS Code: 4170-025

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from grease under pressure.

Grease coming out of the relief valve under pressure can penetrate the body causing injury or death.

Do not watch the relief valve to see if grease is escaping. Watch the track or track adjustment cylinder to see if the track is being loosened.

Loosen the relief valve one turn only.

If track does not loosen, close the relief valve and contact your Caterpillar dealer.

NOTICE

Keeping the track properly adjusted will increase the service life of the track and drive components.

Note: The track tension must be adjusted according to the current operating conditions. Keep the track as slack as possible if the soil is heavy.

Measuring Track Tension

1. Operate the machine in the direction of the idlers.

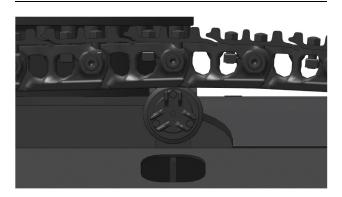


Illustration 593 g06188816

Stop with one track pin directly over the front carrier roller. Park the machine and turn off the engine.



Illustration 594 g06208711

3. Place a straight edge on top of the track grousers between the front carrier roller and the idler. The straight edge should be long enough to reach from the front carrier roller to the idler.

Note: If your machine is equipped with three carrier rollers, place a straight edge on the tracks between the carrier rollers. The straight edge should be long enough to reach from one carrier roller to another carrier roller.

4. Measure the maximum amount of sag in the track. The sag is measured from the highest point of the track grouser to the bottom of the straight edge. A track that is properly adjusted will have a sag of 40.0 to 55.0 mm (1.57 to 2.17 inch). **5.** If the track is too tight, or if the track is too loose, adjust the track tension according to the appropriate procedure below.

Adjusting Track Tension



Illustration 595

g06188820

Typical example

The track adjuster is located on the track frame.

Tightening the Track

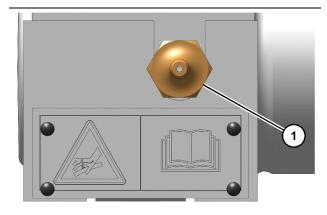


Illustration 596

g06188830

(1) Grease valve

Wipe the fitting before you add grease.

- **1.** Add grease through grease valve (1) until the correct track tension is reached.
- 2. Operate the machine back and forth in order to equalize the pressure.
- **3.** Check the amount of sag. Adjust the track, as needed.

Loosening the Track

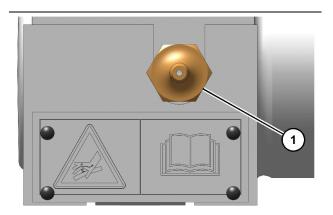


Illustration 597

g06188830

- (1) Grease valve
- Loosen grease valve (1) carefully until the track begins to loosen. One turn should be the maximum.
- 2. Tighten grease valve (1) to 34 ± 5 N·m (25 ± 4 lb ft) when the desired track tension is reached.
- **3.** Operate the machine back and forth in order to equalize the pressure.
- Check the amount of sag. Adjust the track, as needed.

i06969791

Track Adjustment - Inspect

SMCS Code: 4170-040



Illustration 598

g06182929

Check the track adjustment. Check the track for wear and for excessive dirt buildup.

If the track appears to be too tight or too loose, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Track Adjustment - Adjust".

Travel Alarm - Test (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 7429-081

Move the machine to test the travel alarm.

- **1.** Start the engine. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the UNLOCKED position.
- **2.** Raise the work tool to avoid any obstacles. Make sure that there is adequate overhead clearance.

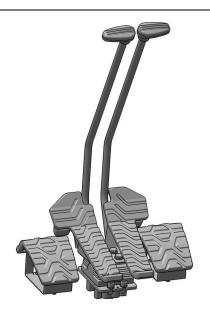


Illustration 599 g06181402

- Use the travel levers or the travel pedals to move the machine forward. The travel alarm should sound.
- **4.** Release the travel levers and the travel pedals to stop the machine.
- Use the travel levers and the travel pedals to move the machine backward. The travel alarm should sound.



Illustration 600 g06181631

- **6.** Press the alarm mute button. The travel alarm should shut off.
- **7.** Stop the machine. Lower the work tool to the ground. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Stop the engine.

Undercarriage - Check

SMCS Code: 4150-535

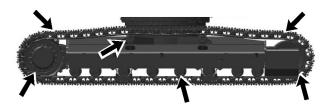


Illustration 601 g06182923

- 1. Check the carrier rollers, the track rollers, and the idler wheels for possible leakage.
- **2.** Check the surface of the track, the carrier rollers, the track rollers, the idler wheels, the track shoes, and the drive sprockets. Look for signs of wear and loose mounting bolts.
- 3. Listen for any abnormal noises while you are moving slowly in an open area.
- 4. If required, clean the undercarriage to keep excess material from building up and solidifying.
- 5. If abnormal wear exists or abnormal noises or leaks are found, consult your Cat ® dealer.

i03898951

Window - Check

SMCS Code: 7310-535

Check the polycarbonate windows of the cab for the following conditions.

- yellow or haze
- scratches on either side of the window that can be felt with a fingernail
- small cracks that come from the edges or mounting holes
- contact with fluids that result in haze or clouds on the window such as brake fluid

When any of the above conditions exist, contact your Caterpillar dealer for replacement.

i06954326

Window Washer Reservoir -Fill

SMCS Code: 7306-544-KE

NOTICE

When operating in freezing temperatures, use Caterpillar or any commercially available nonfreezing window washer solvent.



Illustration 602 g06181546

1. Open the access door on the left side of the machine.

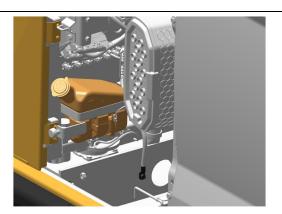


Illustration 603 g06181644

- 2. Remove the filler cap.
- 3. Fill the window washer reservoir with washer fluid through the filler opening.
- 4. Install the filler cap.
- 5. Close the access door.

Window Wiper - Inspect/ Replace

SMCS Code: 7305-510; 7305-040

Inspect the condition of the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blades if the wiper blades are worn or damaged or if streaking occurs.

i07103291

Windows - Clean

SMCS Code: 7310-070; 7340-070

Clean the outside of the windows from the ground, unless handholds are available.



Illustration 604
Typical example

g06224268

Cleaning Methods

Aircraft Window Cleaner

Apply the cleaner with a soft cloth. Rub the window with moderate pressure until all the dirt is removed. Allow the cleaner to dry. Wipe off the cleaner with a clean soft cloth.

Soap and Water

Use a clean sponge or a soft cloth. Wash the windows with a mild soap or with a mild detergent. Also use plenty of lukewarm water. Rinse the windows thoroughly. Dry the windows with a moist chamois or with a moist cellulose sponge.

Stubborn Dirt and Grease

Wash the windows with a good grade of naphtha, of isopropyl alcohol, or of Butyl Cellosolve. Then, wash the windows with soap and with water.

Polycarbonate Windows (If equipped)

Special care is needed to clean polycarbonate windows.

Wash polycarbonate windows with mild soap and warm water that does not exceed 50° C (122° F). Use a soft sponge, or damp cloth. Never use a dry cloth or paper towels on polycarbonate windows. Rinse the windows with a sufficient amount of clean cold water.

Note: Naphtha or kerosene can be used to remove labels, films, paint, or marking pen from polycarbonate windows.

Note: Do not use abrasive, or highly alkaline cleaners. Do not use sharp instruments, such as squeegees or razor blades on polycarbonate windows. Do not clean polycarbonate windows in the hot sun or at elevated temperatures.

Warranty Section

Warranty Information

i08375716

Emissions Warranty Information

SMCS Code: 1000

The certifying engine manufacturer warrants to the ultimate purchaser and each subsequent purchaser that:

- 1. New non-road diesel engines and stationary diesel engines less than 10 liters per cylinder (including Tier 1 and Tier 2 marine engines < 37 kW, but excluding locomotive and other marine engines) operated and serviced in the United States and Canada, including all parts of their emission control systems ("emission related components"), are:
 - Designed, built, and equipped so as to conform, at the time of sale, with applicable emission standards prescribed by the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) by way of regulation.
 - b. Free from defects in materials and workmanship in emission-related components that can cause the engine to fail to conform to applicable emission standards for the warranty period.
- 2. New non-road diesel engines (including Tier 1 and Tier 2 marine propulsion engines < 37 kW and Tier 1 through Tier 4 marine auxiliary engines < 37 kW, but excluding locomotive and other marine engines) operated and serviced in the state of California, including all parts of their emission control systems ("emission related components"), are:
 - Designed, built, and equipped so as to conform, at the time of sale, to all applicable regulations adopted by the California Air Resources Board (ARB).
 - b. Free from defects in materials and workmanship which cause the failure of an emission-related component to be identical in all material respects to the component as described in the engine manufacturer's application for certification for the warranty period.

- 3. New non-road diesel engines installed in construction machines conforming to the South Korean regulations for construction machines manufactured after January 1, 2015, and operated and serviced in South Korea, including all parts of their emission control systems ("emission related components"), are:
 - a. Designed, built, and equipped so as to conform, at the time of sale, with applicable emission standards prescribed in the Enforcement Rule of the Clean Air Conservation Act promulgated by South Korea MOE.
 - Free from defects in materials and workmanship in emission-related components that can cause the engine to fail to conform to applicable emission standards for the warranty period.

The aftertreatment system can be expected to function properly for the lifetime of the engine (emissions durability period) subject to prescribed maintenance and operating environment requirements being followed.

A detailed explanation of the Emission Control Warranty that is applicable to new non-road and stationary diesel engines, including the components covered and the warranty period, is found in a supplemental Special Publication. Consult your authorized Cat dealer to determine if your engine is subject to an Emission Control Warranty and to obtain a copy of the applicable Special Publication.

Reference Information Section Reference Materials

Reference Information Section

Reference Materials

i08292374

Reference Material

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Additional literature regarding your product may be purchased from your local Cat dealer or by visiting publications.cat.com. Use the product name, sales model, and serial number to obtain the correct information for your product.

publications.cat.com

i08292382

Decommissioning and Disposal

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

When the product is removed from service, local regulations for the product decommissioning will vary. Disposal of the product will vary with local regulations.

Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment. Obey all local regulations for the decommissioning and disposal of materials.

Utilize appropriate personal protective equipment when decommissioning and disposing product.

Consult the nearest Cat dealer for additional information. Including information for component remanufacturing and recycling options.

Index

A	Machines that are Equipped with a Long	
Access Door and Cover Locations247	Reach Configuration	
Engine Hood 247	Boom/Stick/Bucket Combinations	
Engine Service Door248	Cat Pin Grabber Coupler	
Left Front Access Door248	CW Quick Coupler	
Left Rear Access Door	CWS Quick Coupler	
Right Side Access Door248	Pin-On (Without Quick Coupler)	
Storage Box249	Bucket - Remove and Install	
Additional Messages	Installation Procedure	
Air Conditioner (11)24	Removal Procedure	
Alternate Exit (8)	Bucket Linkage - Inspect/Adjust	271
Data Privacy (4)	Bucket Linkage - Lubricate (DB Bucket	
DEF Purge Indicator Lamp (10)	Family)	273
Diesel Fuel Requirements (13)	Bucket Linkage - Lubricate (TB Bucket	
Engine Oil Requirements (12)	Family)	
Front Window Usage (1)21	Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace	273
Hammer Operation (2)	Bucket Tips (Cat [®] Advansys) - If	
Hose Burst (Not Equipped) (7)	Equipped	
Hose Burst Protection (Equipped) (6) 23	J Series GET Bucket Tips	
Hydraulic Oil Level Check (14)	K Series GET Drive-through System Bucke	
Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns (5) 22	Tips	
No Step (9)	Side Cutters	
Quick Coupler Operations (3)	Side Protectors (If Equipped)	
Air Conditioner/Cab Heater Filter	Burn Prevention	
(Recirculation) - Inspect/Replace	Batteries	
Air Conditioning and Heating Control 158	Coolant	
Operation	Oils	. 30
Selection Method		
Alternate Exit119	С	
Rear Window with Lever (If Equipped)119	Cab Air Filter (Fresh Air) - Clean/Replace	270
Rear Window with Ring Seal (If	Cab Door	
Equipped)119	Camera	
1 11 /	Rear View Camera	
В	Right Side View Camera (If Equipped)	
	Camera - Clean	
Battery - Clean	Capacities (Refill)	
Battery Disconnect Switch 131	Condenser (Refrigerant) - Clean	280
Battery Electrolyte Level - Check	Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change	
Battery Hold-Down - Tighten 269	Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change	201
Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace 269	Add	283
Before Operation39, 116	Cooling System Coolant Level - Check	
Before Starting Engine35	Cooling System Coolant Sample - Obtain	
Belt - Inspect/Adjust/Replace	Counterweight Removal and Installation	
Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate 270	Counterweight Installation	
Boom, Stick and Bucket Operation 196	Counterweight Removal	
Digging196	Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention.	
Lifting Objects 198	Ordaning i revenuon and odding Frevenuon.	. 23

D	Cleaning of the Films	299
Daily Inspection 116	Final Drive Oil - Change	299
Daily Inspection	Final Drive Oil Level - Check	300
Daily Basis117	Final Drive Oil Sample - Obtain	301
First 50 Hours	Final Drive Sun Gear Removal	
Declaration of Conformity (European Union	Fire Extinguisher Location	34
)114	Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention.	
Declaration of Conformity (Great Britain)115	Battery and Battery Cables	
Decommissioning and Disposal	Ether	
Demolition43	Fire Extinguisher	
	General	
E	Lines, Tubes, and Hoses	
Floatrical Storm Injury Provention 25	Regeneration	
Electrical Storm Injury Prevention	Wiring	
Emissions Certification Film	Fire Safety	
Emissions Warranty Information	Foreword	
Engine Air Filter Primary and/or Secondary		
Element - Replace	California Proposition 65 Warning	
Engine Air Pre-Cleaner - Clean 290	Certified Engine Maintenance	
Primary Air Filter Element - Replace 287	Literature Information	
Secondary Air Filter Element - Replace 289	Machine Capacity	
Engine and Machine Warm-Up 183	Maintenance	
Hydraulic System184	Operation	
Improve Cold-Weather Performance 184	Product Identification Number	
Engine Oil and Filter - Change 293	Safety	
Fast Fill297	Freezing Conditions	
Procedure for Changing Engine Oil and	Frozen Ground Conditions	
Filter 294	Fuel System - Prime	301
Selection of the Oil Change Interval 293	Fuel System Primary Filter (Water	
Engine Oil Level - Check	Separator) Element - Replace	302
Engine Oil Sample - Obtain	Fuel System Secondary Filter - Replace	303
Engine Starting	Fuel System Water Separator - Drain	
Engine Starting (Alternate Methods) 244	Fuel Tank Cap Filter - Replace	
Engine Starting with Auxiliary Start	Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control	
Receptacle (If Equipped)246	Fuel Tank Strainer - Clean	
Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables (If	Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain	
- ,	Fuel Transfer Pump (Refueling) (If	000
Equipped)	Equipped)	153
Engine Stopping	Fuses - Replace	
Engine Valve Lash - Check	Power Fuse Module	
Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped 45,		
188	Relays	500
Machines Equipped with Boom Lowering		
Control Valves	G	
Machines without a Boom Lowering Control	General Hazard Information	26
Valve 188	Containing Fluid Spillage	
Pressure Release of Auxiliary Lines 190	Dispose of Waste Properly	
Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace (If	Fluid Penetration	
Equipped) 298	Inhalation	
F	Pressurized Air and Water	
	Trapped Pressure	
Film (Product Identification) - Clean 299	General Information	
	Guards	4⊱

Guards (Operator Protection)	Symbols Found in the Lifting Capacity	
Other Guards (If Equipped)49	Charts	72
Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS), Falling	Lifting Objects	43
Object Protective Structure (FOPS) or Tip	Light Emitting Diode Lamp (LED) -	
Over Protection Structure (TOPS)48	Replace	319
	Lubricant Viscosities (Fluids	
н	Recommendations)	250
	Biodiesel Recommendations	255
High Pressure Fuel Lines35	Coolant Information	
Hydraulic System - Purge (Air - Purge) 309	Diesel Fuel Recommendations	254
Hydraulic System Oil - Change 310	Engine Oil	250
Cat HYDO Advanced 10 Oil Change	Fuel Additives	255
Interval 310	General Information for Lubricants	250
Fast Fill314	Hydraulic Systems	251
Hydraulic Hammer Use310	Other Fluid Applications	252
Procedure to Change the Hydraulic Oil 310	Selecting the Viscosity	
Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) -	Special Lubricants	
Replace 315	Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities .	
Hydraulic Hammer Use315	·	
Return Filter Replacement Procedure 315	М	
Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check 317		
Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain 318	Machine Operation	119
	Machine Security System	
I	Activating Bluetooth Functionality	
140	Armed	
Identification Information	Components	
Important Safety Information	Disarmed	
Indicators and Gauges - Test 319	Engine Start Switch Troubleshooting	
	General Information	
J	Grace Period	136
Joystick Controls	Navigating the User Interface Touchscree	en
3 Button Joystick Controls	Display	
Medium Pressure (If Equipped)171	Operation of Status Indicator	137
Vertical Slider Joystick Controls (If	Operator Login	138
Equipped)170	Pairing Your Device to the Machine	135
Joystick Controls (Joystick Steering)	Reading the ID of a Key	136
Joystick Steering172	System Overview	134
Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns	Machine Storage and Specified Storage	
Changing Machine Control Pattern(If	Period	231
Equipped)178	Machine Storage	231
Equipped)170	Specified Storage Period	231
	Maintenance Access	247
L	Maintenance Interval Schedule	266
Leaving the Machine231	Every 10 Service Hours or Daily	266
Lifting and Tying Down the Machine 236	Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for First	50
Lifting the machine237	Hours	266
Lifting the Machine Segments	Every 100 Service Hours	267
Tying Down the Machine238	Every 1000 Service Hours	
Lifting Capacities	Every 12 000 Service Hours or 6 Years	
6800 kg (14991 lb) Counterweight	Every 2000 Service Hours	
Configuration Identification	Every 250 Service Hours	

Every 3 Years267	Left Side Switch Panel (2)	123
Every 3000 Service Hours267	Monitor (5)	
Every 50 Service Hours267	Operator's Seat (8)	127
Every 500 Service Hours267	Right Side Switch Panel (6)	127
Every 5000 Service Hours267	Service Port (26)	130
Every 6000 Service Hours or 3 Years 267	Travel Control (4)	123
Every Year 267	USB/Aux Ports (23) (If Equipped)	
Initial 500 Hours (for New Systems, Refilled	Operator Station	
Systems, and Converted Systems) 267	•	
Initial 500 Service Hours	P	
When Required266	r	
Maintenance Section247	Parking 4	
Maintenance Support258	Plate Locations and Film Locations	110
Mirror 161	China Pin Plate	112
Mirror Adjustment 161	Electromagnetic Emissions	111
Monitoring System149	Engine Serial Number	112
General Information149	Product Identification Number (PIN)	
Logging In	Plate	110
Machine Warnings	Sound Certification	112
Navigation	Prepare the Machine for Maintenance	258
Mounting and Dismounting116	Product Information Section	
Alternate Exit116	Product Link	
Machine Access System Specifications116	Data Broadcasts	
Machine Access System Specifications 110	Operation in a Blast Site for Product Link	
	Radios	
0	Pump Coupling Oil - Change	
Oil Filter - Inspect 321	Pump Coupling Oil Level - Check	
Inspect a Used Filter for Debris 321	. amp coapmig on zone. oneen minimum	
Oil Filter (Hydraulic Hammer) - Replace (If	0	
Equipped)	Q	
Operating Technique Information	Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW	
Coaching Tips	Coupler Hold to Run (If Equipped))	203
Operating Precaution	Coupling the Work Tool	204
Restricted Operation	Electric Switch Operation	204
Operating Techniques	General Operation	203
Operation	Uncoupling the Work Tool	206
Critical Failures	Quick Coupler Operation (Circuit for CW	
Limiting Conditions and Criteria40	Coupler with Alarm (If Equipped))	208
Machine Operating Temperature Range 40	Coupling the Work Tool	
Machine Operation 42	Electric Switch Operation	
Machine Operation when the Machine is not	General Operation	
Completely Assembled	Uncoupling the Work Tool	
Operation Information	Quick Coupler Operation (Hydraulic Pin	
Lifting Objects	Grabber Quick Coupler (If Equipped))	214
• ,	General Operation	
Operation Section	Quick Coupler Operation	
Operator Controls	Taran Cashar Characteristics	0
12V Power Receptacle (24) & (25)	D	
Dome Light (27)	R	
Engine Start Switch (7)	Radiator, Aftercooler and Oil Cooler Cores	
Hydraulic Lockout Control (1)	- Clean	323
Joystick Controls (3) 123	Radio	154

Radio Function List156	Severe Service Application	264
Radio Operation157	Improper Maintenance Procedures	
Selection Method156	(Maintenance Procedures Which May	
USB/AUX Operation157	Contribute to a Severe Service	
Receiver Dryer (Refrigerant) - Replace 324	Application)	
Reference Information Section 336	Severe Environmental Factors	264
Reference Material 336	Severe Operating Conditions	
Reference Materials 336	Shipping the Machine	
Restricted Visibility	Shipping a Machine that is not Complete	ely
Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS) -	Assembled	
Inspect 324	Slope Operation	44
Roof Hatch166	SmartBoom Control (If Equipped)	173
	SmartBoom Operation (If Equipped)	199
S	Advantages	200
	Excavation and Loading	200
S·O·S Information	Hammering	200
Safety Messages	Sound Information and Vibration	
Aerosol Starting Aid (11)	Information	45
Crushing Hazard (14) 17	Sound Level Information	45
Crushing Hazard (16) 18	Sound Level Information for Machines	
Crushing Hazard (4)12	Required by the Applicable Regional	
Crushing Hazard (7C)14	Regulations	45
Crushing Hazard (7D)14	Sources	
Crushing Injury (3)11	Vibration Information Applicable to Regi	onal
Do Not Lift Over Personnel (8) 15	Regulations	
Do Not Operate (7A)13	Specifications	50
Do Not Weld or Drill on Operator Protective	Application/Configuration Restrictions	
Structure (OPS) (9)	Expected Life	
Electrical Power Lines (7F)15	Intended Use	50
Falling Object Guard Structure (18) 19	Specification Data	51
High-Pressure Gas (13)17	Working Ranges	53
Hot Surface (10) 16	Stopping the Engine	230
Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns (7E) 15	Engine Shutdown Switch	
Jump-Start Cables (12) 17	Stop the Engine if an Electrical Malfunct	ion
Lifting Level Warning (1)11	Occurs	230
Lifting Notice (5)	Stopping the Machine	229
Overload Warning Device (2)11	Sun Screen	165
Product Link (6)12	Swing Bearing - Lubricate	325
Relieve Hydraulic Tank Pressure (17) 19	Swing Drive Oil - Change	326
Seat Belt (7B)	Swing Drive Oil Level - Check	327
Vapor Explosion (15) 18	Swing Drive Oil Sample - Obtain	328
Safety Section7	Swing Gear - Lubricate	328
Seat	System Pressure Release	260
Comfort Seat	Coolant System	260
Seat Belt	Hydraulic System	260
Extension of the Seat Belt 122		
Seat Belt Adjustment for Retractable Seat	т	
Belts 121		
Seat Belt - Inspect	Table of Contents	
Seat Belt - Replace	Towing Information	
Securing the Machine	Towing the Machine	241
Service Interval Chart		

Lightweight Towing	242
Retrieval and Towing of Machine	242
Track Adjustment - Adjust	330
Adjusting Track Tension	
Measuring Track Tension	
Track Adjustment - Inspect	
Track Information	34
Transportation Information	232
Travel Alarm - Test (If Equipped)	332
Travel Control (Straight Travel Pedal (If	
Equipped))	168
Travel in Water and Mud	
Procedure for Removing the Machine fro	m
Water or Mud	195
U	
Undercarriage - Check	333
V	
Visibility Information	36
Visibility information	50
NA/	
W	
Warranty Information	335
Warranty Section	335
Welding on Machines and Engines with	
Electronic Controls	264
Window - Check	333
Window (Front)	164
Window Washer Reservoir - Fill	333
Window Wiper - Inspect/Replace	334
Windows - Clean	334
Cleaning Methods	334
Polycarbonate Windows (If equipped)	
Work Tool Control (One-Way Flow) (If	
Equipped)	175
Joystick	175
Work Tool Pedal	
Work Tool Control (Two-Way Flow) (If	
Equipped)	177
Joystick	177
Work Tool Pedal	177
Work Tool Flow Control	
Work Tool Operation (If Equipped)	222
Crusher Operation (If Equipped)	
Hammer Operation (If Equipped)	
Shear Operation (If Equipped)	
Work Tools	

Product and Dealer Information

Delivery Date: _____

Note: For product identification plate locations, see the section "Product Identification Information" in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

_			
Produc	et Information		
Model:			
Product Ide	ntification Number:		
Engine Seri	al Number:		
Transmissio	on Serial Number:		
Generator S	Serial Number:		
Attachment	Serial Numbers:		
Attachment	Information:		
Customer E	quipment Number:		
Dealer Equ	pment Number:		
Dealer	Information		
Name:		Branch:	
Address:			
	Dealer Contact	Phone Number	<u>Hours</u>
Sales: -			
Parts: -			
Service: -			

M0110641 ©2021 Caterpillar All Rights Reserved CAT, CATERPILLAR, LET'S DO THE WORK, their respective logos, "Caterpillar Corporate Yellow", the "Power Edge" and Cat "Modern Hex" trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.

